

THIỆN PHÚC

**ESSENTIAL SUMMARIES OF
BODHISATTVAS' MINDS
STAGES & PRECEPTS
IN THE BHRAMA NET SUTRA**

**(YÊU LƯỢC VỀ TÂM ĐỊA & GIỚI BỐN CỦA
CHÚ BỒ TÁT TRONG KINH PHẠM VÕNG)**



Copyright © 2025 by Ngoc Tran. All rights reserved.

No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of the author, except for the inclusion of brief quotations. However, staff members of Vietnamese temples who want to reprint this work for the benefit of teaching of the Buddhadharma, please contact Ngoc Tran at (714) 778-2832.

Table of Content

<i>Table of Content</i>	3
<i>Preface</i>	5
 <i>Part One: Summaries of Buddhism & Bodhisattvas</i>	 11
<i>Chapter One: Summaries of Buddhism</i>	13
<i>Chapter Two: Summaries of Three Periods of Dharmas In Buddhism</i>	79
<i>Chapter Three: An Overview of Tripitakas</i>	85
<i>Chapter Four: Essential Summaries of the Bodhisattvas in Buddhist Teachings</i>	93
 <i>Part Two: Essential Summaries of Bodhisattvas' Minds-Stages & Precepts in the Bhrama Net Sutra</i>	 133
<i>Chapter Five: An Overview of the Sutra Pitaka & the Brahmajala Sutra</i>	135
<i>Chapter Six: Summaries of the Text of the Brahma Net Sutra</i>	139
<i>Chapter Seven: Summaries of Mind-Grounds of Practitioners Who Cultivate In Bodhisattvas' Spirit</i>	149
<i>Chapter Eight: Summaries of Forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra</i>	155
<i>Chapter Nine: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Stages & Ten Directional Decisions</i>	161
<i>Chapter Ten: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Kinds of Practices & Ten Steps in the Nourishment of Perfection</i>	165
<i>Chapter Eleven: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Dedications & Ten Characteristics of the "Diamond Heart" Developed by Bodhisattvas</i>	169
<i>Chapter Twelve: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Grounds of Development of a Bodhisattva into a Buddha</i>	177
<i>Chapter Thirteen: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Buddhas' Ten Kinds of Samadhi</i>	185
<i>Chapter Fourteen: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Diamonds</i>	187
<i>Chapter Fifteen: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Kinds of Endurance in the Realm of the Second Jhana</i>	191
<i>Chapter Sixteen: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Bodhisattvas' Ten Resolves in the Realm of the Third Jhana</i>	197
<i>Chapter Seventeen: Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Bodhisattvas' Dharma Door of Minds-Grounds-Precepts in the Realm of the Fourth Jhana</i>	207
<i>Chapter Eighteen: Three Collections of Pure Precepts</i>	229
<i>Chapter Nineteen: Lay & Monastic Bodhisattvas In the Brahmajala Sutra</i>	239
<i>Chapter Twenty: The Fragrance of Meditation In the Brahmajala Sutra</i>	265
 <i>Part Three:</i>	 269
<i>Appendix: Buddhist Precepts At A Glance</i>	271
 <i>References</i>	 383

Preface

In Buddhism, the Brahma-Net Sutra, or the Brahmajala Sutra, or the Indra's Net Sutra, the Sutra of Net of Indra. Also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains ten rules of Mahayana for every follower. The sutra was translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva. *The Brahmajala Bodhisattva-Precepts Sutra* is also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains ten rules of Mahayana for every follower. The sutra was translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva. There are two main divisions of moral code.

According to Buddhism, a Bodhisattva is a being who resolves to become a fully enlightened Buddha and who dedicates his efforts to helping other sentient beings to attain salvation. These compassionate beings figure predominantly in the Mahayana tradition; indeed, the most distinguishing feature of Mahayana Buddhism may be its advocacy of the Bodhisattva as the vehicle to liberation. The Bodhisattva follows a path of Bodhisattva Ideal which very long and extremely arduous, often described as having ten stages and spanning many lives at the end of which he attains complete Buddhahood. Bodhisattvas should never be considered as heavenly gods or devas, or permanent entities for worship. Talking about the idea of Bodhisattva, Buddhists should always remember that the idea of Bodhisattva is only

a symbolic method of Buddha-dhamma created by intellectual patriarchs after the Buddha's parinirvana only to satisfy the religious need of followers and to adjust Buddhism in some special circumstances. The concept of Bodhisattvahood appears in both Theravada and Mahayana Buddhism. So, the idea of Bodhisattva in Mahayana Buddhism is in no way a strange idea to the Theravada Buddhism. Bodhisattvas always cultivate "the mind to bodhi (bodhicitta)," "the six Paramitas," "the four all-embracing virtues," and "the Four Immeasurables." Especially, "the Four Immeasurables" for these four characteristics cannot be viewed in discreteness or in isolation. Among them, "Compassionate" is the most essential, for "Karuna" or "Compassionate" is the basis of "Maitri" or "Loving-kindness" which stands for "love, respect and care for all living beings."

Talking on Bodhisattvas' minds and stages, according to Brahma-Net Sutra, there are forty Bodhisattva Positions or forty minds or forty phases of developing of minds. *Minds of Ten Grounds*: These are ten initial stages of directional decisions, these minds are associated with the ten stages in which the bodhisattvas have the following ten decisions of inclination or ten directional decisions: the mind of renouncement of the world, the mind of observance of the commandments, the mind of patience or endurance, the mind of zealous progress, the mind of meditation, the mind of wisdom or perfect understanding, the mind of the will for good for oneself and others, the mind of protection of the Triratna (Buddha, Dharma, Sangha), the mind of joy, and the highest wisdom (the mind of spiritual baptism by the Buddha). *Ten Minds of Nourishment*: The second ten steps in the nourishment of perfection are ten minds are associated with the ten necessary activities in which the Bodhisattvas have the following ten kinds of well-nourished heart, essential to entry into the cult of the higher patience and endurance: a heart of kindness, a heart of pity, a heart of joy in progress toward salvation of others, a heart of renunciation, a heart of almsgiving, a heart of delight in telling the dharma, a heart of benefitting or aiding others to salvation, a heart of unity or amity, a heart of concentration in meditation, and a heart of wisdom. *Ten Minds of Development of the Diamond Heart*: The third ten steps are ten characteristics of the "Diamond heart" as developed by a Bodhisattva: complete insight into all truth, saving of all creatures,

the glorifying of all Buddha-worlds, transference of his good deeds, services of all Buddhas, realization of the truth of all Buddha-laws, manifestation of all patience and endurance, unflagging devotion to his vocation, perfection of his work, and aiding to all fulfill their vows and accomplish their spiritual ends. Ten “diamond” steps of firmness associated with ten bestowings one’s merits to others (these are associated with the ten dedications): the mind of faith, remembrance, bestowing one’s merits on others, understanding, uprightness, no-retreat, mahayana, formlessness, wisdom, and the mind of indestructibility. *Ten Stages of Development of a Bodhisattva*: The last ten steps are “ten stages” of the development of a bodhisattva into a Buddha⁽¹⁾: Dry or unfertilized stage of wisdom (Unfertilized by Buddha-truth or Worldly wisdom), the embryo-stage of the nature of Buddha-truth, the stage of patient endurances, the stage of freedom from wrong views, the stage of freedom from the first six of nine delusions in practice, the stage of freedom from the remaining worldly desires, the stage of complete discrimination in regard to wrong views and thoughts or the stage of an arhat, Pratyekabuddhahood, Bodhisattvahood, and Buddhahood. *The ten stages of Bodhisattvabhumi*: Joyful stage or land of joy, or ground of happiness or delight; Immaculate stage or land of purity, or ground of leaving filth (land of freedom from defilement), Radiant stage or land of radiance, or ground of emitting light; Blazing stage or the blazing land, or the ground of blazing wisdom; Hard-to-conquer stage or the land extremely difficult to conquer, or the ground of invincibility, Face-to-face stage or land in view of wisdom, or the ground of manifestation; Going-far-beyond stage or the far-reaching land, or the ground of traveling far; Immovable stage or the immovable land; Good-thought stage or the land of good thoughts, or the ground of good wisdom; and Cloud of dharma stage or land of dharma clouds, or the ground of the Dharma cloud.

Talking on precepts, precepts are rules which keep us from committing offenses. Precepts are considered as cages to capture the thieves of greed, anger, stupidity, pride, doubt, wrong views, killing, stealing, lust, and lying. Although there are various kinds of precepts, i.e., the five precepts, the ten precepts, the Bodhisattva precepts, etc, the five precepts are the most basic. Learning by commandments is one

of the three important practices of all Buddhists. The other two are meditation and wisdom. In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, “There are ten major Bodhisattva precepts: not killing, not stealing, precept on sexual misconduct (not to lust), precept on lying and false speech, precept on drinking or selling alcohol beverages, precept on broadcasting the faults of the assembly (not to discuss the faults of other Buddhists), precept on prasing oneself and disparaging others (not to praise onself and disparage others), precept on stinginess and abuse of others, precept on anger and resentment (not to get angry), and precept on slandering the Triple Jewel (not to insult the Three Treasures). Also, according to Brahma-Net Sutra for Bodhisattvas Precpets, the Buddha taught all Bodhisattvas, there were forty-eight secondary or lighter precepts: respect toward teachers and friends, not to drink intoxicant substances, not to deliberately eat meat, not to eat the five pungent herbs (garlic, chives, leeks, onions, asafoetida or cury), not to be willing to teach repentence, not to fail to request the dharma or make offerings, not to fail to attend dharma lectures, not to deliberately turn away from the mahayana, failing to care for the sick (both physical and mental), not to store deadly weapons, not to serve as an emissary, not to do unlawful businesses, not to slander the Buddha Dharma, not to start wildfire, not to teach non-mahayana dharma, not to expound external theories for own gaining, not to rely on others’ powers such as officials to raise funds, not to serve as a Dharma Transmission Teacher while not understanding sufficiently the dharma and the moral codes, not to speak with double-tongued speech, fail to liberate sentient beings, not to return anger for anger, blow for blow, being arrogant (Refuse instructions on the sutras and moral codes from Dharma Master on account of his own intelligence) and refuse to request the dharma, not to arrogantly refuse to answer Dharma Law to those who seek the meaning of sutras and moral codes, fail to practice mahayana teachings, to serve as an unskilled abbot or unskilled leadership of the assembly, not to accept personal offerings. All offerings should belong to the Sangha or monasteries. Therefore, to accept personal offerings is a form of stealing the possessions of the Sangha, not to accept any offerings from personal invitations because to do so is also to steal the possessions of the Sangha, laypersons not to issue discriminatory

invitations, not to pursue improper livelihoods such as engaging in the worldly businesses under any circumstances, not to handle any business affairs for the laity, when seeing evil people steal and sell statues or paintings of Buddhas, devoted Buddhist must try to repurchase (Buy Back) clerics along with sacred objects, not to harm sentient beings (selling knives, clubs, bows, arrows, Abusing governmental position to confiscate people's possessions, raising cats, dogs, or any animals), not to watch improper activities such as fighting, gambling or to listen to sounds of conch shells, drum, horns, guitars, flutes, songs or other music, etc, it is a secondary offense for a Buddhist to temporarily abandoning of bodhi mind, especially monks and nuns, fail to make great vows, fail to take solemn oaths (would rather jump into a raging blaze, wrap self a thousand times with red-hot iron net, swallow red-hot iron pellets and drink molten iron, lie on a bonfire or burning iron, be impaled for eons by hundred of spears, jump into a caudron of boiling oil and roast for hundreds of thousands of eons, be pulverized from head to toe by an iron sledge hammer, have both eyes blinded by hundreds of thousands of swords, etc., should never break the precepts), not to travel in dangerous areas, not to sit in the improper order within the assembly, fail to cultivate merits and wisdom, discrimination in conferring the precepts, teaching for the sake of personal profits, reciting the precepts to evil persons with a greed of fame, thoughts of violating the precepts, fail to honor the sutras and moral codes, fail to teach sentient beings, preaching in an Inappropriate Manner. A devoted Buddhist, especially monks and nuns, should always have a mind of great compassion to teach and transform sentient beings, abuse high official position in the Order to undermine the moral code of the Buddhas and set regulations against the dharma, to destroy the dharma for fame or profit.

This little book titled "Essential Summaries of Bodhisattvas' Minds-Stages & Precepts in the Bhrama Net Sutra" is not a profound study of teachings in the Bhrama Net Sutra, but a book that simply points out important teachings of this Sutra, for us, Buddhists, to follow in cultivation. Devout Buddhists should always remember that entering the state of mind of a Nirvana as the Buddha taught does not mean to renounce the world and to enter into a temple as a monk or nun, but it means to enter into practicing well-being exercises that are linked to

established daily life patterns, makes our lives more peaceful. Devout Buddhists should always remember the goal of any Buddhist cultivator is to achieve self-enlightening, that is examining with one's own intelligence, and not depending upon another; enlightening or awakening of others, then achieve the final accomplishment, to go beyond the cycle of births and deaths, that is to reach the state of mind of a Nirvana right in this very life. The journey from man to Buddha still demands continuous efforts with right understanding and practice. Presently even with so many books available on Buddhism, I venture to compose this booklet titled "Essential Summaries of Bodhisattvas' Minds-Stages & Precepts in the Bhrama Net Sutra" in Vietnamese and English to spread basic things in Buddhism to all Vietnamese Buddhist followers, especially Buddhist beginners, hoping this little contribution will help Buddhists in different levels to understand on how to achieve and lead a life of peace, mindfulness and happiness.

Thiện Phúc

Part One
Summaries of Bodhisattvas
In Buddhism
(Phần Một: Sơ Lược Về Phật Giáo
& Chư Bồ Tát)

Chapter One

Summaries of Buddhism

I. An Overview of Buddhism:

In the year 563 B.C. a baby was born into a royal family in northern India. He grew up in wealth and luxury but soon found that worldly comfort and security do not guarantee real happiness. He was deeply moved by the suffering he saw all around, so He resolved to find the key to human happiness. When he was 29 he left his wife and child and his Royal Palace and set off to sit at the feet of the great religious teachers of the day to learn from them. They taught him much but none really knew the cause of human sufferings and afflictions and how it could be overcome. Eventually, after six years study and meditation he had an experience in which all ignorance fell away and he suddenly understood. From that day onwards, he was called the Buddha, the Awakened One. He lived for another 45 years in which time he traveled all over northern India teaching others what he had discovered. His compassion and patience were legendary and he made hundreds of thousands of followers. In his eightieth year, old and sick, but still happy and at peace, he finally passed away into nirvana. It couldn't have been an easy thing for the Buddha to leave his family. He must have worried and hesitated for a long time before he finally left. There were two choices, dedicating himself to his family or dedicating himself to the whole world. In the end, his great compassion made him give himself to the whole world. And the whole world still benefits from his sacrifice. This was perhaps the most significant sacrifice ever made.

Even though the Buddha is dead but 2,500 years later his teachings still help and save a lot of people, his example still inspires people, his words still continue to change lives. Only a Buddha could have such power centuries after his death. The Buddha did not claim that he was a god, the child of God or even the messenger from a god. He was simply a man who perfected himself and taught that if we followed his example, we could perfect ourselves also. He never asked his followers to worship him as a god. In fact, He prohibited his followers

to praise him as a god. He told his followers that he could not give favors to those who worship him with personal expectations or calamities to those who don't worship him. He asked his followers to respect him as students respect their teacher. He also reminded his followers to worship a statue of the Buddha to remind ourselves to try to develop peace and love within ourselves. The perfume of incense reminds us of the pervading influence of virtue, the lamp reminds us of the light of knowledge and the followers which soon fade and die, remind us of impermanence. When we bow, we express our gratitude to the Buddha for what his teachings have given us. This is the core nature of Buddhist worship. A lot of people have misunderstood the meaning of "worship" in Buddhism, even sincere Buddhists. Buddhists do not believe that the Buddha is a god, so in no way they could possibly believe that a piece of wood or metal is a god. In Buddhism, the statue of the Buddha is used to symbolize human perfection. The statue of the Buddha also reminds us of the human dimension in Buddhist teaching, the fact that Buddhism is man-centered, not God-centered, that we must look within not without to find perfection and understanding. So, in no way one can say that Buddhists worship god or idols. In fact, a long time ago, when primitive man found himself in a dangerous and hostile situation, the fear of wild animals, of not being able to find enough food, of diseases, and of natural calamities or phenomena such as storms, hurricanes, volcanoes, thunder, and lightning, etc. He found no security in his surroundings and he had no ability to explain those phenomena, therefore, he created the idea of gods in order to give him comfort in good times, courage in times of danger and consolation when things went wrong. They believed that God arranged everything. Generations after generations, man continues to follow his ancestors in a so-called "faith in god" without any further thinkings. Some say they believe in God because God responds to their prayers when they feel fear or frustration. Some say they believe in God because their parents and grandparents believed in God. Some others say that they prefer to go to church than to temple because those who go to churches seem richer and more honorable than those who go to temples.

II. The Meanings of Buddhism:

To someone it can be only life of the Buddha; the example that the Buddha and his immediate disciples set, that glorious feat of a man, who stood before men as a man and declared a path of deliverance. To others, Buddhism would mean the massive doctrine as recorded in the Buddhist Tripitaka (literature), and it is described a very lofty, abstruse, complex and learned philosophy of life. The name Buddhism comes from the word “Bodhi” which means “waking up,” and thus Buddhism is the philosophy of Awakening. Therefore, the real definition of Buddhism is Noble Truth. The Buddha did not teach from theories. He always taught from a practical standpoint based on His understanding, His enlightenment, and His realization of the Truth. This philosophy has its origins in the experience of the man named Siddhartha Gotama, known as the Buddha, who was himself awakened at the age of 36. Buddhism is now older than 2,500 years old and has more than 800 million followers world wide (including Chinese followers in Mainland China). People in the West had heard of the Buddha and his teaching as early as the thirteenth century when Marco Polo (1254-1324), the Italian traveler who explored Asia, wrote accounts on Buddhism in his book, “Travels of Marco Polo”. From the eighteenth century onwards, Buddhist texts were brought to Europe and translated into English, French and German. Until a hundred years ago, Buddhism was mainly an Asian philosophy but increasingly it is gaining adherents in Europe and America.

To the Buddha, man is a supreme being, thus, he taught: “Be your own torch and your own refuge. Do not seek refuge in any other person.” This was the Buddha’s truthful word. He also said: “All realizations come from effort and intelligence that derive from one’s own experience. Man is the master of his destiny, since he can make his life better or worse. If he tries his best to cultivate, he can become a Buddha.” Buddhism is the only way that leads people from the evil to the virtuous, from deluded to fully enlightened sagehood. Buddhism is a philosophy, a way of life or a religion. The religion of the awakened one. One of the three great world religions. It was founded by the historical Buddha Sakyamuni over 25 centuries ago. Sakyamuni expounded the four noble truths as the core of his teaching, which he had recognized in the moment of his enlightenment. He had shown

people how to live wisely and happily and his teachings soon spread from India throughout Asia, and beyond.

Buddhism is a philosophy, a way of life or a religion. The teaching of Buddha. This is not important. Buddhism is what the Buddha taught. His teaching was based on human inner wisdom. Buddhism always values reason. Blindly believing in everything is contrary to Buddha's teaching. The Buddha taught: "Do not believe blindly in my teachings. Always test them like using fire to test gold to determine whether it is authentic or counterfeit." Buddhism is not a religion versed in worshipping and imploring favors from deities. It is different from other religions and doctrines in that it respects personal opinions, beliefs, and intellectual development. Buddhism does not prevent its disciples from learning other religious teachings. The Buddha said that if there were reasonable and rational teachings in other religions, His followers were free to respect such things. From that basic principle, the Buddha declared that there was nothing hidden in the sleeve of His saffron robe when referring to His teachings. He also added that His doctrine was consistent with how people understood the Truth. It did not depend on the favors bestowed by any deity or any other spiritual power. The Buddha emphasized the concept of free inquiry when He asked His disciples to judge even the Tathagata in order to have an utter trustfulness in Him. He asked them to study, understand, and believe latter on. Whoever has not yet understood or still has doubt but blindly believes has thus defamed the Buddha. Doubt is not a sin because Buddhism has no creed to be believed. Doubt will automatically dissipate when people fully understand or perceive the Truth. In short, whether the Buddha wanted or not, His teachings and the way of life preached by Him became a religion called "Buddhism." However, Buddhism is not a religion just for discussion, but it is a religion of deliverance for those who diligently cultivate. One needs not be a scholar or a blind devotee to become a Buddhist, all you need is your sincerity of cultivation. In Buddhism, blind faith has no ground, each one of us must know how to find and absorb what is relevant and what is not to our life and to our problems. If we pay a little attention we'll see that Buddhist doctrines are boundless and timeless, but they are the inconceivable truth for all time. Messages handed down to us by the Buddha remain eternally valuable. No one can argue against or deny

the doctrine of impermanence in Buddhism. Impermanence does not mean that things are not existing. Impermanence means that everything continues in a flux, in a process of continuing change and evolution. Thus, Buddhism is able to adjust to different civilizations in different times in the world. Even in modern world, Buddhism is always appropriate in all circumstances. In fact, if you approach any aspect of Buddhism, you will immediately find out that it is something relevant, beneficial and applicable to your daily life. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that in Buddhism there is no such so-called bonds of supernatural ties, nor Godhead, nor creation, nor sin inherited from anyone else, other than what you yourself have done.

III. Summaries of the Very Cores of Buddhism:

As mentioned in the preface, after the Buddha's Enlightenment at Buddha Gaya, he moved slowly across India until he reached the Deer Park near Benares, where he preached to five ascetics his First Sermon. The Sermon preached about the Middle Way between all extremes, the Four Noble Truths and the Noble Eightfold Path. In the Deer Park, Benares, at first the Buddha was ignored by the five brothers of Kaundinya, but as the Buddha approached them, they felt that there was something very special about him, so they automatically stood up as He drew near. Then the five men, with great respect, invited the Buddha to teach them what He has enlightened. So, the Buddha delivered His First Teaching: Turning the Wheel of the Dharma. He began to preach: "O monk! You must know that there are Four Noble Truths. The first is the Noble Truth of Suffering. Life is filled with the miseries and afflictions of old age, sickness, unhappiness and death. People chase after pleasure but find only pain. Even when they do find something pleasant, they soon grow tired of it. Nowhere is there any real satisfaction or perfect peace. The second is the Noble Truth of the Cause of Suffering. When our mind is filled with greed and desire and wandering thoughts, sufferings of all types follow. The third is the Noble Truth of the End of Suffering. When we remove all craving, desire, and wandering thoughts from our mind, sufferings will come to an end. We shall experience undescrivable happiness. And finally, the Noble Truth of the Path. The Path that helps us reach the ultimate wisdom." The path leading to the end (extinction) of suffering,

the fourth of the four axioms, i.e. the eightfold noble path. The truth of the PATH that leads to the cessation of suffering (the way of cure). To practice the Eight-fold Noble Truths. The Buddha taught: “Whoever accepts the four dogmas, and practises the Eightfold Noble Path will put an end to births and deaths. In short, finally, the Buddha already discovered supportive conditions leading to bodhi or Buddhahood. The Noble Truth of the Right Way includes the following Noble Paths: The Eightfold Noble Truth, Seven Bodhi Shares, Four Right Efforts, Four Sufficiencies, Five Faculties, Five Powers, Four Elements of Popularity, Four Immeasurable Minds, and Four Kinds of Mindfulness.

To someone, all that the Buddha said can only be considered as life of the Buddha Himself. However, in fact, the example that the Buddha and his immediate disciples set, that glorious feat of a man, who stood before men as a man and declared a path of deliverance. To others, Buddhism would mean the massive doctrine as recorded in the Buddhist Tripitaka (literature), and it is described a very lofty, abstruse, complex and learned philosophy of life. The name Buddhism comes from the word “Bodhi” which means “waking up,” and thus Buddhism is the philosophy of Awakening. Therefore, the real definition of Buddhism is Noble Truth. The Buddha did not teach from theories. He always taught from a practical standpoint based on His understanding, His enlightenment, and His realization of the Truth. This philosophy has its origins in the experience of the man named Siddhartha Gotama, known as the Buddha, who was himself awakened at the age of 36. Buddhism is now older than 2,500 years old and has more than 800 million followers world wide, including Chinese followers in Mainland China. People in the West had heard of the Buddha and his teaching as early as the thirteenth century when Marco Polo (1254-1324), the Italian traveler who explored Asia, wrote accounts on Buddhism in his book, “Travels of Marco Polo”. From the eighteenth century onwards, Buddhist texts were brought to Europe and translated into English, French and German. Until a hundred years ago, Buddhism was mainly an Asian philosophy but increasingly it is gaining adherents in Europe and America. At the beginning of the twentieth century, Alan Bennett, an Englishman, went to Burma to become a Buddhist monk. He was renamed Ananda Metteya. He returned to Britain in 1908. He was the first British person to become a Buddhist monk. He taught Dharma in

Britain. Since then, Buddhist monks and nuns from Sri Lanka, Thailand, Japan, China and other Buddhist countries in Asia have come to the West, particularly over the last seventy years. Many of these teachers have kept to their original customs while others have adapted to some extent to meet the demands of living in a western society. In recent years, there has been a marked growth of interest in Buddhism in Europe. The membership of existing societies has increased and many new Buddhist centers have been established. Their members include large numbers of professionals and scholars. Today, Britain alone has over 140 Buddhist centers found in most major cities.

To the Buddha, man is a supreme being, thus, he taught: "Be your own torch and your own refuge. Do not seek refuge in any other person." This was the Buddha's truthful word. He also said: "All realizations come from effort and intelligence that derive from one's own experience. Man is the master of his destiny, since he can make his life better or worse. If he tries his best to cultivate, he can become a Buddha." Buddhism is the only way that leads people from the evil to the virtuous, from deluded to fully enlightened sagehood. Buddhism is a philosophy, a way of life or a religion. The religion of the awakened one. One of the three great world religions. It was founded by the historical Buddha Sakyamuni over 25 centuries ago. Sakyamuni expounded the four noble truths as the core of his teaching, which he had recognized in the moment of his enlightenment. He had shown people how to live wisely and happily and his teachings soon spread from India throughout Asia, and beyond.

The Buddha admitted the presence of sufferings and afflictions in human life because of the ignorant attachment to all things. But it is truly wrong to believe that Buddhism a religion of pessimism. This is not true even with a slight understanding of basic Buddhism. When the Buddha said that human life was full of sufferings and afflictions, he did not mean that life was pessimistic. In this manner, the Buddha admitted the presence of sufferings and afflictions in human life, and by a method of analysis he pointed out to his disciples that attachment to things without a correct view as to their nature is the cause of sufferings and afflictions. Impermanence and change are inherent in the nature of all things. This is their true nature and this is the correct view. He concluded: "As long as we are at variance with this truth, we

are bound to run into conflicts. We cannot alter or control the nature of things. The result is 'hope deferred made the heart sick'. The only solution lies in correcting our point of view." In fact, the thirst for things begets sorrow. When we like someone or something, we wish that they belonged to us and were with us forever. We never think about their true nature, in other words, or we refuse to think about their true nature. We expect them to survive forever, but time devours everything. Eventually we must yield to old age and freshness of the morning dew disappears before the rising sun. In the Nirvana Sutra, when Ananda and other disciples were so sad and cried when the Buddha lay on his death-bed, the Buddha taught: "Ananda! Lament not. Have I not already told you that from all good things we love and cherish we would be separated, sooner or later... that they would change their nature and perish. How then can Tathagata survive? This is not possible!" This is the philosophy which underlies the doctrine of the "Three Marks" (impermanence, suffering and no-self) of existence of the Buddhist view of life and the world. All Buddhist values are based on this. The Buddha expected of his disciples, both laity and clergy, good conduct and good behavior and decent standard of living in every way. With him, a simple living did not amount to degenerate human existence or to suffer oneself. The Buddha advised his disciples to follow the "Middle Path". It is to say not to attach to things nor to abandon them. The Buddha does not deny the "beauty", however, if one does not understand the true nature of the objects of beauty, one may end up with sufferings and afflictions or grief and disappointment. In the "Theragatha", the Buddha brought up the story of the Venerable Pakka. One day, going to the village for alms, Venerable Pakka sat down beneath a tree. Then a hawk, seizing some flesh flew up into the sky. Other hawks saw that attacked it, making it drop the piece of meat. Another hawk grabbed the fallen flesh, and was flundered by other hawks. And Pakka thought: "Just like that meat are worldly desires, common to all, full of pain and woe." And reflecting hereon, and how they were impermanent and so on, he continued to contemplate and eventually won Arahanship. The Buddha advised his disciples not to avoid or deny or attach to objects of beauty. Try not to make objects of beauty our objects of like or dislike. Whatever there is in the world, pleasant or unpleasant, we all have a tendency to attach to them, and

we develop a like or dislike to them. Thus we continue to experience sufferings and afflictions. Buddhists recognize beauty where the sense can perceive it, but in beauty we should also see its own change and destruction. And Buddhist should always remember the Buddha's teaching regarding to all component things: "Things that come into being, undergo change and are eventually destroyed." Therefore, Buddhists admire beauty but have no greed for acquisition and possession.

IV. Buddhist Cosmology & Outlook on Life:

Buddhist Cosmology: According to the Buddhist view on the universe, the universe is infinite. However, if we speak about the formation of our world system, we can speak about the formation process as follows: "In terms of elements that form the universe, wind is the first one. Its basis is space. Then the wind moves, and in dependence on the moving of the wind, heat occurs; then moisture, then solidity or earth." Buddhist cosmology not only takes into account the existence of innumerable systems of worlds grouped into what we should call galaxies, but has equally vast conceptions of cosmic time. The Buddha proclaimed that on the highest level of understanding the entire cosmos is the original pure mind. However, on the ordinary level of understanding he painted a picture of a cosmos filled with countless worlds systems where countless of living beings of every sort reside. Thus, our world system is not the only unique or the only one world system in the universe. Other world systems also have their Buddhas who also teach the path of enlightenment. The most ancient Buddhist texts speak of the various phases in the evolution and devolution over enormous time-periods of these galaxies, how they gradually formed and how after a period of relative stability during which life may be found on their worlds, how, inevitably having come into existence, they must in due course decline and go to destruction. All this is the working of processes, one vent leading quite naturally to another. As you know that although the Buddha discovered the presence of numerous Gods throughout the universe, he never tried to diminish the importance of the God worshipped by the people of his time. He simply preached the truth and that truth does not affect the importance of any Gods. Similarly, the fact that there are numerous suns in the universe does

not diminish the importance of the sun of our solar system, for our sun continues to provide us with light every day. To some other religions, Gods can be very powerful compared to human beings, but to Buddhism, they are still not free from sufferings and afflictions, and they can still be very angry. The life of Gods may be very long, but not eternal as many other religions believe.

Outlook on life and universe has been discussed by a lot of famous scholars in the world. Examination of the origin or nature of life and universe is the task of the metaphysic experts. This problem has a very important position in philosophy. It was examined from the beginning of the Egyptian, Indian and Chinese civilizations. This book is designed to give you only an overview of the Buddhist cosmology. Buddhist cosmology not only takes into account the existence of innumerable systems of worlds grouped into what we should call galaxies, but has equally vast conceptions of cosmic time. According to Buddhist cosmology, the earth goes through periodic cycles. In some of the cycles it improves, in others it degenerates. The average age of a man is an index of the quality of the period in which the person lives. It may vary between 10 years and many hundreds of thousands of years. At the time of Sakyamuni Buddha, the average life-span was 100 years. After him, the world becomes more depraved, and the life of man shortens. The peak of sin and misery will be reached when the average life has fallen to 10 years. The Dharma of Sakyamuni Buddha will then be completely forgotten. But after that the upward swing begins again. When the life of man reaches 80,000 years, Maitreya Buddha from the Tusita Heaven will appear on the earth. Besides, the most ancient Buddhist texts speak of the various phases in the evolution and devolution over enormous time-periods of these galaxies, how they gradually formed and how after a period of relative stability during which life may be found on their worlds, how, inevitably having come into existence, they must in due course decline and go to destruction. All this is the working of processes, one vent leading quite naturally to another. The Buddha was the Teacher who discovered the real nature of the universal cosmic law and advised us to live in accordance with this law. The Buddha confirmed that it is impossible for anyone to escape from such cosmic laws by praying to an almighty god, because this universal law is unbiased. However, the Buddha has taught us how

to stop bad practices by increasing good deeds, and training the mind to eradicate evil thoughts. According to the Buddha, a man can even become a god if he leads a decent and righteous way of life regardless of his religious belief. It is to say a man someday can obtain peace, mindfulness, wisdom and liberation if he is willing to cultivate to perfect himself. The Buddha Sakyamuni himself realized the Noble Truths, considered all metaphysical questions are empty. He often kept silent and gave no answers to such metaphysical questions, because for Him, those questions do not realistically relate to the purpose of Buddhists, the purpose of all Buddhists is the final freedom. According to the Buddha, how can a man know what the universe really is when he cannot understand who he really is? Therefore, the Buddha taught: "The practical way for a man is turning back to himself and seeing where and who he is and what he is doing so that he can overcome the destruction of all hindrances to the truth of all things. That is to say, he has to cultivate to purify his body and mind." For the universe, the Buddha declared that the material world is formed by the Four Great Elements as many Indian thinkers before Him did. These are Earth element, Water element, Fire element and Air element. These elements are dynamic and impermanent, therefore, all existing things compounded by them must be impermanent too. The problem about the origin of the four elements becomes completely senseless to the truth of Dependent Origination which was discovered and taught by the Buddha.

Buddhist Outlook on Life: It is wrong to imagine that the Buddhist outlook on life and the world is a gloomy one, and that the Buddhist is in low spirit. Far from it, a Buddhist smiles as he walks through life. He who understands the true nature of life is the happiest individual, for he is not upset by the evanescent (extremely small) nature of things. He tries to see things as they are, and not as they seem to be. Conflicts arise in man when he is confronted with the facts of life such as aging, illness, death and so forth, but frustration and disappointment do not vex him when he is ready to face them with a brave heart. This view of life is neither pessimistic nor optimistic, but the realistic view. The man who ignores the principle of unrest in things, the intrinsic nature of suffering, is upset when confronted with the vicissitudes of life. Man's recognition of pleasures as lasting, leads to much vexation, when things

occur quite contrary to his expectations. It is therefore necessary to cultivate a detached outlook towards life and things pertaining to life. Detachment can not bring about frustration, disappointment and mental torment, because there is no clinging to one thing and another, but letting go. This indeed is not easy, but it is the sure remedy for controlling, if not eradicating, unsatisfactoriness. The Buddha sees suffering as suffering, and happiness as happiness, and explains that all cosmic pleasure, like all other conditioned attachings, is evanescent, is a passing show. He warns man against attaching too much importance to fleeting pleasures, for they sooner or later beget discontent. Equanimity is the best antidote for both pessimism and optimism. Equanimity is evenness of mind and not sullen indifference. It is the result of a calm, concentrated mind. It is hard, indeed, to be undisturbed when touched by the realities of life, but the man who cultivates truth is not upset. Absolute happiness can not be derived from things conditioned and compounded. What we hug in great glee this moment, turns into a source of dissatisfaction the next moment. Pleasures are short-lived, and never lasting. The mere gratification of the sense faculties we call pleasure and enjoyment, but in the absolute sense of the world such gratification is not happy. Joy too is suffering, unsatisfactory; for it is transient. If we with our inner eye try to see things in their proper perspective, in their true light, we will be able to realize that the world is but an illusion that leads astray the beings who cling to it. All the so-called mundane pleasures are fleeting, and only an introduction to pain. They give temporary relief from life's miserable ulcers. This is what is known as suffering produced by change. Thus, we see that suffering never ceases to work, it functions in some form or other and is always at work.

Regarding all beings in general, Buddhism considers all the living, which includes the vegetable kingdom; however, the term "sattva" limits the meaning to those endowed with reason, consciousness, and feeling. Those who are sentient, sensible, animate, and rational (sentient beings which possess magical and spiritual powers). According to Buddhism, what we call the self is simply the collection of mental facts, experiences, ideas and so forth which would normally be said to belong to self but there is no self over and above the experiences. So mentioned does not mean that people are not

important. In fact, Buddhism which preached by the Buddha is totally built on human wisdom. The Buddha taught: “Be your own torch, your own refuge. Do not seek refuge in any other person.” The Buddha added: “I am the Buddha fully realized, sentient beings will become Buddha.” To Buddhism, all realizations come from effort and intelligence that derive from one’s own experience. The Buddha asked his disciples to be the master of their destiny, since they can make their lives better or worse. They can even become Buddha if they study and practice his teachings.

Regarding the point of view on Human Beings and Deva Vehicle, according to the Mahayana, rebirth among men conveyed by observing the five commandments (Panca-veramani). However, there are many differences on human destinies in the world. For example, one is inferior and another superior, one perishes in infancy and another lives much longer, one is sick and infirm and another strong and healthy, one is brought up in luxury and another in misery, one is born a millionaire and another in poverty, one is a genius and another an idiot, etc. According to the Buddhist point of view on human life, all of the above-mentioned results are not the results of a “chance.” Science nowadays is indeed against the theory of “chance.” All scientists agree on the Law of Cause and Effect, so do Buddhists. Sincere and devoted Buddhists never believe that the unevenness of the world is due to a so-called Creator and/or God. Buddhists never believe that happiness or pain or neutral feeling the person experiences are due to the creation of a Supreme Creator. According to the Buddhist point of view on human life, the above-mentioned unevenness that exists in the world are due to the heredity and environment, and to a greater extent, to a cause or causes which are not only present but proximate or remotely past. Man, himself, is responsible for his own happiness and misery. He creates his own heaven and hell. He is the master of his own destiny. He is his own child of his past and his own parents of his future. Regarding the point of view on Deva, this is only one of the five vehicles, the deva vehicle or Divine Vehicle. It transports observers of the ten good qualities (thập thiện) to one of the six deva realms of desire, and those who observe dhyana meditation to the higher heavens of form and non-form. Sentient beings are to be reborn among the deva

by observing the ten forms of good actions or Ten Commandments (Dasa-kusala).

Regarding the point of view on the Kaya and Citta, Buddhism talks about the theory of impermanence of the body and mind. Some people wonder why Buddhism always emphasizes the Theory of Impermanence? Does it want to spread in the human mind the seed of disheartenment, and discourage? In their view, if things are changeable, we do not need to do anything, because if we attain a great achievement, we cannot keep it. This type of reasoning, a first, appears partly logical, but in reality, it is not at all. When the Buddha preached about impermanence, He did not want to discourage anyone, but warning his disciples about the truth. A true Buddhist has to work hard for his own well being and also for the society's. Although he knows that he is facing the changing reality, he always keeps himself calm. He must refrain from harming others, in contrast, strive to perform good deeds for the benefit and happiness of others. All things have changed and will never cease to change. The human body is changeable, thus governed by the law of impermanence. Our body is different from the minute before to that of the minute after. Biological researches have proved that the cells in our body are in constant change, and in every seven years all the old cells have been totally renewed. These changes help us quickly grow up, age and die. The longer we want to live, the more we fear death. From childhood to aging, human life is exactly like a dream, but there are many people who do not realize; therefore, they continue to launch into the noose of desire; as a result, they suffer from greed and will suffer more if they become attached to their possessions. Sometimes at time of death they still don't want to let go anything. There are some who know that they will die soon, but they still strive desperately to keep what they cherish most. Not only our body is changeable, but also our mind. It changes more rapidly than the body, it changes every second, every minute according to the environment. We are cheerful a few minutes before and sad a few minutes later, laughing then crying, happiness then sorrow.

According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, Manjusri Bodhisattva obeyed the Buddha's command to call on Upasaka Vimalakirti to enquire after his health, there was a conversation about the "body". Manjusri asked

Vimalakirti: “What should a Bodhisattva say when comforting another Bodhisattva who falls ill?” Vimalakirti replied: “He should speak of the impermanence of the body but never of the abhorrence and relinquishment of the body. He should speak of the suffering body but never of the joy in nirvana. He should speak of egolessness in the body while teaching and guiding all living beings (in spite of the fact that they are fundamentally non-existent in the absolute state). He should speak of the voidness of the body but should never cling to the ultimate nirvana. He should speak of repentance of past sins but should avoid slipping into the past. Because of his own illness he should take pity on all those who are sick. Knowing that he has suffered during countless past aeons he should think of the welfare of all living beings. He should think of his past practice of good virtues to uphold (his determination for) right livelihood. Instead of worrying about troubles (klesa) he should give rise to zeal and devotion (in his practice of the Dharma). He should act like a king physician to cure others’ illnesses. Thus, a Bodhisattva should comfort another sick Bodhisattva to make him happy.” Manjusri, a sick Bodhisattva should look into all things in this way. He should further meditate on his body which is impermanent, is subject to suffering and is non-existent and egoless; this is called wisdom. Although his body is sick, he remains in (the realm of) birth and death for the benefit of all (living beings) without complaint; this is called expedient method (upaya). Manjusri! He should further meditate on the body which is inseparable from illness and on illness which is inherent in the body because sickness and the body are neither new nor old; this is called wisdom. The body, though ill, is not to be annihilated; this is the expedient method (for remaining in the world to work for salvation).

Regarding the point of view on the impurity of the Kaya and the Citta. Impurity is the nature of our bodies and minds. Impurity means the absence of an immaculate state of being, one that is neither holy nor beautiful. From the psychological and physiological standpoint, human beings are impure. This is not negative or pessimistic, but an objective perspective on human beings. If we examine the constituents of our bodies from the hair on our head to the blood, pus, phlegm, excrement, urine, there are many bacteria dwelling in the intestines, and the many diseases present waiting for the opportunity to develop,

we can see clearly that our bodies are quite impure and subject to decay. Our bodies also create the motivation to pursue the satisfaction of our desires and passions. That is why the sutra regards the body as the place where misleads gather. Let us now consider our psychological state. Since we are unable to see the truth of impermanence, suffering, and the selfless nature of all things, our minds often become the victims of greed and hatred, and we act wrongly. So, the sutra says, “The mind is the source of all confusion.”

Here is another point of view of the Buddhism on the Kaya is “It is difficult to be reborn as a human being”. Of all precious jewels, life is the greatest; if there is life, it is the priceless jewel. Thus, if you are able to maintain your livelihood, someday you will be able to rebuild your life. However, everything in life, if it has form characteristics, then, inevitably, one day it will be destroyed. A human life is the same way, if there is life, there must be death. Even though we say a hundred years, it passes by in a flash, like lightening streaking across the sky, like a flower’s blossom, like the image of the moon at the bottom of a lake, like a short breath, what is really eternal? Sincere Buddhists should always remember when a person is born, not a single dime is brought along; therefore, when death arrives, not a word will be taken either. A lifetime of work, putting the body through pain and torture in order to accumulate wealth and possessions, in the end everything is worthless and futile in the midst of birth, old age, sickness, and death. After death, all possessions are given to others in a most senseless and pitiful manner. At such time, there are not even a few good merits for the soul to rely and lean on for the next life. Therefore, such an individual will be condemned into the three evil paths immediately. Ancient sages taught: “A steel tree of a thousand years once again blossom, such a thing is still not bewildering; but once a human body has been lost, ten thousand reincarnations may not return.” Sincere Buddhists should always remember what the Buddha taught: “It is difficult to be reborn as a human being, it is difficult to encounter (meet or learn) the Buddha-dharma; now we have been reborn as a human being and encountered the Buddha-dharma, if we let the time passes by in vain, we waste our scarce lifespan.”

V. The Truth and Living Philosophy of Buddhism:

The Noble Truths in Buddhism: The Four Noble Truths, A fundamental doctrine of Buddhism which clarifies the cause of suffering and the way to emancipation. Sakyamuni Buddha is said to have expounded the Four Noble Truths in the Deer Park in Sarnath during his first sermon after attaining Buddhahood. The Buddha organized these ideas into the Fourfold Truth as follows: “Life consists entirely of suffering; suffering has causes; the causes of suffering can be extinguished; and there exists a way to extinguish the cause.” The noble Eightfold Path or the eight right (correct) ways. The path leading to release from suffering, the goal of the third in the four noble truths. These are eight in the 37 bodhi ways to enlightenment. Practicing the Noble Eight-fold Path can bring about real advantages such as improvement of personal conditions. It is due to the elimination of all evil thoughts, words, and actions that we may commit in our daily life, and to the continuing practice of charitable work; improvement of living conditions. If everyone practiced this noble path, the world we are living now would be devoid of all miseries and sufferings caused by hatred, struggle, and war between men and men, countries and countries, or peoples and peoples. Peace would reign forever on earth; attainment of enlightenment or Bodhi Awareness. The Noble Eight-fold Path is the first basic condition for attaining Bodhi Consciousness that is untarnished while Alaya Consciousness is still defiled. The mind is immeasurable. It is not only benefitting immeasurable living beings, bringing immeasurable blessings to them, and producing immeasurable highly spiritual attainments in a world, in one life, but also spreads all over immeasurable worlds, in immeasurable future lives, shaping up immeasurable Buddha. The four immeasurables or infinite Buddha-states of mind. The four kinds of boundless mind, or four divine abodes. These states are called illimitables because they are to be radiated towards all living beings without limit or obstruction. They are also called brahmaviharas or divine abodes, or sublime states, because they are the mental dwellings of the brahma divinities in the Brahma-world.

In both forms of Buddhism, Theravada and Mahayana, the Buddha taught his disciples, especially lay-disciples to keep the Five Precepts. Although details are not given in the canonical texts, Buddhist teachers have offered many good interpretations about these five precepts. The

five basic commandments of Buddhism. The five basic prohibitions binding on all Buddhists, monks and laymen alike; however, these are especially for lay disciples. The observance of these five ensures rebirth in the human realm. One of the most important Truths in Buddhist Teachings is the truth of Cause and Effect. Cause is a primary force that produces an effect; effect is a result of that primary force. The law of causation governs everything in the universe without exception. Law of cause and effect or the relation between cause and effect in the sense of the Buddhist law of “Karma”. The law of causation (reality itself as cause and effect in momentary operation). Every action which is a cause will have a result or an effect. Likewise, every resultant action or effect has its cause. The law of cause and effect is a fundamental concept within Buddhism governing all situations. The Moral Causation in Buddhism means that a deed, good or bad, or indifferent, brings its own result on the doer. Good people are happy and bad ones unhappy. But in most cases “happiness” is understood not in its moral or spiritual sense but in the sense of material prosperity, social position, or political influence. For instance, kingship is considered the reward of one’s having faithfully practiced the ten deeds of goodness. If one meets a tragic death, he is thought to have committed something bad in his past lives even when he might have spent a blameless life in the present one. causality is a natural law, mentioning the relationship between cause and effect. All things come into being not without cause, since if there is no cause, there is no effect and vice-versa. As so sow, so shall you reap. Cause and effect never conflict with each other. In other words, cause and effect are always consistent with each other. If we want to have beans, we must sow bean seeds. If we want to have oranges, we must sow orange seeds. If wild weeds are planted, then it’s unreasonable for one to hope to harvest edible fruits. One cause cannot have any effect. To produce an effect, it is necessary to have some specific conditions. For instance, a grain of rice cannot produce a rice plant without the presence of sunlight, soil, water, and care. In the cause there is the effect; in the effect there is the cause. From the current cause, we can see the future effect and from the present effect we discerned the past cause. The development process from cause to effect is sometimes quick, sometimes slow. Sometimes cause and effect are simultaneous like

that of beating a drum and hearing its sound. Sometimes cause and effect are three or four months away like that of the grain of rice. It takes about three to four, or five to six months from a rice seed to a young rice plant, then to a rice plant that can produce rice. Sometimes it takes about ten years for a cause to turn into an effect. For instance, from the time the schoolboy enters the elementary school to the time he graduates a four-year college, it takes him at least 14 years. Other causes may involve more time to produce effects, may be the whole life or two lives. By understanding and believing in the law of causality, Buddhists will not become superstitious, or alarmed, and rely passively on heaven authority. He knows that his life depends on his karmas. If he truly believes in such a causal mechanism, he strives to accomplish good deeds, which can reduce and alleviate the effect of his bad karmas. If he continues to live a good life, devoting his time and effort to practicing Buddhist teachings, he can eliminate all of his bad karmas. He knows that he is the only driving force of his success or failure, so he will be discouraged, put the blame on others, or rely on them. He will put more effort into performing his duties satisfactorily. Realizing the value of the law of causality, he always cares for what he thinks, tells or does in order to avoid bad karma.

The Truth of Karma or Actions is a twin of the truth of Cause and Effect. Karma is one of the fundamental doctrines of Buddhism. Everything that we encounter in this life, good or bad, sweet or bitter, is a result of what we did in the past or from what we have done recently in this life. Good karma produces happiness; bad karma produces pain and suffering. So, what is karma? Karma is a Sanskrit word, literally means a deed or an action and a reaction, the continuing process of cause and effect. Moral or any good or bad action (however, the word 'karma' is usually used in the sense of evil bent or mind resulting from past wrongful actions) taken while living which causes corresponding future retribution, either good or evil transmigration (action and reaction, the continuing process of cause and effect). Our present life is formed and created through our actions and thoughts in our previous lives. Our present life and circumstances are the product of our past thoughts and actions, and in the same way our deeds in this life will fashion our future mode of existence. A karma can be created by body, speech, or mind. There are good karma, evil karma, and

indifferent karma. All kinds of karma are accumulated by the Alayavijnana and Manas. Karma can be cultivated through religious practice (good), and uncultivated. For Sentient being has lived through innumerable reincarnations, each has boundless karma. Whatever kind of karma is, a result would be followed accordingly, sooner or later. No one can escape the result of his own karma. As mentioned above, karma is a product of body, speech and mind; while recompense is a product or result of karma. Karma is like a seed sown, and recompense is like a tree grown with fruits. When the body does good things, the mouth speaks good words, the mind thinks of good ideas, then the karma is a good seed. In the contrary, the karma is an evil seed. Thus the Buddha taught: “To lead a good life, you Buddhists should make every effort to control the activities of your body, speech, and mind. Do not let these activities hurt you and others.” Recompense corresponds Karma without any exception. Naturally, good seed will produce a healthy tree and delicious fruits, while bad seed gives worse tree and fruits. Therefore, unless we clearly understand and diligently cultivate the laws of cause and effect, or karma and result, we cannot control our lives and experience a life the way we wish to. According to the Buddha-Dharma, no gods, nor heavenly deities, nor demons can assert their powers on us, we are totally free to build our lives the way we wish. If we accumulate good karma, the result will surely be happy and joyous. No demons can harm us. In the contrary, if we create evil karma, no matter how much and earnestly we pray for help, the result will surely be bitter and painful, no gods can save us. When we act, either good or bad, we see our own actions, like an outsider who witnesses. The pictures of these actions will automatically imprint in our Alaya-vijnana (subconscious mind); the seed of these actions are sown there and awaited for enough conditions to spring up its tree and fruits. Similarly, the effect in the alaya-vijnana (subconscious mind) of the one who has received our actions. The seed of either love or hate has been sown there, waiting for enough conditions to spring up its tree and fruits. The Buddha taught: “If someone give us something, but we refuse to accept. Naturally, that person will have to keep what they plan to give. This means our pocket is still empty.” Similarly, if we clearly understand that karmas or our own actions will be stored in the alaya-vijnana (subconscious mind) for us to carry over to the next lives,

we will surely refuse to store any more karma in the ‘subconscious mind’ pocket. When the ‘subconscious mind’ pocket is empty, there is nothing for us to carry over. That means we don’t have any result of either happiness or suffering. As a result, the cycle of birth and death comes to an end, the goal of liberation is reached.

The Living Philosophy of Buddhism: Someone says that the word religion is not appropriate to call Buddhism because Buddhism is not a religion, but a moral philosophy. For me, Buddhism is both a religion and philosophy of life based on the teachings set forth by Shakyamuni Buddha over 2500 years ago in India. Before going further, we should briefly analyze the two words “Buddha” and “Philosophy”. First, the name Buddhism comes from the word “budhi” which means ‘to wake up’ and thus Buddhism is the philosophy of awakening. This philosophy has its origins in the experience of the man named Siddhartha Gotama, known as the Buddha, who was himself awakened at the age of 36. Buddhism is now older than 2,500 years old and has almost one third of the population of the world as its followers. Until a hundred years ago, Buddhism was mainly an Asian philosophy but increasingly it is gaining adherents in Europe and America. Secondly, the word philosophy comes from two words ‘philo’ which means ‘love’ and ‘sophia’ which means ‘wisdom’. So, philosophy is the love of wisdom or love and wisdom, both meanings describing Buddhism perfectly. Buddhism teaches that we should try to develop our intellectual capacity to the fullest so that we can understand clearly. It also teaches us to develop loving kindness and compassion so that we can become (be like) a true friend to all beings. So, Buddhism is a philosophy but not just a philosophy. It is the supreme philosophy. In the year 563 B.C. a baby was born into a royal family in northern India. He grew up in wealth and luxury but soon found that worldly comfort and security do not guarantee real happiness. He was deeply moved by the suffering he saw all around, so He resolved to find the key to human happiness. It couldn’t have been an easy thing for the Buddha to leave his family. He must have worried and hesitated for a long time before he finally left. There were two choices, dedicating himself to his family or dedicating himself to the whole world. In the end, his great compassion made him give himself to the whole world. And the whole world still benefits from his sacrifice. This was perhaps the most significant

sacrifice ever made. After careful considerations, when he was 29 he left his wife and child and his Royal Palace and set off to sit at the feet of the great religious teachers of the day to learn from them. They taught him much but none really knew the cause of human sufferings and afflictions and how it could be overcome. Eventually, after six years study and meditation he had an experience in which all ignorance fell away and he suddenly understood. From that day onwards, he was called the Buddha, the Awakened One. He lived for another 45 years in which time he travelled all over northern India teaching others what he had discovered. His compassion and patience were legendary and he made hundreds of thousands of followers. In his eightieth year, old and sick, but still happy and at peace, he finally passed away into nirvana. After the passing of Shakyamuni Buddha, his disciples recorded all of his teaching into scriptures called sutras. There is no one book that contains all the information the Buddha taught, but the total of more than 800 books that recorded a vast number of sutras, vinaya and abhidharma.

Truly speaking, Buddhism is a religion of the Truth. Even though the Buddha is dead but 2,500 years later his teachings still help and save a lot of people, his example still inspires people, his words still continue to change lives. Only a Buddha could have such power centuries after his death. The Buddha did not claim that he was a god, the child of God or even the messenger from a god. He was simply a man who perfected himself and taught that if we followed his example, we could perfect ourselves also. He never asked his followers to worship him as a god. In fact, He prohibited his followers to praise him as a god. He told his followers that he could not give favours or blessings to those who worship him with personal expectations or calamities to those who don't worship him. He asked his followers to respect him as students respect their teacher. He also reminded his followers to worship a statue of the Buddha means to remind ourselves to try to develop peace and love within ourselves. The perfume of incense reminds us of the pervading influence of virtue, the lamp reminds us of the light of knowledge and the followers which soon fade and die, remind us of impermanence. When we bow, we express our gratitude to the Buddha for what his teachings have given us. This is the core nature of Buddhist worship. A lot of people have

misunderstood the meaning of “worship” in Buddhism, even devout Buddhists. Buddhists do not believe that the Buddha is a god, so in no way they could possibly believe that a piece of wood or metal (statue) is a god. In Buddhism, the statue of the Buddha is used to symbolize human perfection. The statue of the Buddha also reminds us of the human dimension in Buddhist teaching, the fact that Buddhism is man-centered, not God-centered, that we must look inward (within) not outward (without) to find perfection and understanding. So in no way one can say that Buddhists worship god or idols. In fact, a long long time ago, when primitive man found himself in a dangerous and hostile situations, the fear of wild animals, of not being able to find enough food, of diseases, and of natural calamities or phenomena such as storms, hurricanes, volcanoes, thunder, and lightning, etc. He found no security in his surroundings and he had no ability to explain those phenomena, therefore, he created the idea of gods in order to give him comfort in good times, and courage him in times of danger and consolation when things went wrong. They believed that God arranged everything. Generations after generations, man continues to follow his ancestors in a so-called “faith in god” without any further thinkings. Some says they believe in God because God responds to their prayers when they feel fear or frustration. Some say they believe in God because their parents and grandparents believed in God. Some others say that they prefer to go to church than to temple because those who go to churches seem richer and more honorable than those who go to temples, and so on, and so on.

The Truth in Buddhist Teachings is always in accord with Life and Science at all times. The main teachings of the Buddha focus on the Four Noble Truths and the Eightfold Noble Path. They are called “Noble” because they enoble one who understand them and they are called “Truths” because they correspond with reality. Buddhists neither believe in negative thoughts nor do they believe in pessimistic ideas. In the contrary, Buddhists believe in facts, irrefutable facts, facts that all know, that all have aimed to experience and that all are striving to reach. Those who believe in god or gods usually claim that before an individual is created, he does not exist, then he comes into being through the will of a god. He lives his life and then according to what he believes during his life, he either goes to eternal heaven or eternal

hell. Some believe that they come into being at conception due to natural causes, live and then die or cease to exist, that's it! Buddhism does not accept either of these concepts. According to the first explanation, if there exists a so-called almighty god who creates all beings with all his loving kindness and compassion, it is difficult to explain why so many people are born with the most dreadful deformities, or why so many people are born in poverty and hunger. It is nonsense and unjust for those who must fall into eternal hells because they do not believe and submit themselves to such a so-called almighty god. The second explanation is more reasonable, but it still leaves several unanswered questions. Yes, conception due to natural causes, but how can a phenomenon so amazingly complex as consciousness develop from the simple meeting of two cells, the egg and the sperm? Buddhism agrees on natural causes; however, it offers more satisfactory explanation of where man came from and where he is going after his death. When we die, the mind, with all the tendencies, preferences, abilities and characteristics that have been developed and conditioned in this life, re-establishes itself in a fertilized egg. Thus the individual grows, is reborn and develops a personality conditioned by the mental characteristics that have been carried over by the new environment. The personality will change and be modified by conscious effort and conditioning factors like education, parental influence and society and once again at death, re-establish itself in a new fertilized egg. This process of dying and being reborn will continue until the conditions that cause it, craving and ignorance, cease. When they do, instead of being reborn, the mind attains a state called Nirvana and this is the ultimate goal of Buddhism.

There is not a doubt that Buddhism was a religion of the truth and a living philosophy more than 26 centuries ago. It's still now a religion of the truth and a living philosophy in this very century (the twenty-first century). Buddhism is in accord with all the progresses of nowadays science and it will always be in accord with science at all times. Its basic teachings of loving-kindness, compassion, joy, equanimity, right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness and right concentration, as well as the basic five precepts of not killing, not stealing, not committing sexual misconduct, not lying and not drinking alcohol and not doing drugs... are

always a torch that lights the darkness of the world. The message of peace and of love and happiness of Buddhism to living beings of all kinds is always the glorious truth for all human beings. Everyone can achieve the highest goal in Buddhism, no matter who is that person, clergyperson or lay person. However, the most important thing we all must remember is making an honest effort to follow the Buddha's teachings. The Buddha and his great disciples did not achieve their ultimate goal by accident. The Buddha and his disciples were once ordinary sentient beings like us. They were once afflicted by the impurities of the mind, attachment, aversion, and ignorance. They all became either Buddhas or Saints now, but for us, we are still creating and creating more and more unwholesome deeds and continuing going up and down in the cycle of birth and death? Devout Buddhists should listen to the Buddha's teachings, should purify our actions, words and mind to achieve true wisdom, the wisdom that help us understand the truth and to attain the ultimate goal of Buddhism. In other words, if we sincerely cultivate in accordance with the Buddha's teachings, one day not too far, everyone of us would be able to do good deeds, to avoid bad deeds; everyone of us would try our best to help others whenever possible and not to harm anyone, our mind would be mindful at all times. Thus, there is no doubt that the Buddha's Dharma will benefit us with happiness and prosperity in this life and in the next. Eventually, it will lead us to the ultimate goal of liberation, the supreme bliss of Nirvana.

VI. Basic Faiths in Buddhism:

A basic belief in Buddhism is that the world is filled with sufferings and afflictions that are caused by the desires, angers and ignorance, pride, doubt, and wrong views. If the above-mentioned troubles could be removed, then the sufferings and afflictions would naturally end. However, removing the above-mentioned troubles does not mean that we chase after worldly pleasures, nor does it mean pessimism. According to the Buddha, most of daily life's troubles are caused by attachment. We get angry, we worry, we become greedy and complain bitterly. All these causes of unhappiness, tension, stubbornness and sadness are due to attachment. Thus, if we want to end sufferings and afflictions, we must end attachment, no exception. However, to end

attachment is not easy for in order to end attachment we must conquest ourselves. Thus the Buddha taught in the Dharmapada Sutra: “The greatest of conquests is not the subjugation of others but of the self. Even though a man conquers thousands of men in battle, he who conquers himself is the greatest of conquerors.” In fact, the ultimate goal of a Buddhist is to look inward to find his own Buddha and not outward. Thus, the goal of a Buddhist is the development of self-dependency, the ability to set oneself free of sufferings and afflictions. Buddhism is strongly against a blind belief on other forces of salvation with no basic factors. The Buddha always reminded his disciples: “You should reject blind belief. Do not judge by hearsay, not on mere assertion, not on authority of so-called sacred scriptures. Do not hurriedly judge according to appearances, not believe anything because an ascetic or a teacher has said it.”

Buddhism never accepts superstitions. With Buddhism, to believe religion without understanding it thoroughly, it's a blind faith, or it's not different from superstition. Even though understanding but understanding without finding to see if it's right or wrong, in accordance or not in accordance with truth, with reality, it's also a form of superstition or wrong belief. Believe that when you sow a seed of hot-pepper, you will have a hot-pepper tree and eventually you will reap hot-pepper fruit. However, even though you have already sown the seed of hot-pepper, but you realize that you don't like to eat fruit that is hot, you stop fertilizing and watering the hot-pepper tree, the tree will wither and die, and will not produce any fruit. Similarly, if you know an action is bad and unwholesome, you refuse to act, of course you will not receive any bad or unwholesome consequence. The Buddha refuses to believe that whatever happens to a person, either good or bad, is due to chance, fate or fortune. Everything that happens has a specific cause or causes and there must be some tight relationships between the cause and the effect. Those who want to believe in Buddhism should not rush to become a Buddhist with the wrong understanding or blind belief in Buddhism. You should take your time to do more researches, to ask questions, and to consider carefully before making your final decision. Religions that worship God have always considered reason and wisdom as the enemy of faith and dogma for them there exist only “believe” or “not believe” and nothing else.

In fact, if we accept that there exists a so-called almighty god, we cannot accept any of the findings of modern science; neither Darwin's science of biological evolution nor the theories of the nature and evolution of the universe coming from modern physics. They believe that a so-called creator god invented humankind and the universe all at once and that these three realms of God, man and universe, all are separate. However, modern science agrees with what the Buddha taught almost twenty-six centuries ago, and proves that the universe as one infinite process of change. Furthermore, the belief of salvation by God caused a serious danger to the whole world, especially from the first century to the end of the nineteenth century, for those who believe in the salvation of God believe that they must impose salvation on others. For this reason, Catholic countries sent their troops and priests all over the world to save others by force. And as a result, millions of people got killed or slaughtered and subjugated in the name of God. Buddhism is in contrast with other religions that believe in God. Buddhism teaches that one must develop wisdom. However, wisdom in Buddhism is not simply believing in what we are told or taught. True wisdom is to directly see and understand for ourselves. With this wisdom, people will have an open mind that listens to others' points of view rather than being closed-minded; people will also carefully examine facts that contradicts their belief rather than blindly believing. Sincere Buddhists never believe in the law of eternity. The Buddha accepts the law of impermanence or change, and denies the existence of eternal substances. Matter and spirit are false abstractions that, in reality, are only changing factors or dharmas which are connected and which arise in functional dependence on each other. Thus, Buddhist faith means that the devotee accepts the Buddha as a Teacher and a Guide, His doctrine as way of life, and the Sangha community as the exemplars of this way of life. According to Buddhist point of view in faith, everyone is completely free to make his own choice in faith, no one has the right to interfere with other people's choice. Let's take a close look in the Buddha's teaching in the Kalama Sutra: "Nothing should be accepted merely on the ground of tradition or the authority of the teacher, or because it is the view of a large number of people, distinguished or otherwise. Everything should be weighed, examined and judged according to whether it is true or false in the light of one's

own true benefits. If considered wrong, they should not be rejected but left for further considerations.” Therefore, we see clearly that Buddhism is based on personal experience, rationalism, practice, morality, and insight. There is no need to propitiate gods or masters. There is no blind adherence to a faith, rigid dogmas, rituals, holy scriptures, or myths. The Buddha always confirmed his disciples that a salvation can only be gained by man and by man only during his life without the least help from a so-called god or gods.

Besides, Buddhism encourages us to try to recognize truth, not to blindly believe. The Buddha taught us to try to recognize truth, so we can understand our fear, to lessen our desires, to eliminate our selfishness, and to calmly and courageously accept things we cannot change. He replaced fear, not with blindly and irrational belief but with rational understanding which corresponds to the truth. Furthermore, Buddhists do not believe in God because there does not seem to be any concrete evidence to support this idea. Who can answer questions on God? Who is God? Is God masculine or feminine or neuter? Who can provide ample evidence with real, concrete, substantial or irrefutable facts to prove the existence of God? So far, no one can. Buddhists suspend judgment until such evidence is forthcoming. Besides, such belief in God is not necessary for a really meaningful and happy life. If you believe that God makes your life meaningful and happy, so be it. But remember, more than two-thirds of the world do not believe in God and who can say that they don't have a meaningful and happy life? And who dare to say that those who believe in God, all have a meaningful and happy life? If you believe that God help you overcome disabilities and difficulties, so be it. But Buddhists do not accept the theological concept of salvation. In the contrary, based on the Buddha's own experience, he showed us that each human being had the capacity to purify the body and the mind, develop infinitive love and compassion and perfect understanding. He shifted the gods and heavens to the self-heart and encouraged us to find solution to our problems through self-understanding. Finally, such myths of God and creation concept has been superseded by scientific facts. Science has explained the origin of the universe completely without recourse to the god-idea.

Buddhism does not accept such practices as fortune telling, wearing magic charms for protection, fixing lucky sites for building, prophessing and fixing lucky days, and other superstitions as well, etc. All these practices are considered useless superstitions in Buddhism. However, because of greed, fear and ignorance, some Buddhists still try to stick to these superstitious practices. As soon as people understand the Buddha's teachings, they realize that a pure heart can protect them much better than empty words of fortune telling, or wearing nonsense charms, or ambiguous chanted words and they are no longer rely on such meaningless things. In the noble teachings of the Buddha, it is honesty, kindness, understanding, patience, generosity, forgiveness, loyalty and other good qualities that truly protect us and give us true happiness and prosperity. The Buddha was not concerned with such metaphysical issues which only confuse man and upset his mental equilibrium. Their solution surely will not free mankind from misery and ill. That was why the Buddha hesitated to answer such questions, and at times refrained from explaining those which were often wrongly formulated. The Buddha was a practical teacher. His sole aim was to explain in all its detail the problem of Dukkha, suffering, the universal fact of life, to make people feel its full force, and to convince them of it. He has definitely told us what he explains and what he does not explain. Even questions relating to the past and the future, the Buddha's answers were very clear: "Let be the past, let be the future, I will teach you the Dhamma." The Buddha always emphasized: "When this is, that comes to be. With the arising of this, that arises. When this is not, that does not come to be. With the cessation of this, that ceases." This in a nutshell is the Buddhist doctrine of conditionality or Dependent Arising (*paticca samuppada*). And this forms the foundation of the Four Noble Truths, the central conception of Buddhism.

Buddhism flatly refuses to discuss metaphysic issues. Buddhism considers human's liberation the priority. Once the Buddha was asked by a monk named Malunkyaputta, whether the world was eternal or not eternal, whether the world was finite or infinite, whether the soul was one thing and the body another, whether a Buddha existed after death or did not exist after death, and so on, and so on. The Buddha flatly refused to discuss such metaphysics, and instead gave him a parable. "It is as if a man had been wounded by an arrow thickly smeared with

poison, and yet he were to say, 'I will not have this arrow pulled out until I know by what man I was wounded,' or 'I will not have this arrow pulled out until I know of what the arrow with which I was wounded was made.'" As a practical man he should of course get himself treated by the physician at once, without demanding these unnecessary details which would not help him in the least. This was the attitude of the Buddha toward the metaphysical speculation which do not in any way help improve ourselves in our cultivation. The Buddha would say, "Do not go by reasoning, nor by argument." Besides, Buddhism does not accept such practices as fortune telling, wearing magic charms for protection, fixing lucky sites for building, prophesying and fixing lucky days, etc. All these practices are considered useless superstitions in Buddhism. However, because of greed, fear and ignorance, some Buddhists still try to stick to these superstitious practices. As soon as people understand the Buddha's teachings, they realize that a pure heart can protect them much better than empty words of fortune telling, or wearing nonsense charms, or ambiguous chanted words and they are no longer rely on such meaningless things. In Buddhism, liberation is a motto which heightens (elevates) the unfettered spirit beyond the irrational wall of conventional restriction in which the faith of each individual must be chosen by that individual and by no one else. However, the Buddha always emphasized "Try to understand thoroughly before believing, even with my teachings, for acting freely and without knowing the real meaning of whatever you act sometimes you unintentionally destroy valuable traditions of yourselves. This is the same as a diamond being thrown into the dirt." The Buddha continued to advise: "When you do anything you should think of its consequence." Nowadays, more than 2,500 years after the Buddha's time, all scientists believe that every event that takes place in the world is subject to the law of cause and effect. In other words, cause is the activity and effect is the result of the activity. The Buddha described the world as an unending flux of becoming. All is changeable, continuous transformation, ceaseless mutation, and a moving stream. Everything exists from moment to moment. Everything is recurring rotation of coming into being and then passing out of existence. Everything is moving from formation to destruction, from birth to death. The matter of material forms are also a continuous

movement or change towards decay. This teaching of the impermanent nature of everything is one of the most important points of view of Buddhism. Nothing on earth partakes of the character of absolute reality. That is to say there will be no destruction of what is formed is impossible. Whatever is subject to origination is subject to destruction. Change is the very constituent of reality. In daily life, things move and change between extremes and contrasts, i.e., rise and fall, success and failure, gain and loss, honor and contempt, praise and blame, and so on. No one can be sure that a “rise” does not follow with a “fall”, a success does not follow with a failure, a gain with a loss, an honor with a contempt, and a praise with a blame. To thoroughly understand this rule of change or impermanence, Buddhists are no longer dominated by happiness, sorrow, delight, despair, disappointment, satisfaction, self-confidence and fear.

Buddhists believe that the Buddha Nature has no limit and not be confined in the East, West, South or North. In the noble teachings of the Buddha, it is honesty, kindness, understanding, patience, generosity, forgiveness, loyalty and other good qualities that truly protect us and give us true happiness and prosperity. A man who possesses the above-mentioned characteristics, that man is travelling on the Path to the Buddha’s Land. It is true that Buddhahood cannot be found outside. It has no limit and not be confined in the East, West, South or North. It is in fact, in every man’s mind. In the Lotus Sutra, the Buddha taught: “Once upon a time, there was a father who was very old and death was hovering on him. He had a little son and wanted him to be well off in the future. He hid a very valuable diamond between the hems of his son’s shirt and then gave him some advice. After his father’s passing away, the son forgot completely about the hidden diamond. He became poor, wandering here and there to beg for help, met with nothing but refusal. One day, he suddenly remembered about the hidden treasure left by his father, from thence he became a rich man and no longer depended on others for help.”

Buddhists believe that “Man is the most sacred and superior animal” who can achieve Buddhahood. Most of us are agreed to the fact that among all living beings, human beings are unique beings who can understand what we are and what we should be. Compared to other beings, man is most complete and superior not only in the mentality

and thinking, but also in the ability of organization of social life. Human beings' life cannot be substituted nor repeated nor determined by someone else. Once we are born in this world, we have to live our own life, a meaningful and worth living life. Thus, the ancient said: "Man is the most sacred and superior animal." And the Buddha taught in the Upasaka Sutra: "In all beings, man is endowed with all necessary faculties, intelligence. Besides man's conditions are not too miserable as those beings in hell, not too much pleasure as those beings in heaven. And above all, man's mind is not so ignorant as that of the animals." So, man has the ability to build and improve his own life to the degree of perfection.

VII. Ideal of Buddhism:

The Buddha founded Buddhism, not only to save sentient beings but also to eliminate the distinction between classes in India at that time. To the Buddha, the ideal of Buddhism would first give everyone an equal opportunity in daily life as well as in cultivation. Against the asserted superiority of the Aryan race and the appellation of "Anarya" or "Non-Aryan" given to the aborigines of some earlier immigrants on the Indian continent, the Buddha often argued that the word Arya meant noble and we ought not call a race noble or ignoble for there will be some ignoble people among the so-called Arya and at the same time there will be some noble people among the so-called Anarya. When we say noble or ignoble we should be speaking of an individual and not a race as a whole. It is a question of human dignity, knowledge or wisdom, not of birth or caste. Thus, the ideal of Buddhism is to create a noble personage in the sense of a noble life. The ideal set forth by the Buddha was very clear. His ideal is that as a man, he tries to teach other men, noble or ignoble, to be perfect men, i.e., men of perfect enlightenment. Even though the ideal of Buddhism is being compounded of the two contradictory forces of wisdom and compassion. The Buddha tries to teach his disciples: In the wisdom, see no persons; in the compassion resolve to save beings. Their ability to combine these contradictory attitudes is the source of their greatness, and of their ability to save themselves and others. Ideal of Buddhism in mahayana concept that one should strive to perform various acts of

merits and cultivate wisdom in order to save suffering beings and attain enlightenment.

VIII.The Concept of Buddha's Statues and Images In Buddhism:

In Buddhism, image is one of the needs to remember the Buddha. It is impossible to express the Buddha in physical form because he is nothing but the attributes of awakening, enlightening, wisdom, compassion, loving-kindness, joy, equanimity, etc. However, if we don't express Him in a perfect statue, what else can we do with these symbols? We should express these symbols in the most ideal human forms, namely in the image of the Buddha when He acquired the ultimate enlightenment. So, the Buddha's image should be in the attitude of calmness and indifference to pleasure and pain. People often feel the need to remember the things they love and respect in a form that they can see. For instance, a photograph is kept in order to remember a loved one. The national flag is a reminder of the loyalty people feel towards their country. The photograph and national flag are examples of symbols in remembrance of the qualities of the people or things that are being represented. They form the focal point of one's feelings of love, respect and loyalty. In the same way, the shrine found in Buddhist homes or monasteries is a focal point of Buddhist observances. At the center of the shrine, there is usually an image of the Buddha. The image may be made of a variety of materials such as marble, gold, wood or clay. The image is a symbol that helps to remember the noble qualities of the Buddha. The shrine may also have such objects as a volume of Buddhist scripture to represent the Dharma. Some shrines may display other items such as images, pictures or photographs of Buddhist monks and masters to represent the Sangha. When Buddhists stand before a shrine, the objects they see on it help to remind them of the qualities that are found in the Buddha and the Sangha. This inspires them to work towards cultivating these qualities in themselves.

When talking about Holy statues, Buddhists want to imply the statues of the Buddha. According to Prof. Junjiro Takakusu in *The Essentials of Buddhist Philosophy*, none of the earlier sculptures of sanchi and Barhut represent the Buddha in human figure. It is

remarkable to us that the principle events of the Buddha's life have been fully given in sculpture without a figure of the hero. How was that possible? The Buddha at birth is represented by a full blooming lotus; the Buddha in Enlightenment by the Bodhi tree with a rail around it; the Buddha in his first preaching by a wheel, above which a tri-ratna mark is sometimes added; the Buddha in his begging round, or mendicancy, by a bowl; and the like. If suggestion be a means of true art, the early Buddhist artists understood it perfectly and utilized the idea skilfully for practical purposes. However, all this does not necessarily mean that the elders did not represent the Buddha at all during his lifetime, for there is a legend which tells of their making an image for the purpose of offering veneration during the Buddha's absence. They were formalistic and realistic, and so if the Buddha was actually before them, they had a right to depict him in painting or sculpture. Now that he had passed into Nirvana, however, it was improper to represent the one who no longer really lived. It was after a considerable development of the Gandhara art that the southern school of Buddhism began to have images of Buddha. This was believed at about the same time when the Buddha's teachings were committed to writing, i.e., 80 B.C. The elders of idealistic and free-thinking tendencies, whom we might regard as the forerunners of the Mahayana, would not hold any meetings for the rehearsal of the Buddha's sermons, nor would they enlarge upon their Vinaya rules beyond what was laid down by the Buddha himself. They would commit those sacred words to memory or to writing as they pleased. They did not hesitate in using their talents in painting or sculpture to depict the Buddha's image according to their own ideal of beauty and perfection, as they did in the Gandhara art. The trend of the free-thinking mind can also be seen in the metaphysical treatises of the Optionalists (Vaibhasikas), in which several opinions about dharmas or higher dharmas (abhidharmas) are gathered together and some optional ones have been selected and recommended for study. Though the Vaishasika School belonged to the Hinayana, it already betrayed a tendency toward the free-thinking school. Such free-thinking people would be bold in exegesis, erudition, annotation, or in forming and expressing opinion. This, however, does not mean that they departed from the original teachings of the Buddha. Besides the two great

statues of the Buddha in Afghanistan which were destroyed by the Taliban in 2002, there are still several big Buddha statues in the world, among them are the two most famous statues in Japan: 1) a huge statue of Varocana housed in the Todaiji Temple in Nara, commissioned (ủy thác) by emperor Shomu (724-748), it was consecrated (dâng cúng) in 751; and 2) an image of Amitabha Buddha, which was financed by donations gathered by Joko and constructed in 1252. It was originally housed in Kotokuin Temple, but the building was destroyed by a tidal wave in 1495. The image was left intact, but an earthquake in 1923 damaged its base. Extensive repair work was conducted on it in 1960-1961.

IX. The concept of the First Cause in Buddhism:

If one posits a first cause, one is justified in asking for the cause of that “First Cause”, for nothing can escape the law of “condition and cause” which is patent in the world to all but those who will not see. However, a man who attributes beings and events to an omnipotent Creator-God would emphatically say: “It is God’s will, it is sacrilege to question the Authority.” Does not this God-idea stifle the human liberty to investigate, to analyze, to scrutinize, to see what is beyond this naked eye, and so retards insight. It is important to understand that craving is not regarded as the First Cause; for according to Buddhism, there is not First Cause, but beginningless causes and effects and nothing else ruling the universe. Things are neither due to one single cause nor are they causeless, but according to the formula of Dependent Arising, things are multiple caused. Craving, like all other things, physical or mental, is also conditioned, interdependent and relative. It is neither a beginning nor an end in itself. Though craving is cited as the proximate cause of suffering, it is not independent, but interdependent. Dependent on feeling or sensation arises craving, feeling dependent on contact and so forth.

Externalists believe that there exists a so-called “God” who creates all creatures and has the almighty power to punish and reward them. In other words, everything in this world whether good or bad, lucky or unlucky, happy or sad, all come from the power of a supreme Creator, the only Ruler to have the power of reward and punishment. On the contrary, according to Buddhism, everything arises from conditions and

not being spontaneous and self-contained has no separate and independent nature. Also, according to Buddhism, human beings and all living things are self-created or self-creating. The universe is not homocentric; it is a co-creation of all beings. Buddhism does not believe that all things came from one cause, but holds that everything is inevitably created out of more than two causes. The creations or becomings of the antecedent causes continue in time-series, past, present and future, like a chain. This chain is divided into twelve divisions and is called the Twelve Divisioned Cycle of Causation and Becomings. Since these divisions are interdependent, the process is called Dependent Production or Chain of causation. The formula of this theory is as follows: From the existence of this, that becomes; from the happening of this, that happens. From the non-existence of this, that does not become; from the non-happening of this, that does not happen.

X. The Concept of a Soul in Buddhism:

In Buddhist thought, there is no so-called “Soul”. Birth precedes death, and death also precedes birth, so that the pair follow each other in bewildering succession. There is no so-called “Soul”, “Self”, or “Fixed entity” that passes from birth to birth. Though man comprises a psycho-physical unit of mind and matter, the “psyche” or “mind” is not a soul or self, in the sense of an enduring entity, something ready-made and permanent. It is a force, a dynamic continuum capable of storing up memories not only of this life, but also of past lives. The mind or psyche is no more a fixed entity. The Buddha stressed that the so-called “being” or “individual” is nothing but a combination of physical and mental forces, or energies, a change with continuity. Someone may ask, if there is no transmigrating permanent soul or self to reincarnate, then what is it that reborn? According to Buddhism, there is no permanent substance of the nature of Self or Soul that reincarnates or transmigrates. It is impossible to conceive of anything that continues without change. All is in a state of flux. What we call life here is the functioning of the five aggregates of grasping, or the functioning of mind and body which are only energies or forces. They are never the same for two consecutive moments, and in the conflux of mind and body we do not see anything permanent. The grown-up man is neither the child nor quite a different person; there is only a relationship of

continuity. The conflux of mind and body or mental and physical energy is not lost at death, for no force or energy is ever lost. It undergoes change. It resets, reforms in new conditions.

With regard to the psychological question, Buddhism does not admit the existence of a soul that is real and immortal. Anatma or non-self refers to all things (sarva-dharma), organic and inorganic. In the case of human beings, Buddhism believes that there will accordingly to be no soul, no real self that is immortal. While in the case of things in general, there will be no noumenon, no essence which is unchangeable. Because there is no real self spatially, i.e., no substance, there will be no permanent, i.e., no duration. Therefore, no bliss, is to be found in the world. In Buddhism, the term "heart" for the mind, soul or spirit. Ancient people believed that the 'heart' is in the chest area. In Zen, it means either the mind of a person in the sense of all his powers of consciousness, mind, heart and spirit, or else absolutely reality, the mind beyond the distinction between mind and matter. It is for the sake of giving practitioners an easier understanding of Mind, Buddhist teachers usually divide the mind into aspects or layers, but to Zen, Mind is one great Whole, without parts or divisions. The manifesting, illuminating, and nonsubstantial characteristics of Mind exist simultaneously and constantly, inseparable and indivisible in their totality. "Mind" is also another name for the Alaya-vijnana. Unlike the material body, immaterial mind is invisible. We are aware of our thoughts and feelings and so forth by direct sensation, and we infer their existence in others by analogy. The mind is the root of all dharmas. In Contemplation of the Mind Sutra, the Buddha taught: "All my tenets are based on the mind that is the source of all dharmas." The mind has brought about the Buddhas, the Heaven, or the Hell. It is the main driving force that makes us happy or sorrowful, cheerful or sad, liberated or doomed.

XI. Education in Buddhism:

The goal of any Buddhist cultivator is to achieve self-enlightening (examine with one's own intelligence, and not depending upon another), enlightening or awakening of others, then achieve the final accomplishment, that is to become a Buddha. Devout Buddhists should always remember that the goal of Buddhist education is to help sentient

beings become Buddhas, or at least become real Buddhists, and not aiming at socializing human beings as worldly people. Because Buddhism is a religion of returning to self (looking inward), the goal of its education must be inward and not outward for appearances and matters. As mentioned above, the main causes of sufferings and afflictions are greed, anger, hatred, ignorance, pride, doubt, wrong views, killing, stealing, sexual misconduct, lying, and so on... and the ultimate goal of Buddhism is to help sentient beings, especially, human beings to eliminate these troubles so that if we are not able to become a Buddha, at least we can become a real Buddhist. Therefore, the goal of Buddhist education is freeing cultivators from being led by these troubles so that they could see Reality and the Truth as it is. The Buddha taught that man of this present moment is the result of millions and millions of his past thoughts and actions, and not ready-made as a cake or a piece of candy. Man's character is determined by his own thinking, thus, man is not perfect by nature. In order to become perfect, man has to educate and train himself. Among other sentient beings, human beings have the ability to think and to reason, and the intelligence to educate and build their life a better one. However, in order to achieve a better or a perfect life, Buddhist or non-Buddhist has no other ways but educating himself with the five precepts (not killing, not stealing, not committing sexual misconduct, not lying and not drinking alcohol or doing drugs) and the eightfold noble path (right view, right thinking, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness and right concentration)... that is to say education in morality. Besides, the core of Buddhism is the law of "Cause and Effect" so Buddhist education cannot miss this law. Devout Buddhists should always remember that "If this is, that comes to be; from the arising of this, that arises. If this is not, that does not come to be; from the ceasing of this, that ceases." Buddhist education helps point out to everybody that the law of "Cause and Effect" is for everybody, from normal people to saints. If you sow good deeds, you'll reap good results. In the contrary, if you sow bad deeds, you'll reap bad results without any exception. Therefore, according to the Buddhist education, whichever causes increases of greed, anger, ignorance, pride, doubt, wrong views, killing, stealing, sexual misconduct, lying... is bad and we should stay away from; and whichever helps decreasing

or stopping the above-mentioned troubles is good and we should pursue. Whatever we say, devout Buddhists should always remember that Buddhism is not a mere system of doctrine, it is a way of life. If we educate ourselves the way the Buddha taught, we would surely have a peaceful, mindful and happy life.

Buddhists always need two ways of education. The first way is secular education and the second one is religious education. These two ways are considered as the two wings for a bird. Without two wings, no bird can fly. Similarly, without these two ways of education, Buddhists would lead to a poor and obscure life, not only in the secular world but also in the spiritual life. Secular education will help us with an appropriate profession to support our family while religious education will help us lead a true happy life. As a matter of fact, religious education is extremely necessary, for it teaches us how to think and act in order to be good and happy. Besides, it also helps us love and understand the meaning of life so that we are able to adjust ourselves to its laws in any circumstances. After experiencing six years in ascetic practices, the Buddha advised his followers to follow the middle path. He taught: “Buddhists should always make best use of their secular life while cultivating the path of true happiness in this world and hereafter.”

XII. Buddhism and Ancestor Worship:

In Buddhism, the debt to our ancestors, parents and teachers is one of the four great debts. Parents and teachers are those who give us lives and who teach us to step into the correct way. Our responsibilities are not limited in paying them respect, serve them, but we also should try to cultivate and to support them to soon liberate. According to our old customs, Buddhists worship ancestors to show our appreciations. According to Buddhism, worshipping ancestors, with the hope of relieving their karma, is not a bad custom. Buddhists diligently cultivate is the best way to show our appreciations to our ancestors. However, some Buddhists misunderstand about Buddhism and consider the worshipping the most important issue in Buddhism. Vietnamese people have long believed in the existence of the soul or consciousness after death. Ancestors are thought to watch over and to support their living descendants. Thus, living descendants always worship their

ancestors with ultimate respect. Vietnamese people celebrate death anniversary, not only for their deceased parents, but also for their grand-parents, great grand-parents, and great-great grand-parents. They can celebrate with a party or with the simplest ancestral ritual of burning incense and bowing before their ancestors' altars or before their ancestors' portraits. In some families, beside placing offerings of food and drink in front of the altar, they also have the custom to burn paper money for their ancestors. In addition, in some areas in Central Vietnam, there still exist some Clan Temples which worship ancestors of the same surnames. It is no doubt that ancestor worship has helped our people maintain unity and continuity (maintaining generations). Buddhism always promotes ancestor worship by the practice of chanting sutras for the dead, hoping to relieve their karma.

XIII. Buddhism and Beauty:

Many people, especially people from the western world, have a misconception of Buddhism. They suggest that Buddhism is a religion of pessimism. They suggest that Buddhism stresses on impermanence, suffering and egolessness so there is no so-called "Beauty" in Buddhism. In fact, the Buddha never criticized "Beauty" in any of his lectures. A Buddhist never avoids objects of beauty, nor does he run away from these things. He only refrains from making them the basis for strong and individual likes and dislikes. He always keeps in mind the Buddha's Teaching: "Whatever there is in the world, pleasant and lovable, we have a tendency to attach to them, and we develop a dislike towards their opposites." Besides, Buddhism believes in Anitya, which is the state of not being permanent, of lasting or existing only for a short time, of changing continually. Physical changes operating from the state of formation, to that of development, decay and disintegration are exact manifestations of the law of transformation. All things in the universe, from the small grain of sand, the human body, to the big one such as the earth, moon and sun are governed by the above law, and as such, must come through these four periods: birth, growth, changes and death; change from young to old, from beautiful to ugly, and so on. And this process of changes characterizes impermanence, and this change happens in every second, if we don't want to say in every ksana (an instance as a measure of a very short time compared to a second).

Keep this in mind, the Buddhist recognizes beauty where the senses can perceive it. But in beauty he also sees its own change and destruction. He always remembers what the Buddha said with regard to all component things, that they come into being, undergo change and are destroyed. Therefore, the wise man acquires a great depth of vision. His admiration for the beauty is not coloured by a greed for acquisition and possession. To Buddhists, the shape or color of the face doesn't matter because it's only temporary with time. A young, beautiful face of today may someday become an old ugly face with wrinkles and dots all over. To Buddhists, no matter how beautiful or ugly their face may be, they focus on cultivating love, that love will give them an inward eternal charm, a real beauty to all Buddhists.

XIV. Is Buddhism Pessimism or Optimism?:

Pessimism means to hate, to distrust mankind, or to avoid human society, or to be weary of the world. Sometimes, pessimism also means to renounce the world. "Sukha" is a main factor in Buddhist cultivation, meaning pleasant mental feeling. It is identical with "joy" or "bliss." Sukha is identical with Somanassa. However, the joy in Buddhism is not the pleasant bodily feeling that accompanies wholesome-resultant body-consciousness. On the contrary, this "Sukha" rendered as bliss, is born detachment from sensual pleasures; it is therefore explained as unworldly or spiritual happiness (niramisasukha). There are some people who regard this life as a life of suffering or pessimists may be tolerated as long as they are simply feeling dissatisfied with this life, but when they begin to give up this life as hopeless and try to escape to a better life by practicing austerities or self-mortifications, then they are to be abhorred. Some people believe that Buddhism is pessimistic because its significant viewpoint on the idea that there is nothing but hardship in this world, even pleasures end in hardship. It is totally wrong thinking that way. Buddhism believes that in this present life, there are both pleasures and hardships. He who regards life as entirely pleasure will suffer when the so-called "happiness" ceases to exist. The Buddha believes that happiness and sufferings intertwine in our daily life. If one is ignorant of the fact that pleasures can cause hardships, one will be disappointed when that fact presents itself. Thus the Buddha teaches that one should regard hardship as hardship,

accepting it as a fact and finding way to oppose it. Hence his emphasis on perserverance, fortitude, and forbearance, the latter being one of the six Perfections. In short, according to the Buddhist view, there are both pleasures and hardships in life, but one must not be discouraged when hardship comes, or lose oneself in rapture of joy when pleasure comes. Both pleasures and hardships must be taken alike with caution for we know that pleasures end in hardship. From this understanding, sincere Buddhists will be determined to cultivate diligently to turn both worldly pleasures and hardships to an eternally transcendental joy. It is to say that we are not bound to both worldly pleasures and hardships at all times. They come and go naturally. We are always live a life without worries, without afflictions because we know for sure that everything will pass. The Buddhist point of view on both optimism and pessimism is very clear: Buddhism is not optimistic nor pessimistic on human life. Two extremes of both optimism and pessimism are prevented by the moderate doctrine of Buddhism.

XV. Is Buddhism A Religion or A Philosophy?:

Is Buddhism a philosophy? The word philosophy comes from two words 'philo' which means 'love' and 'sophia' which means 'wisdom'. So, philosophy is the love of wisdom or love and wisdom, both meanings describing Buddhism perfectly. Buddhism teaches that we should try to develop our intellectual capacity to the fullest so that we can understand clearly. It also teaches us to develop loving kindness and compassion so that we can become (be like) a true friend to all beings. So Buddhism is a philosophy but not just a philosophy. It is the supreme philosophy. As to whether Buddhism is a philosophy, that depends upon the definition of the word; and whether it is possible to give the definition that will cover all existing systems of philosophical thought is doubtful. Etymologically philosophy means to love (Gr. *Philein*) wisdom (*sophia*). Philosophy has been both the seeking of wisdom and the wisdom sought. In Indian thought, philosophy should be to find out the ultimate truth. Buddhism also advocates the search for truth. But it is no mere speculative reasoning, a theoretical structure, a mere acquiring and storing of knowledge. The Buddha emphasizes the practical aspect of his teaching, the application of knowledge to life, looking into life and not merely at it. For the

Buddha, the entire teaching is just the understanding of the unsatisfactory nature of all phenomenal existence and the cultivation of the path leading away from this unsatisfactoriness.

Nowadays, a majority of scholars believe that Buddhism is a living philosophy that denies superstitions. Buddhism means wisdom; therefore, Buddhism never accepts superstitions (venerating the head of tiger, and buffalo, the snake and centipede deities, the Lares, consulting fortuneteller, reading the horoscope, etc.); however, superstitious beliefs and rituals are adopted to decorate a religion in order to attract the multitude. But after some time, the creeper which is planted to decorate the shrine outgrows and outshines the shrine, with the result that religious tenets are relegated to be the background and superstitious beliefs and rituals become predominant. The Buddha taught us to try to understand our fear, to lessen our desires and to calmly and courageously accept things we cannot change. He replaced fear, not with blindly and irrational belief but with rational understanding which corresponds to the truth. Furthermore, Buddhists do not believe in God because there does not seem to be any concrete evidence to support this idea. Who can answer questions on God? Who is God? Is God masculine or feminine or neuter? Who can provide ample evidence with real, concrete, substantial or irrefutable facts to prove the existence of God? So far, no one can. Buddhists suspend judgment until such evidence is forthcoming. Besides, such belief in God is not necessary for a really meaningful and happy life. If you believe that God makes your life meaningful and happy, so be it. But remember, more than two-thirds of the world do not believe in God and who can say that they don't have a meaningful and happy life? And who dare to say that those who believe in God, all have a meaningful and happy life? If you believe that God help you overcome disabilities and difficulties, so be it. But Buddhists do not accept the theological concept of salvation. In the contrary, based on the Buddha's own experience, he showed us that each human being had the capacity to purify the body and the mind, develop infinitive love and compassion and perfect understanding. He shifted the gods and heavens to the self-heart and encouraged us to find solution to our problems through self-understanding. Finally, such myths of God and creation concept have been superseded by scientific facts. Science has explained the origin of

the universe completely without recourse to the god-idea. In Buddhism, faith in supernatural power is only a need to sooth the people in distressed situations. In extremely distressed situations, people have a tendency to turn to faith, or exterior power for support, consolation and blessing. Buddhism, on the contrary, is indifferent metaphysical and supernatural questions for Buddhism maintains and upholds the ability and intellectual capacity of man. In Buddhism, man must not be passive and dependent on others. In Buddhism, man has his own responsibility to free himself. Thus, the Buddha taught in the Nirvana Sutra: "You must light the torch for yourselves. The Buddha is one who leads the way. The goal of liberation can be reached only by you yourselves and nobody else." Buddhists never believe in the belief which is not based on reason or fact but on association of imaginations or magics. If you can show us (Buddhists) a careful study of the existence of a god written by a scientist, we will concede that belief in god is not fabulous. But we (Buddhists) have never heard of any research on god, and scientists simply wouldn't bother to study such impossible things, so I say there is no evidence for the existence of god. A long long time ago, when people had no knowledge of science, people were unable to explain the origin of the universe, so they turned to god as a creator of the universe, but in the twenty first century, scientists have explained very clearly on the origin of the universe without recourse to the god-idea. Thus, we must see that our inability to explain the origin of the universe does not prove the existence of god or gods. Thus, the Buddha always reminded his disciples: "Do not rush to believe in anything without examining carefully, even my teachings." Besides, the Buddha advised his disciples not to exercise psychic power in order to convert people with blind faith. He was referring to the miraculous power to walk on water, to exercise spirits, raise the dead and perform the so-called supernatural practices. He was also referring to the miracles of prophesy such as thought-reading, sooth-saying, fortune-telling, and so on. When people with blind faith see the performance of such powers, their faith deepens; however, this belief is not true belief because it does not come from their own realization of the truth, but due to the blind faith. With the Buddha, the miracle of realization is a real miracle. When a person knows that he is greedy, angry, ignorant, pride of his own self, and full of wrong views, etc, and he is willing to end these

wrong and unwholesome actions, he really realizes a miracle for his own life. When a murderer, a thief, a terrorist, a drunkard or an adulterer is made to realize that what he had been doing is wrong and gives up his bad, immoral and harmful way of life, this change can be regarded as a real miracle. According to Buddhism, there exists a real miracle when we clearly see life is no more than a process from coming into being, to formation, changing and destruction with full of sufferings and afflictions. Therefore, in no way we can avoid both the process formation and destruction and sufferings and afflictions. The more we try to avoid our problems or the more we try not to think about our problems, the more we accumulate problems inside ourselves. When we clearly understand the true nature of sufferings and afflictions, we'll be able to deal with them more effectively. Also according to Buddhist points of view, all the causes of sufferings and afflictions are ignorance, craving and hatred. These are the "three poisons of the mind". Only by generating insight into the true nature of reality, we may be able to eliminate ignorance, able to achieve a completely purified state of mind, able to see right from wrong, good from bad, as well as other harmful anger and hatred in our daily life. Of course, each one of us wishes to be free from sufferings and afflictions, for these are the first factors for a happy life. However, as long as we still rely on someone else to save us by eliminating the problems for us, we still fear, avoid and try not to engage to confront our own problems, and therefore, problems never voluntarily leave us. According to Buddhist points of view, sufferings and afflictions may be arisen as a result of our past karma. Understand this concept, we will never try to blame our problems on others. There is no reason for us to be too strict on ourselves, as human beings, we are all imperfect. Every one of us has at least once done some thing wrong. The important thing is whether or not we recognize and admit our wrong-doings that we have done in the past. If we admit that we're mistaken, there will be room for correction.

Besides, Buddhism is also a philosophy that teaches people to live a happy life. It's also a religion that teaches people to end the cycle of birth and death. The main teachings of the Buddha focus on the Four Noble Truths and the Eightfold Noble Path. They are called "Noble" because they enoble one who understand them and they are called

“Truths” because they correspond with reality. Buddhists neither believe in negative thoughts nor do they believe in pessimistic ideas. In the contrary, Buddhists believe in facts, irrefutable facts, facts that all know, that all have aimed to experience and that all are striving to reach. Those who believe in god or gods usually claim that before an individual is created, he does not exist, then he comes into being through the will of a god. He lives his life and then according to what he believes during his life, he either goes to eternal heaven or eternal hell. Some believe that they come into being at conception due to natural causes, live and then die or cease to exist, that’s it! Buddhism does not accept either of these concepts. According to the first explanation, if there exists a so-called almighty god who creates all beings with all his loving kindness and compassion, it is difficult to explain why so many people are born with the most dreadful deformities, or why so many people are born in poverty and hunger. It is nonsense and unjust for those who must fall into eternal hells because they do not believe and submit themselves to such a so-called almighty god. The second explanation is more reasonable, but it still leaves several unanswered questions. Yes, conception due to natural causes, but how can a phenomenon so amazingly complex as consciousness develop from the simple meeting of two cells, the egg and the sperm? Buddhism agrees on natural causes; however, it offers more satisfactory explanation of where man came from and where he is going after his death. When we die, the mind, with all the tendencies, preferences, abilities and characteristics that have been developed and conditioned in this life, re-establishes itself in a fertilized egg. Thus the individual grows, is reborn and develops a personality conditioned by the mental characteristics that have been carried over by the new environment. The personality will change and be modified by conscious effort and conditioning factors like education, parental influence and society and once again at death, re-establish itself in a new fertilized egg. This process of dying and being reborn will continue until the conditions that cause it, craving and ignorance, cease. When they do, instead of being reborn, the mind attains a state called Nirvana and this is the ultimate goal of Buddhism.

Buddhism is a “Way of Life” with complete moral, spiritual and intellectual training leading to a complete freedom of mind. According

to Most Venerable Piyadassi in “The Buddha’s Ancient Path,” some prefer to call the teaching of the Buddha a religion, others call it a philosophy, still others think of it as both religion and philosophy. It may, however, be more correct to call it a “Way of Life”. But that does not mean that Buddhism is nothing more than an ethical code. Far from it, it is a way of moral, spiritual and intellectual training leading to a complete freedom of mind. The Buddha himself called his teaching “Dhamma-Vinaya”, the Doctrine and the Discipline. But Buddhism, in the strictest sense of the word, can not be called a religion, for if by religion is meant “action of conduct indicating belief in, reverence for, and desire to please, a divine ruling power; the exercise or practice of rites or observances implying this...; recognition on the part of man of some higher unseen power as having control of his destiny, and as being entitled to obedience, reverence, and worship.” Buddhism certainly is not such a religion. In Buddhist thought, there is no awareness or conviction of the existence of a Creator of any form who rewards and punishes the good and ill deeds of the creatures of his creation. A Buddhist takes refuge in the Buddha, but not in the hope that he will be saved by the Master. There is no such guarantee, the Buddha is only a teacher who points out the way and guides the followers to their individual deliverance.

In short, Buddhism includes Religion, Philosophy, Morality, and Ethics. A religion, especially an advanced religion like Buddhism, includes philosophy, morality, and ethics. Indeed, Buddhism can be said to consist almost entirely of the teaching of philosophy and morality. However, when we make a profound study of the teaching, we find there is something beyond this that touches our hearts directly. It is like a light that envelops us warmly and shines brightly, illuminating our way. It is something that enlivens us and allows us to develop fully according to our true potential. In other words, Buddhism is the teaching within the minds of all living beings. We can call all the truth, the Buddha’s teaching or it can be called no teaching at all because it’s the truth, it goes beyond human words. However, sincere Buddhists should always remember that the mind, the Buddha, and living beings are one and undifferentiated. Thus, no matter what religion you belong to, as long as you are a living being, Buddhism counts you as part of it for all living beings have the Buddha-nature. To

all Buddhists, all labels are not important for human deliverance. Though we call the teaching of the Buddha “Buddhism”, thus including it among the “isms” and “ologies”, it does not really matter what we label it. Call it religion, philosophy, Buddhism, or by any other name you like. These labels are of little significance to one who goes in search of truth and deliverance. To the Buddha, man is a supreme being, thus, he taught: “Be your own torch and your own refuge. Do not seek refuge in any other person.” This was the Buddha’s truthful word. He also said: “All realizations come from effort and intelligence that derive from one’s own experience. Man is the master of his destiny, since he can make his life better or worse. If he tries his best to cultivate, he can become a Buddha”.

XVI. Buddhism and Science:

Even though Buddhism was founded more than twenty-five centuries ago, the Truth in Buddhist Teachings is always in accord With Life and Science at all times. The main teachings of the Buddha focus on the Four Noble Truths and the Eightfold Noble Path. They are called “Noble” because they enoble one who understand them and they are called “Truths” because they correspond with reality. Buddhists neither believe in negative thoughts nor do they believe in pessimistic ideas. In the contrary, Buddhists believe in facts, irrefutable facts, facts that all know, that all have aimed to experience and that all are striving to reach. Those who believe in god or gods usually claim that before an individual is created, he does not exist, then he comes into being through the will of a god. He lives his life and then according to what he believes during his life, he either goes to eternal heaven or eternal hell. Some believe that they come into being at conception due to natural causes, live and then die or cease to exist, that’s it! Buddhism does not accept either of these concepts. According to the first explanation, if there exists a so-called almighty god who creates all beings with all his loving kindness and compassion, it is difficult to explain why so many people are born with the most dreadful deformities, or why so many people are born in poverty and hunger. It is nonsense and unjust for those who must fall into eternal hells because they do not believe and submit themselves to such a so-called almighty god. The second explanation is more reasonable, but it still

leaves several unanswered questions. Yes, conception due to natural causes, but how can a phenomenon so amazingly complex as consciousness develop from the simple meeting of two cells, the egg and the sperm? Buddhism agrees on natural causes; however, it offers more satisfactory explanation of where man came from and where he is going after his death. When we die, the mind, with all the tendencies, preferences, abilities and characteristics that have been developed and conditioned in this life, re-establishes itself in a fertilized egg. Thus the individual grows, is reborn and develops a personality conditioned by the mental characteristics that have been carried over by the new environment. The personality will change and be modified by conscious effort and conditioning factors like education, parental influence and society and once again at death, re-establish itself in a new fertilized egg. This process of dying and being reborn will continue until the conditions that cause it, craving and ignorance, cease. When they do, instead of being reborn, the mind attains a state called Nirvana and this is the ultimate goal of Buddhism. Buddhism requires no revision to keep it up to date with recent scientific findings. Even though Science is not one of the main teachings in Buddhism, Buddhist theories are always in accord with science at all times. Albert Einstein confirmed: "If there is any religion that would cope with modern scientific needs, it would be Buddhism. Buddhism requires no revision to keep it up to date with recent scientific findings. Buddhism does not need to surrender its views to science, because it embraces science as well as goes beyond science." Also according to Egerton C. Baptist: "Science can give no assurance. But Buddhism can meet the Atomic challenge, because the supermundane knowledge of Buddhism begins where science leave off. And this is clear enough to anyone who has made a study of Buddhism. For, through Buddhist meditation, the atomic constitutes making up matter have been seen and felt."

XVII. Pragmatism of Buddhism:

Truly speaking, all approaches of Buddhism are always pragmatic. In the length of history of more than twenty-five centuries, Buddhism addresses only practical problems, not in academic questions and metaphysical theories. According to the Chulamalunkya Sutra, the Buddha expressed very clearly about the pragmatic approach of

Buddhism in everything. The Buddha himself made use of the parable of a wounded man. In the story, a man wounded by an arrow wishes to know who shot the arrow, the direction from which it came, whether the arrowhead is made of bone or steel, and what kind of wood the shaft is made of before he will let the arrow be removed. The Buddha wanted to imply the man's attitude with the attitude of those who want to know about the origin of the universe, whether it is eternal or not, finite in space or not, and so on, before they will undertake to practice a religion. According to the Buddha, these people are people of idle talks and pleasure discussions. Such people will die uselessly before they ever have the answers to all their irrelevant questions, just as the man in the parable will die before he has all the answers he seeks about the origin and nature of the arrow. Thus, the Buddha taught: "Mankind's most important priority is the reduction and elimination of suffering, and try not to waste the precious time on irrelevant inquiries."

As a matter of fact, the Buddha taught his disciples not to stubbornly attach to the Buddhadharma, but utilizing the dharma as a raft to go to the other shore. According to Buddhism, a Buddhist cultivator is similar to a man who was trying to escape from a group of bandits came to a vast stretch of water that was in his way. He knew that this side of the shore was dangerous and the other side was safe. However, there was no boat going to the other shore, nor was there any bridge for crossing over. So, he quickly gathers wood, branches and leaves to make a raft, and with the help of the raft, he crossed over safely to the other shore. The Noble Eightfold Path taught by the Buddha is like the raft. It would take us from the suffering of this shore to the other shore of no suffering. In Mahayana Buddhism, the teaching is likened a raft; when the goal, the other shore, is reached, then the raft is left behind. The form of teaching is not final dogma but an expedient method. According to the Discourse on the Water Snake's Parable, the Buddha taught: "My teaching is like a raft for crossing over, not for carrying." Buddha's teaching is like a raft, a means of crossing the river, the raft being left when the crossing has been made.

Buddha-Dharmas always content the Pragmatism. In Buddhism, dharma refers to all the methods of cultivation taught by the Buddha which leads to ultimate enlightenment. They are means that lead to an end, not an end themselves. The Buddha's teaching is likened a raft for

going the other shore. All of us depend on the raft of Dharma to cross the river of birth and death. We strive with our hands, feet, and wisdom to reach the other shore. When the goal, the other shore, is reached, then the raft is left behind. The form of teaching is not final dogma but an expedient method. According to the Discourse on the Water Snake's Parable, the Buddha taught: "My teaching is like a raft for crossing over, not for carrying." Also, according to the Middle Length Saying, the Buddha taught: "The dharma that I teach is like a raft. Even Dharma should be relinquished, how much the more that which is not Dharma? The Raft of Dharma is for crossing over, not for retaining."

XVIII. Buddhist Concept on Fate:

Buddhism has no concern with either determinism or determinateness because it is a religion of self-creation. It holds the theory of free will within the sphere of human beings. Buddhism, therefore, has nothing to do with fatalism, for it does not admit the existence of anything like destiny or the decree of fate. According to Buddhism, all living beings have assumed the present life as the result of self-creation, and are, even at present, in the midst of creating themselves. Birth and death are not the predestined fate of a living being but only a corollary of action or karma. One who acts must sooner or later reap the result of such action. Nobody can determine the fate of anybody else in this universe. In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: "All that we are is the result of what we have thought; it is founded on our thoughts; it is made up of our thoughts." Thus, there is no room for the idea of "Creation" in Buddhism.

According to fatalism, each of us has a fate which we cannot change and about which we can do nothing. As they say "Whatever will be will be." In this philosophy the agent that determine destiny is not, as in the theistic position, a personal God, but rather a mysterious impersonal power called "Fate" which transcends our understanding and hence our ability to persuade or manipulate. According to Buddhism, the mind is the ultimate determinant of our destiny. In Buddhism, there exists no such "destiny." In fact, Buddhism considers this as a way or a path of going. Our destiny issues from our character, our character from our habits, our habits from our acts, and our acts from our thoughts. And since thoughts issue from the mind the ultimate

determinant of our destiny. In fact, the mind is the only creator Buddhism recognizes, and the power of the mind the only significant power in the world. As Milton, an English poet in the seventeenth century, says: “The mind can make a heaven of hell, and a hell of heaven.” If we think good thoughts, our acts cannot be bad. By thinking good thoughts, we will produce better actions, develop better habits, mold better characters and inherit better destiny. According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are five gati (destinations, destinies).

XIX. Buddhism and Epistemology:

Concerning epistemological questions, Buddhism has much more to say than any other philosophy. As sources of cognition Buddhism recognizes the world of sensation (Pratyaksa-pramana), the world of inference (anumana) and the world of pure intuition (dhyana). Thus sense-data, reason and inner experience resulting from intuition will all provide the content of knowledge. Besides these we can appeal in every case to the Word that has been uttered from the world of perfect enlightenment (Bodhi), i.e., the Buddha (the Enlightened). Even in the epistemological questions, Buddhism always bases on the truth of “Cause and Effect” or the truth of “Karma and Retribution” to solve most the world problems, not to utilize any blind faith in the epistemological questions. According to Buddhist literature, the Buddha ridiculed all deluded rituals of the Brahmins and accused the priests of fabricating them for no better reason than to make money from the wealthy and to manipulate the power. However, this ridicule of Brahman rituals led to challenging the authority of the Vedic literature that the Brahman priests considered sacred. These Brahman priests refused to accept the theory of causation. They continued to follow perverted (wrong) views or opinions, not consistent with the dharma. This view arises from a misconception of the real characteristic of existence. There were at least sixty-two heretical views (views of the externalist or non-Buddhist views) in the Buddha’s time. On the contrary, Buddhism emphasizes on theory of causation. Understanding the theory of causation means to solve most of the question of the causes of sufferings and afflictions. Not understanding or refuse of understanding of the theory of causation means a kind of

wrong view in Buddhism. According to the Buddha, sentient beings suffer from sufferings and afflictions because of desires, aversions, and delusion, and the causes of these harmful actions are not only from ignorance, but also from wrong views. Later Dharmakirti criticized the Brahmanical doctrine of the special authority of the Veda, which the Brahmins supposed had been revealed to human beings by God, which no one can confirm. On the other hand, the Buddha taught nothing but principles that every human being could confirm. However, a full confirmation of the Buddha's teachings was said to be impossible for a person whose vision was still clouded by delusions. Concerning epistemological questions, Buddhism has much more to say than any other philosophy. As sources of cognition Buddhism recognizes the world of sensation (Pratyaksa-pramana), the world of inference (anumana) and the world of pure intuition (dhyana). Thus sense-data, reason and inner experience resulting from intuition will all provide the content of knowledge. Besides these we can appeal in every case to the Word that has been uttered from the world of perfect enlightenment (Bodhi), i.e., the Buddha (the Enlightened).

XX. Buddhism and Art:

According to extant records of the earliest Buddhist community, iconographic representation was discouraged by Sakyamuni Buddha and his followers, who wanted to prevent the development of cults that focus on the figure of the Buddha, rather than on the doctrines and practices he taught. In addition, the central focus of the monastic community was introspective meditation, rather than external symbolism. As Buddhism grew and attracted more followers, artistic representations began to appear. There was, however, an initial reluctance to represent the Buddha directly, and so he was often depicted in aniconic motifs, such as his footprints (buddha-pada) or the Bodhi Tree (Bodhi-Vrksa). The most widespread aniconic representation of the Buddha was in the form of reliquaries called "Stupas." These continue to be popular throughout the Buddhist world, and a plethora of styles has developed. In Indian Buddhism it was commonly thought that they physically represented the Buddha, and some texts indicate that it was widely believed that venerating a stupa was equivalent to venerating the Buddha himself. Iconic

representations began to appear on stupas some time after the reign of Asoka (272- 236 B.C.), and a number of figures are found on stupas at Bharhut, Sanci, and Amaravati. These monuments have carved depicting scenes from the life of the Buddha. Around the end of the first century, artists began to fashion representations of the Buddha, and the Buddha dispersed symbol in Buddhist art all over the world. The earliest known examples of the Buddha image borrowed motifs from non-Buddhist traditions, since there was at that time no accepted notion regarding how he should be represented. Artists in Mathura, present-day north central India, for example, adopted imagery from the depiction of Yakshas, and in Gandhara, present-day Afghanistan, artists appear to have been influenced by Greek art. As Buddhism spread to other parts of the world this trend continued, and the Buddha image has acquired the characteristics and artistic motifs of the local populations of every Buddhist society. Despite Buddhism's initial rejection of artistic representation, Buddhist art flourished both in India and throughout Asia. With the development of tantric Buddhism in India, art and imagery also became integrated into meditative practice. As tantric Buddhism spread to Tibet, Mongolia, China, Japan, Korea and Vietnam, elaborate use of imagery became widespread in many quarters.

XXI. World of Peace and War in Buddhist Point of View:

According to Buddhist point of view, mutual love will lead to the world peace. In order to establish a better world, a world of peace, harmony and mutual love between peoples, we must begin by cultivating ourselves. For the collective karma of the world is nothing but a reflection of the individual karma of the individuals that make up the world. To cultivate our karma, we must begin with the mind. Also according to Buddhism, all kinds of action are nothing but outward expressions of what transpires in the mind. If our minds are filled with hatred, what will happen? We will make many enemies. But if our minds are filled with love, we will make many friends. What stirs in the mind reveals itself outwardly in the world. Thus, everything depends upon the mind of man. Confucius expresses the same idea when he says: "If there be righteousness in the mind, there will be beauty in the character. If there be beauty in the character, there will be harmony in

the home. If there be harmony in the home, there will be order in the nation. If there be order in the nation, there will be peace in the world.” Therefore, according to the Buddhist point of view, if we wish to have a peaceful world, we must first begin to improve ourselves; we must cultivate our persons and rectify our minds. If we improve ourselves, then we can build up a happy and harmonious family life. When a nation is made up of harmonious families, then the nation will be well-ordered. And with well-ordered nations, we can establish peace in the world. According to Buddhism, the way to peace lies through peace: we must develop peace within ourselves if we hope to establish peace in the world. The condition of the world is the product of the deeds, words, and thoughts of the people that make up the world. If everyone practices better action, better speech, and better thought, then the world will be much better. However, the Buddha teaches us not to kill, but he never teaches us not to fight against enemies to protect our country. Buddhists should always follow the teachings of the Buddha, especially the first precept of “prohibiting killing.” In more than 2,500 years of Buddhist history, there were some cases of fighting between monks, or fighting with civil authorities in Tibet and Japan. However, invasion in the name of religion is unknown in Buddhism (one country invades other countries to spread a religion never happens in any Buddhist countries). In the past, reasons for monks in Tibet fought with other monks and with civil authorities were mainly concerned with money and power, not with the propagation of Buddhism. The same reasons for the fighting among monks and civil authorities in Japan. In Sri Lanka, king Dutthagamani launched battles to fight against Damilas dynasty of the Tamils who tried to invade Ceyland at the time, king Dutthagamani never put forward any battles with the intention of invasion of the continent of India for the spreading of Buddhism. The Buddha teaches us not to kill, but he never teaches us not to fight against enemies to protect our country.

XXII. Human Beings' Roles in Buddhism:

Most of us are agreed to the fact that among all living beings, human beings are unique beings who can understand what we are and what we should be. Compared to other beings, man is most complete and superior not only in the mentality and thinking, but also in the

ability of organization of social life. Human beings' life cannot be substituted nor repeated nor determined by someone else. Once we are born in this world, we have to live our own life, a meaningful and worth living life. Thus, the ancient said: "Man is the most sacred and superior animal." Even though human beings are superior sentient beings, but to Buddhism, any living being's life is precious and of the same value. That is to say no being's life is more precious than the other's. According to the Upasaka Sutra, Buddhism agrees that in all living beings, man is endowed with all necessary faculties, intelligence. Buddhism also agrees that conditions of human beings are not too miserable as those beings in the hell or the hungry ghosts. To Buddhism, human life is difficult to obtain. If we are born as human beings with many qualities, difficult to attain. We should try to make our lives meaningful ones. Besides, human beings have intelligence. This precious quality enables us to investigate the true meaning of life and to practice the path to enlightenment. Devout Buddhists should always remember that what rebirth we will take depends on our present actions and habits. Thus, our purpose in this very life is to attain liberation or enlightenment, either becoming liberated from cyclic existence (Arhats), or becoming fully enlightened Buddhas. Most of all, we should be able to take advantage of our precious human lives to live to the fullest, moment by moment. To achieve this, we must be mindful of each moment, not being in the here-and-now when we act. According to Buddhist point of view, we have precious human lives, endowed with many qualities to attain. Because of this, we can make our lives highly meaningful. We often take our lives for granted and dwell on the things that aren't going the way we would like them to. Thinking this way is unrealistic and makes us depressed. However, if we think about the qualities we do have and everything that is going well, we'll have a different and more joyful perspective on life. One of our greatest endowments is our human intelligence. This precious quality enables us to investigate the meaning of life and to practice to advance on the path to enlightenment. If all of our senses, eyes, ears, mental... are intact, we are able to hear the Dharma, read books on it, and think about its meaning. We're so lucky to be born in an historical era when the Buddha has appeared and taught the Dharma. These teachings have been transmitted in a pure from teacher to student in

lineages stemming back to the Buddha. We have the opportunity to have qualified spiritual masters who can teach us, and there are communities of ordained people and dharma friends who share our interest and encourage us on the path. Those of us who are fortunate to live in countries that cherish religious freedom aren't restricted from learning and practicing the path. In addition, most of us don't live in desperate poverty and thus have enough food, clothing and shelter to engage in spiritual practice without worrying about basic material needs. Our minds aren't heavily obscured with wrong views and we are interested in self-development. We have the potential to do great things with our present opportunity. But to appreciate this, we must develop a long-term vision for our cultivation because our present lives are only a short one. Devout Buddhists should always remember that our mindstreams don't cease when our physical bodies die. Our minds are formless entities, but when they leave our present bodies at the time of death, they will be reborn in other bodies. What rebirth we'll take depends on our present actions. Therefore, one purpose of our lives can be to prepare for death and future lives. In that way, we can die peacefully, knowing our minds will be propelled towards good rebirths. The other way that we can utilize our lives is to attain liberation or enlightenment. We can become arhats, beings liberated from cyclic existence, or we can go on to become fully enlightened Buddhas, able to benefit others most effectively. Attaining liberation, our minds will be completely cleansed of all disturbing attitudes. Thus, we'll never become angry, jealous or proud again. We no longer feel guilty, anxious or depressed, and all our bad habits will be gone. In addition, if we aspire to attain enlightenment for the benefit of everyone, we'll have spontaneous affection for all beings, and will know the most appropriate ways to help them. Also, another way to take advantage of our precious human lives is to live life to the fullest, moment by moment. There are several ways to do this. One is to be mindful of each moment, being in the here-and-now as we act. When we eat, we can concentrate on eating, noting the taste and texture of the food. When we walk, we concentrate on the movements involved in walking, without letting our minds wander to any other thoughts. When we go upstairs, we can think, "may I lead all beings to fortunate rebirths, liberation and enlightenment." While washing dishes or clothes, we

think, “may I help all beings cleanse their minds of disturbing attitudes and obscurations.” When we hand something to another person, we think, “May I be able to satisfy the needs of all beings.” We can creatively transform each action by generating the wish to bring happiness to others. For these above reasons, we can say that human beings play an extremely important role in most religions. The Buddha taught in the Upasaka Sutra: “In all beings, man is endowed with all necessary faculties, intelligence. Besides man’s conditions are not too miserable as those beings in hell, not too much pleasure as those beings in heaven. And above all, man’s mind is not so ignorant as that of the animals.” So, man has the ability to build and improve his own life to the degree of perfection.

XXIII. Buddhist Festivals:

Records of the early Buddhist monastic order indicate that festivals were discouraged, although there were numerous regularly held ceremonies, such as the fortnight recitation of the Vinaya rules in the Posadha ceremony. As it became a religion with significant numbers of lay followers, however, regular festivals were developed. In contemporary Buddhism, there are numerous yearly and seasonal festivals, which serve a variety of functions, such as marking important occurrences like the new year or the harvest. Others provide opportunities for merit-making, such as the robe-receiving ceremony (kathina), held annually in both Theravada and Mahayana traditions, or the Tibetan Monlam Chenmo festival. Buddhist festivals also serve the important function of promoting Buddhism to non-Buddhists, and they punctuate the year with religiously significant events. The most widely celebrated festival is the date commemorating the birth, awakening, and parinirvana of the Buddha. In Theravada countries, this is celebrated on the full-moon day in May. It is called Vesak in Sri Lanka, and Visakha Puja in Thailand. Other important Sri Lankan festivals include Poson, which commemorates the introduction of Buddhism to the island, and Esala Parahera, in which the Buddha’s tooth relic is paraded through the streets of Kandy. In Mahayana traditions, such as in China, Japan, Korea, Mongolia, Tibet and Vietnam, the Buddha’s Birth Day Festival is usually celebrated on April 8 or April 15, The Buddha’s Awakening Festival is celebrated on

December 8, and the Buddha's Nirvana Festival is celebrated on February 15. Another important Japanese festival is Setsubon (early February), which centers on driving away evil spirits. Other important festivals in Mahayana Buddhism include an annual "hungry ghost" (Preta) festival, in which offerings are given to placate these unhappy spirits. Some Important Buddhist Festivals such as the Birthday of Buddha Sakyamuni on the 15th of the Fourth month of Lunar calendar, the Festival of Hungry Ghosts or the Ullambana on the 15th of seventh month of Lunar calendar, and the Festival of the Buddha's Enlightenment Date on the 15th of the twelfth month of lunar calendar.

Celebration Days of some important Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. Festivals on the first month of lunar calendar include the Maitreya Bodhisattva's Birthday (the first day of the first month Lunar calendar), and the Samadhi Light Buddha's Birthday (the 6th of the first month Lunar calendar). Festivals on the second month of lunar calendar include the Sixth Patriarch's Birthday (the 8th day of the second month Lunar calendar), the Kuan Shi Yin Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 19th of the second month Lunar calendar), and the Universal Worthy Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 21st day of the second month Lunar calendar). There is no festival on the third month of lunar calendar. Festival on the fourth month of lunar calendar include the Manjushri Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 4th day of the 4th month Lunar calendar), the Birthday of Buddha Sakyamuni (the 15th of the Fourth month of Lunar calendar), and the Medicine King Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 28th of the 4th month Lunar calendar). There is no festival on the fifth month of lunar calendar. There is one festival on the sixth month of lunar calendar, the celebration of Kuan Shi Yin Bodhisattva's Enlightenment (the 13th of the 6th month and the 19th of the 6th month Lunar calendar). Festivals on the seventh month of lunar calendar include the Rain Retreat, which begins around the 15th of the fourth month and ends around the 15th of the seventh month of lunar calendar, the festival of hungry ghosts or the Ullambana on the 15th of seventh month of Lunar calendar, Nagarjuna (Dragon Tree) Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 24th day of the 7th month Lunar calendar), Earth Store Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 30th day of the 7th month Lunar calendar), and Great Strength Bodhisattva's Birthday (the 13th day of the 7th month Lunar calendar).

Festivals on the eighth month of lunar calendar include the Sixth Patriarch's Entering Nirvana Day (the 3rd day of the 8th month Lunar Calendar), and (Dipankara Buddha) Burning Lamp Buddha of Antiquity's Birthday (the 22nd of the 8th month Lunar calendar). Festivals on the ninth month of lunar calendar include Festival of Bodhisattva Avalokitesvara on the 19th of the ninth month of Lunar calendar, and Medicine Master Buddha's Birthday (the 30th day of the 9th month Lunar calendar). Festivals on the tenth month of lunar calendar, the celebration of Venerable First Patriarch Bodhidharma's Birthday (the 5th day of the 10th month Lunar calendar). There is one festival on the eleventh month of lunar calendar, the celebration of Amitabha Buddha's Birthday (Festival of Amitabha Buddha on 17th of the 11th month Lunar calendar). Festivals on the twelfth month of lunar calendar include Festival of the Buddha's Enlightenment Date on 15th of the twelfth month of luna calendar, and Avatamsaka Bodhisattva's Birthday (29th day of the twelfth month Lunar calendar).

Besides, there are Ten fast days. The ten "fast" days of a month based on Lunar calendar are 1, 8, 14, 15, 18, 23, 24, 28, 29, 30. Eating flesh, hunting, fishing, execution, etc. are forbidden in those days. These are also ten Buddhas or Bodhisattvas connected with the ten "fast" days. First, the day of Samadhi Buddha, which is on the 1st day. Second, the day of Medicine Master Buddha, which is on the 8th day. Third, the day of Samantabhadra Bodhisattva, which is on the 14th day. Fourth, the day of Amitabha Buddha, which is on the 15th day. Fifth, the day of Avalokitesvara Bodhisattva, which is on the 18th day. Sixth, the day of Mahasthama-prapta Bodhisattva, which is on the 23rd day. Seventh, the day of Ksitigarbha (Earth-Store) Bodhisattva, which is on the 24th day. Eighth, the day of Vairocana Buddha, which is on the 28th day. Ninth, the day of Medicine King (Bhaisajya) Buddha, which is on the 29th day. Tenth, the day of Sakyamuni Buddha, which is on the 30th day.

XXIV. Buddhist Sangha:

The Sangha means the noble community (ariya-sangha) of Buddhist saints who have realized the teachings. Sangha also designates the community of monks and nuns who live according to the monastic code (vinaya); and in its broadest sense it includes the lay

people who sustain the monks and nuns through charity and receive their teaching. The creation of the Sangha is without question one of the Buddha's most remarkable achievements. It has survived through diversification and expansion up to the present day, offering an individual the chance to pursue the course of training leading to enlightenment, by dedicating him or herself to the holy life. Such a pursuit would not be deemed a selfish act in Buddhist eyes, because the Sangha, as an institution, maintains the Dharma in the absence of the Buddha for the welfare of all. From its earliest days the Sangha has lacked a supreme authority, because the Buddha refused to establish a functional hierarchy or name of successor. Influence is collective and precedence is allowed only by seniority. According to the Buddha, adherence to the Dharma should be based on personal reasoning and experience, not purely on instruction. The Sangha plays an extremely important role in Buddhism as the protector and maintainer of the Dharma. As early as the first century B.C., the Theravadin Sangha distinguished between monks who assumed the duty of meditating and those who were committed to preserving the scriptures. The core of "institutional" Buddhism, at least in the Theravadin tradition, has almost always been preoccupied with preserving the Dharma through the lineage of a committed community rather than through political power structures. This is one of the essential features that distinguishes Buddhism from religions that actively participate in, and indeed, govern, the passage of life through rites and rituals. It is not the norm for Buddhism to be linked to a specific place or society, which is why it has generally been able to coexist harmoniously with the indigenous beliefs and practices it has encountered in its expansion, especially those that are traditionally associated with social customs. The relationship between the Sangha and the laity varies greatly among the different traditions. In general, monks do not handle money or make a living from any profession, but rather rely completely on the laity for worldly needs. In such places as China, Japan, Korea, Tibet and Vietnam, where Mahayana Buddhism is dominant, some monasteries have been known to accumulate great wealth and political power.

Early Ordinations in the Sangha: Moggallana and Sariputta were two very important early converts who became Buddha's chief disciples. Formerly they were the disciples of another religious guru

Sanjaya, but had not attained much spiritually under their teacher. They both were very wise and learned Brahmans. Sariputta was the first to learn of the Buddha and his noble path from one of the disciples of the Buddha. Therefore, he went to the Buddha seeking the refuge and was duly ordained. He was deeply impressed by the teachings and supernatural powers of the Buddha. Sariputta then went to Moggallana and told him of his conversion to Buddhism. They not only became the Buddha's disciples but also brought with them over 200 followers. Later, Sariputta came to be highly respected in the Order for his wisdom, while Moggallana became famous for his supernatural powers. Right after His Enlightenment, the Buddha went to Rajagriha, the capital of Magadha. There Bimbisara was the king. Bimbisara came to receive the Blessed One, accompanied by a number of courtiers, wise men, Brahmans and a large number of eminent citizens. The Buddha taught them the Noble Eightfold Path, and they all became his lay followers. Bimbisara was highly pleased with the teachings of the Sakyamuni and waited in person on the Buddha and his monks at alms meal. As a token of his gratitude to the Buddha, His Dharma and Sangha, he donated the famous Venuvana or the Bamboo Grove, lying on the outskirts of the city, to the community of monks. A rich merchant then erected dwelling units there and thus the first proper Buddhist monastery came into existence. The Buddha was a great walker and a wanderer. During the last forty-five years of his life, he traveled covering the whole of the north-eastern India on foot. He covered 20 to 30 kilometers of distance a day. In his wandering, he came across all sorts of people, from kings, noblemen, rich merchants to farmers, ascetics, Brahmans, low caste people, students and others and taught them the Ultimate Truth. His teachings were simple and practical which appealed both to reason and emotions. He did not believe in the superiority based on caste and social status and preached equality. Many of his chief disciples were low caste people. Upali was a barber, Sumita a scavenger, Svapaka a dog-eater, Svati a fisherman, and Nanda a cowherd. Actually, his monks and lay followers belonged to all castes in the society. He vehemently refuted the claims of caste and opposed the Brahmans, who were arrogant and ignorant and befooled the masses in the name of religion. He condemned them for their rituals and animal sacrifices for he knew and preached that "by birth

one is neither Brahman nor Sudra. Only one's words and behavior determine whether one is soldier or a craftsman or a priest.

XXV. Three Main Schools in Buddhism:

Sects arise from an individual interpretation of the general teaching of Buddhism. Sects base on a peculiar interpretation of one of the recognized sects. Nowadays, Buddhism has many different schools, among them, there are three major schools. *The first school is the Southern School or Theravada:* The Southern or Theravada (Teachings of the Elders), also known as the Hinayana, which arose in southern India, whence it spread to Ceylon, Burma, Thailand, Laos and Cambodia. The "Little or minor (small) Vehicle." Name of the earliest system of Buddhist doctrine, opposed to the Mahayana. This is the term which the Mahayana utilizes to refer to the those who follow Theravada for they have own liberation goal rather than that of all beings. In fact, Hinayana developed between the death of Buddha and the 1st century BC and it represented the original and pure teaching as it was taught by the Buddha. The essence of the teaching is expressed in the four noble truths, the doctrine of dependent arising, the teaching of the ego, the law of karma and the eightfold noble path.

The second school is the North School or the Mahayana (Major Vehicle or the school of Mahayana): After the Buddha's death, Buddhism was divided into many schools. The two main branches were Hinayana and Mahayana. Whoever seeks to become an arhat belongs to the Hinayana; while whoever seeks to become a Buddha belongs to the Mahayana. Right after the Buddha' death the school of Mahayana, attributed to the rise in India of the Madhyamika (the school ascribed to Nagarjuna) and the Yoga; the rest of the sects belonged to the Hinayana. The Madhyamika and Yoga were called Tsan-Luan and Dharmalaksana in China. In Japan, only Kosa and Satyasiddhi belong to the Hinayana; the rest of other schools belong to the Mahayana. The Mahayana moved from northern India to Tibet, Mongolia, China, Vietnam, Korea, and Japan. Unlike Southern Buddhism, which tended to remain conservative and doctrinaire, the Mahayana adapted itself to the needs of peoples of diverse racial and cultural backgrounds and varying levels of understanding. The greater vehicle, one of the two great schools of Buddhism (Hinayana and Mahayana). The Mahayana

arose in the first century BC. It is called Great Vehicle because its objective is the salvation of all beings. It opens the way of liberation to a great number of people and indeed, expresses the intention to liberate all beings. One of the most critical in Mahayana is that it stresses the value on laypersons. It emphasizes that laypersons can also attain nirvana if they strive to free themselves from worldly bondages. Major Mahayana sects include Hua-Yen, T'ien T'ai, Zen and the Pure Land. It should be noted that Mahayana spread from India to Tibet, China, Korea and Viet Nam. We must recognize that the Mahayana has contributed a great deal to Buddhist thought and culture. It has produced a wonderful Path of Bodhisattvas. Sakyamuni Buddha set an example by his own career that people could emulate. The goal of this career was Enlightenment and Buddhahood, and the way was the way of the Bodhisattva. The Third Council was held during the reign of Emperor Asoka in the third century B.C., there were already at least eighteen schools, each with its own doctrines and disciplinary rules. Among them, two schools dominated the deliberations at the Third Council, an analytical school called Vibhajyavadins, and a school of realistic pluralism known as the Sarvastivadins. The Council decided in favor of the analytical school and it was the views of this school that were carried to Sri Lanka by Asoka's missionaries, led by his son Mahendra. There it became known as the Theravada. The adherents of the Sarvastivada mostly migrated to Kashmir in the north west of India where the school became known for its popularization of the path of the perfections of the Bodhisattva. However, another Council (the Fourth Council) was held during the reign of King Kanishka in the first century A.D. in Kashmir; two more important schools emerged, the Vaibhashikas and the Sautrantikas. These two differed on the authenticity of the Abhidharma; the Vaibhashikas holding that the Abhidharma was taught by the Buddha, while the Sautrantikas held that it was not. By this time, Mahayana accounts tell us, a number of assemblies had been convened in order to compile the scriptures of the Mahayana tradition, which were already reputed to be vast in number. In the north and south west of India as well as Nalanda in Magadha, the Mahayana was studied and taught. Many of the important texts of the Mahayana were believed to have been related by Maitreya, the future Buddha and other celestial Bodhisattvas. The written texts of

Mahayana as well as those of other schools began to appear about 500 years after the Buddha's Nirvana. The earliest Mahayana sutras such as the Lotus Sutra and the Sutra of the Perfection of Wisdom are usually dated before the first century A.D. The essence of the Mahayana Buddhism is the conception of compassion for all living beings. The Mahayana, with its profound philosophy, its universal compassion and its abundant use of skillful means, rapidly began to attract the majority of people, not only in India, but in the newly Buddhist lands of central Asia. The origin of Mahayana may be traced to an earlier school known as Mahasanghika and earlier literary sources known as Mahayana Sutas. By the first century A.D., the formation of the Mahayana Buddhism was virtually complete, and most of the major Mahayana sutras were in existence. Theoretically speaking, Mahayana Buddhism is divided into two systems of thought: the Madhyamika and the Yogacara.

The third school is the Mantrayana: The esoteric method. The esoteric Mantra, or Yogacara sect, developed especially in Shingon, with Vairocana as the chief object of worship, and the Mandalas of Garbhadhatu and Vajradhatu. The esoteric teaching or Tantric Buddhism, in contrast with the open schools (Hiền giáo). The Buddhist tantra consists of sutras of a so-called mystical nature which endeavor to teach the inner relationship of the external world and the world of spirit, of the identity of Mind and universe. Among the devices employed in tantric meditational practices are the following. First, the contemplation of the Mandala. Mandala means "circle," "assemblage," "picture." There are various kinds of mandala, but the most common in Esoteric Buddhism are of two types: a composite picture graphically portraying different classes of demons, deities, Buddhas and Bodhisattvas, representing various powers, forces, and activities, within symbolic squares and circles, and in the center of which is a figure of the Buddha Vairocana, the Great Illuminator; and a diagrammatic representation wherein certain sacred Sanskrit letters, called "bija" or "seeds" are substituted for figures. Second, the contemplation of the Mantra. Mantras are the sacred sounds, such as OM, for example, are transmitted from the master to his disciple at the time of initiation. When the disciple's mind is properly attuned, the inner vibrations of this word symbol together with its associations in the consciousness of

the initiate are said to open his mind to higher dimension. Third, mudra. Mudras are physical gestures, especially symbolical hand movements, which are performed to help evoke certain states of mind parallel to those of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. The Esoteric School is divided into two divisions. First, the Miscellaneous Mystic Sect. What we designate as “Miscellaneous Mystic” of which mantras were translated early in the fourth century A.D. Srimitra of Kucha, a Central Asian state inhabited by a white race, translated some texts into Chinese. These were charms, cures, and other sorts of sorcery, often containing some mantra prayers and praises of gods or saints of higher grades, but generally speaking they could not be regarded as expressing a high aspiration. Second, the Pure Mystic Sect. What we can designate as ‘Pure Mystic’ begins with some able Indian teachers who arrived in China during the T’ang period (713-765). First, Subhakarasiṃha (637-735), second, Vajrabodhi (663-723), third, Amoghavajra (705-774), and fourth, I-Hsing (683-727).

Chapter Two

Summaries of Three Periods of Dharmas in Buddhism

According to Buddhism, dharma means Buddhist doctrine or teachings. The teaching of the Buddhas which carry or hold the truth. The way of understanding and love taught by the Buddha doctrine. The Buddha taught the Dharma to help us escape the sufferings and afflictions caused by daily life and to prevent us from degrading human dignity, and descending into evil paths such as hells, hungry ghosts, and animals, etc. The Dharma is like a raft that gives us something to hang onto as we eliminate our attachments, which cause us to suffer and be stuck on this shore of birth and death. The Buddha's dharma refers to the methods of inward illumination; it takes us across the sea of our afflictions to the other shore, nirvana. Once we get there, even the Buddha's dharma should be relinquished. The Dharma is not an extraordinary law created by or given by anyone. According to the Buddha, our body itself is Dharma; our mind itself is Dharma; the whole universe is Dharma. By understanding the nature of our physical body, the nature of our mind, and worldly conditions, we realize the Dharma. The Dharma that is the law of beginningless and endless becoming, to which all phenomena are subject according to causes and conditions. The Dharma, which comprises the spoken words and sermons of Sakyamuni Buddha wherein he elucidated the significance of the Unified Three Treasures and the way to its realization. The Dharma, the teaching imparted by the Buddha. All written sermons and discourses of Buddhas (that is, fully enlightened beings) as found in the sutras and other Buddhist texts still extant. Also, according to Buddhism, the teachings of the Buddha are divided into three periods (of Dharma): The Correct Dharma, the Period of Semblance Dharma, and the Degenerate Age of Dharma.

The First Period Is the Correct Dharma: The correct dharma age is the era when the Buddha dwelled in the world. At that time the Buddha taught the Dharma, and there were genuine Arhats, great Bodhisattvas, and the sages who appeared as great disciples of the Buddha. The real period of Buddhism which lasted 500 years (some says 1,000 years) after the death of the Buddha (entered the Maha-Nirvana). Although the Buddha was no longer in existence, His Dharma and precepts were still properly practiced and upheld. Furthermore, there would be many Buddhists who had light karma and their mind were intrinsically good, therefore, many of them would attain

enlightenment in their cultivation. From eighty to ninety out of one hundred cultivators would attain enlightenment. That is to say there were true and genuine practitioners who attained enlightenment. In the Lankavatara Sutra, the Buddha said: “Mahamati! When the right doctrine is comprehended, there will be no discontinuation of the Buddha-family.” The Correct Dharma Period is also a period when the right or true doctrines of the Buddha are utilized in cultivation such as the Four Noble Truths and the Noble Eightfold Path. In the Mahamaya Sutra, the Buddha prophesied: “After I enter the Maha-Nirvana, one hundred years later, there will be a Bhikshu named Upagupta who will have the complete ability to speak, elucidate, and clarify the Dharma similar to Purna Maitrayaniputra. He will aid and rescue infinite sentient beings. In the following one hundred years (two hundred years after the Buddha’s Maha-Nirvana), there will be a Bhikshu named Silananda, able to speak the crucial Dharma discerningly and will aid and save twelve million beings in this Jambudvipa continent (the earth). In the following one hundred years (or three hundred years after the Buddha’s Maha-Nirvana), there will be a Bhikshu named Hsin-Lien-Hua-Ran, who will speak the Dharma to aid and save five hundred thousand beings. One hundred years after Hsin-Lien-Hua-Ran (four hundred years after the Buddha’s Maha-Nirvana), there will be a Bhikshu named Niu-k’ou, who will speak the Dharma and rescue ten thousand beings. One hundred years after Niu-K’ou (five hundred years after the Buddha’s Maha-Nirvana), there will be a Bhikshu named Bao-T’ien, who will speak the Dharma to aid and save twenty thousand beings and influence infinite others to develop the Ultimate Bodhi Mind. After this time, the Proper Dharma Age will come to an end. Six hundred years after the Buddha’s Maha-Nirvana, ninety-six types of improper doctrines will arise, false teachings will be born to destroy the Proper Dharma. At that time, a Bhikshu named Asvaghosha will be born. This Bhikshu will use great wisdom to speak of the Dharma to combat these false religions. Seven hundred years after the Buddha’s Maha-Nirvana, there will be born a Bhikshu named Nagarjuna; he will use the power of the Proper Prajna or great wisdom to destroy false views to light brightly the Buddha’s Dharma’s torch.” In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: “Long is the night to the wakeful; long is the road to him who is tired; long is samsara to the foolish who do not know true Law (Dharmapada 60). Eagerly try not to be heedless, follow the path of righteousness. He who observes this practice lives happily both in this world and in the next (Dharmapada 168). Follow the path of righteousness. Do not do evil. He who practices this, lives happily both in this world and in the next (Dharmapada 169).”

The Second Period Is the Semblance Dharma: The Semblance of Law period, or the formal period of Buddhism which lasted 1000 years after the real period. In this period, Monks, Nuns and Lay Buddhists still continue to

practice properly the Dharma as the Buddha taught and are still able to penetrate the spiritual realm of samadhi even though fewer will attain enlightenment. The period of Counterfeit Law is the time when the truth preached by the Buddha still exists but is learned and practiced as a matter of formality, and there is no longer enlightenment. In this period, Buddhist monks devote themselves to gaining a thorough knowledge of Buddhist doctrines and formalities and are proud of themselves for being learned. Some of them only keep the precepts and practice them with indifference to others, and lead religious lives aloof from the world. The rest are weak followers. In such a period, Buddhist monks have lost touch with the true life and soul of Buddhism. However, in this age, the Buddha's Dharma and precepts left behind are destroyed by Evil-monks and Non-Buddhists who disguise themselves as Buddhist monks and nuns to destroy the teaching by falsely explaining and teaching the Buddha Dharma. Thus, the Dharma still exists and there are still cultivators, but very few attain enlightenment. Only seven or eight out of one hundred cultivators will attain enlightenment. According to the Mahamaya Sutra, about eight hundred years after the Buddha's Maha-Nirvana, the majority of ordained Buddhists will be greedy for fame and fortune, will be lazy and not control their minds and consciences, lacking of self-mastery. About nine hundred years after the Buddha's Maha-Nirvana, in the order of Bhikshus and Bhikshunis, the majority will be servants who abandon the secular life to become ordained Buddhists. One thousand years after the Buddha's Maha-Nirvana, when Bhikshus hear of the practice of 'Envisioning Impurity,' and the dharma of 'Breathing Meditation,' they will get depressed and disenchanted having little desire to cultivate. Therefore, in one hundred thousand cultivators, only few will penetrate the proper Meditation State. From that time, gradually those of religious ranks will destroy the precepts, whether by drinking alcohol, killing, selling possessions and belongings of the Triple Jewels, or practicing impure conducts. If they have a son, they will let him become a Bhikshu, and if they have a daughter, they will let her become a Bhikshuni, so they can continue to steal from and destroy Buddhism as well as using the good name of the Triple Jewels to reap self-benefits. These are signs of warning that the Buddha Dharma is nearing extinction. However, there are still some people who know how to uphold the proper precepts and conducts by diligently trying to maintain and propagate the proper doctrine.

The Third Period Is the Degenerate Age of Dharma: The Degenerate Age of Dharma means the final stage of Buddhist existence in the world, during which practice and adherence to monastic rules will gradually decline, even the external symbols of Buddhism will also disappear, and other signs in monasteries such as the appearance of evil monks, or married monks, or

monks only in appearance, etc. However, some Buddhists still believe that during the “ending dharma age,” if you just remember one sentence of “Namo Amitabha Buddha,” and sincerely practice it, you can be welcomed by such Buddha at the end of your life at the Western Paradise. The conditions at that paradise are optimal for sentient beings to continue to cultivate until they attain Buddhahood.

Degeneration Age of Dharma means the final stage of Buddhist existence in the world, during which practice and adherence to monastic rules will gradually decline, even the external symbols of Buddhism will also disappear, and other signs in monasteries such as the appearance of evil monks, or married monks, or monks only in appearance, etc. However, some Buddhists still believe that during the “ending dharma age,” if you just remember one sentence of “Namo Amitabha Buddha,” and sincerely practice it, you can be welcomed by such Buddha at the end of your life at the Western Paradise. The conditions at that paradise are optimal for sentient beings to continue to cultivate until they attain Buddhahood. The final period of teaching of Buddhism which lasted 3000 years after the formal period. Toward the end of this period, there won’t be any more teaching of Buddhism which means the Buddhadharma will end (vanish from the world) one day. However, Buddha Maitreya or Laughing (Happy) Buddha is to appear to restore all things. The last of the three periods (The Proper Dharma Age, The Dharma Semblance Age, and The Dharma Ending Age), the age of degeneration and extinction of the Buddha-law. In this age, the Dharma and precepts are weakened significantly. Many other religions, non-Buddhists, and evil spirits will enter and blend in with Buddhism, destroying the Buddha Dharma. Thus, the Dharma still exists and there are cultivators, but very few practitioners are able to grasp fully the proper Dharma or awakened to the Way, much less attain enlightenment. In the Great Heap Sutra, the Buddha made this prophecy: “In the Dharma Ending Age, in hundreds of thousands and hundreds of thousands of cultivators, as the result, no one will attain enlightenment.” In the Dharma Extinction Sutra, the Buddha prophesized: “In the future, when my Dharma is about to end, in this world of the five turbidities, false religions will arise to become very powerful. During those times, the evil’s relatives will take form, appearing as Bhikshus, to destroy the Buddha Dharma. They will eat, sleep, and wear ordinary clothing of lay persons, fond of five exotic assorted colorings worn on their robes, instead of the three solid indigo, blue, brown, and gold colored robes which Bhikshus are supposed to wear. They eat meat, drink alcohol, kill, lust for fragrances and aromas, with non-helping conscience. Instead, they will become jealous of and hateful toward one another; this monk will hate or be jealous with the other monk, this monastery will hate or be jealous with the other monastery. At that time, Bodhisattvas, Pratyeka-buddhas, and Arhats who had vowed previously to protect and defend the Buddha-Dharma, will appear in life, taking on human form as Bhikshus or lay people. These saints will be devoted cultivators; their religious conduct and

behavior will be very honorable, earning everyone's admiration and respect. They will have virtuous qualities such as kindness and peace, have no impure thoughts, great tolerance, good will, help the old, the weak, the lonely, and often bring statues and sutras to encourage everyone to worship, read, and chant. They will teach sentient beings in a fair and objective manner and will cultivate many merits and virtuous practices. They will be altruistic always practicing the concept of 'self-loss for others' gain.' With the appearance of such religious and virtuous people, other demonic Bhikshus will develop much hatred and jealousy. They will slander, make wicked and false accusations, do everything possible so these kind and virtuous people cannot live in peace. From that point forth, those demonic Bhikshus will become even more reckless and wild, never practicing Dharma, leaving temples to rot, ruined and desolate. Their only interest will be to build their private fortune, having careers that are unacceptable in Buddhism, such as burning mountains and forests, without a good conscience, killing and hurting many sentient beings. In such times, there will be many servants taking the opportunity to become Bhikshus and Bhikshunis; they will be neither religious nor virtuous. Instead, they will be lustful and greedy, where Bhikshus and Bhikshunis live with one another. The Buddha-Dharma will be destroyed in the hands of these people. Also, there will be many criminals entering the religious gate, increasing the consciousness of laziness and laxity, refusing to learn or to cultivate the Way. When the reading of precepts comes around the middle of every month, they will act passively, reluctantly, and refuse to listen carefully. If teaching and expounding the precepts and doctrines, they will go over them briefly, skipping different sections, refusing to state all of them. If reading and chanting sutra-poetry, and not familiar with the lines, words, or their deep meanings, they will refuse to search or ask for answers from those who have great wisdom, but instead they will be narcissistic and conceited, seek fame and praise, and think they are all-knowing. Even so, on the outside, they will act religious and virtuous, often praising themselves, hoping everyone will make offerings or charitable donations to them. After these demonic Bhikshus die, they will be condemned into the realm of hell, hungry ghost, and animal, and must endure these conditions for many reincarnations. After repaying for these transgressions, they will be born as human beings, but far away from civilization, places that do not have the Triple Jewels. In the Dharma Extinction Sutra, the Buddha prophesized: "In the future, when my Dharma is about to end, in this world of the five turbidities, false religions will arise to become very powerful. During those times, the evil's relatives will take form, appearing as Bhikshus, to destroy the Buddha Dharma. They will eat, sleep, and wear ordinary clothing of lay persons, fond of five exotic assorted colorings worn on their robes, instead of the three solid indigo, blue, brown and gold colored robes which Bhikshus are supposed to wear. They eat meat, drink alcohol, kill, lust for fragrances and aromas, with non-helping conscience. Instead, they will become jealous of and hateful toward one another; this monk will hate or be jealous with the other monk, this monastery will hate or be jealous with the other monastery. At that time, Bodhisattvas, Pratyeka-buddhas, and Arhats who had vowed previously to protect and defend the Buddha-Dharma, will appear in life, taking on human form as Bhikshus or lay people. These saints will be devoted cultivators; their religious conduct and behavior will be very honorable, earning everyone's admiration and respect. They will have virtuous

qualities such as kindness and peace, have no impure thoughts, great tolerance, good will, help the old, the weak, the lonely, and often bring statues and sutras to encourage everyone to worship, read, and chant. They will teach sentient beings in a fair and objective manner and will cultivate many merits and virtuous practices. They will be altruistic always practicing the concept of 'self-loss for others' gain.' With the appearance of such religious and virtuous people, other demonic Bhikshus will develop much hatred and jealousy. They will slander, make wicked and false accusations, do everything possible so these kind and virtuous people cannot live in peace. From that point forth, those demonic Bhikshus will become even more reckless and wild, never practicing Dharma, leaving temples to rot, ruined and desolate. Their only interest will be to build their private fortune, having careers that are unacceptable in Buddhism, such as burning mountains and forests, without a good conscience, killing and hurting many sentient beings. In such times, there will be many servants taking the opportunity to become Bhikshus and Bhikshunis; they will be neither religious nor virtuous. Instead, they will be lustful and greedy, where Bhikshus and Bhikshunis live with one another. The Buddha-Dharma will be destroyed in the hands of these people. Also, there will be many criminals entering the religious gate, increasing the consciousness of laziness and laxity, refusing to learn or to cultivate the Way. When the reading of precepts comes around the middle of every month, they will act passively, reluctantly, and refuse to listen carefully. If teaching and expounding the precepts and doctrines, they will go over them briefly, skipping different sections, refusing to state all of them. If reading and chanting sutra-poetry, and not familiar with the lines, words, or their deep meanings, they will refuse to search or ask for answers from those who have great wisdom, but instead they will be narcissistic and conceited, seek fame and praise, and think they are all-knowing. Even so, on the outside, they will act religious and virtuous, often prasing themselves, hoping everyone will make offerings or charitable donations to them. After these demonic Bhikshus die, they will be condemned into the realm of hell, hungry ghost, and animal, and must endure these conditions for many reincarnations. After repaying for these transgressions, they will be born as human beings, but far away from civilization, places that do not have the Triple Jewels. In the Great Compassion Sutra, the Buddha taught Ananda: "Look here Ananda! Two thousand five hundred years after I entered the Nirvana, those who maintain, practice according to the proper dharma teachings will gradually diminish; those who violate precepts, engage in activities contrary to the Dharma teachings will increase with each passing day. In such times, many Bhikshus will be mesmerized by fame and fortune, not cultivating their minds, bodies, and for wisdom. They will be greedy for Buddhist robes, bowls, food, medicine, housing, temple, and then become jealous, competing and insulting one another, taking one another to the authorities. In the age of the Dharma's Decline, we must be true disciples of the Buddha. In the past, the Buddha and Patriarchs did not take it easy in their cultivation. Remember, this body is a stinking skin bag; it is only a false combination of the four elements. We have been slaves to our bodies for so long; we have committed too many offenses on its behalf. Now it is time for us to stop being slaves for this stinking body.

Chapter Three

An Overview of Tripitakas

The Buddha Started His Preaching Mission Which Gave Birth to the Tripitakas: It should be reminded that from Bodh-Gaya, where Prince Sakyamuni attained great enlightenment, to the Deer Park near Benares, which is about 300 kilometers, but because of his promise to first preach to save the five brothers of Kaudinya after enlightenment, so the Buddha walked slowly from Bodh-Gaya to the Deer Park, and it took him a week to get there. Right at the Deer Park, the Buddha preached to five ascetics his First Sermon (Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta). The sermon preached about the Middle Way between all extremes, the Four Noble Truths and the eight Noble Paths. This event was also the Buddha's first turning the wheel of the Dharma which gave birth to a religion with the name of Buddhism. Wheel of the teaching in Buddhism, a symbol of the teaching expounded by the Buddha, including the Four Noble Truths, The Eightfold Noble Path and The Middle Way. The Dharma-Chakra is always depicted with eight spokes representing the eightfold path. The Buddha truth which is able to crush all evil and all opposition. The preaching of a Buddha. Dharma wheel is likened a wheel because it crushed all illusions, evil and on opposition, like Indra's wheel, which rolls from man to man, place to place, age to age. According to Buddhism, to turn the Dharma Cakra (wheel) of dharma means to turn or roll along the Law-wheel, i.e. to preach Buddha-truth, or to explain the religion of Buddha. Turning the Wheel of Truth also means 'preaching the Buddha's Ideal,' or the 'realization of the Buddha's Ideal in the world,' i.e., the foundation of Kingdom of Truth.

As mentioned above, in the beginning, Sakyamuni Buddha first went to convert the five Bhiksus in the Deer Park. These five Bhiksus were the Buddha's relatives. They had been cultivating the Way with the Buddha, but three of them could not endure the bitterness of ascetic practices. When Sakyamuni Buddha was in the Himalayas, he ate one sesame seed and one grain of wheat each day, and he became as thin as a matchstick, so they left because they were starving and could not

endure the suffering, only two of them remained. Later, on the eighth day of the twelfth lunar month, a heavenly maiden made an offering of milk to the Buddha. When the Buddha drank the milk, his two remaining companions also left, saying: "Cultivation consists of ascetic practice. But now, you have drunk milk. That shows that you could not cultivate. You cannot take the suffering." Then they left. All of them went to the Deer Park. When the Buddha arrived at the Deer Park, He turned the Dharma Wheel of the Four Holy Truths three times for the five Bhiksus.

In the Deer Park, Benares, at first the Buddha was ignored by the five brothers of Kaundinya, but as the Buddha approached them, they felt that there was something very special about him, so they automatically stood up as He drew near. Then the five men, with great respect, invited the Buddha to teach them what He has enlightened. So, the Buddha delivered His First Teaching: Turning the Wheel of the Dharma. He began to preach: "O monk! You must know that there are Four Noble Truths. *The first is the Noble Truth of Suffering:* Life is filled with the miseries and afflictions of old age, sickness, unhappiness and death. People chase after pleasure but find only pain. Even when they do find something pleasant they soon grow tired of it. Nowhere is there any real satisfaction or perfect peace. *The second is the Noble Truth of the Cause of Suffering:* When our mind is filled with greed and desire and wandering thoughts, sufferings of all types follow. *The third is the Noble Truth of the End of Suffering:* When we remove all craving, desire, and wandering thoughts from our mind, sufferings will come to an end. We shall experience undescribable happiness. *And finally, the fourth is the Noble Truth of the Path:* The Path that helps us reach the ultimate wisdom."

Since then, the Buddha spread the seeds of Bodhi far and wide. Specifically, after the time the Buddha met with Yasas and preached to him the teachings of Buddhism, Yasas and fifty friends of his immediately donned the yellow robe and followed Him. They were the first large group of Sangha to take vows right after the Buddha's enlightenment. Henceforth, the Buddha and His Sangha started his preaching mission. On one occasion, while in his way to Magadha, a kingdom in central India at the time, the Buddha called on Uruvilva-Kasyapa, the leader of the fire-worshipping cult and asked for lodging.

Uruvilva-Kasyapa showed the Buddha a stone hut and warned that inside the hut there was a poisonous dragon that always appeared in the middle of the night to devour human beings. So, not be regret if the Sangha of the Buddha chose to stay there and were eaten up. However, the Buddha and his new Sangha still decided to enter the stone hut and sat calmly in a crossed-legs posture. By midnight, the poisonous dragon appeared, showed its jaws widely and clutched its sharp claws, but it could neither harm the Buddha nor the new Sangha. The following day, beyond the prediction of Uruvilva-Kasyapa and his followers, the Buddha and his new Sangha were still safe and sound in that stone hut. So Uruvilva Kasyapa and his followers went from extreme surprise to admiration. So, Uruvilva Kasyapa came to consult the Buddha about the methods of correct practices. After hearing the wonderful Dharma from the Buddha in his ever-convincing tone and his virtuous manner, Uruvilva Kasyapa was now totally convinced. He then determined to give up what he had practiced in the past and led his five hundred disciples to take refuge in the Buddha. After the Buddha converted Uruvilva Kasyapa and his five hundred followers, he also preached to them the Four Noble Truths. All of them was filled with joys of the Dharma and found that they were very lucky to have the Buddha's help to get rid of the evils, to receive the good, and come to tread on the right path. After that, Uruvilva Kasyapa met his two brothers and gave them the account of how he was converted. The two brother also agree to attend the Buddha's preaching and finally took refuge in the Buddha. It should be reminded that the two brothers of Uruvilva Kasyapa also had five hundred followers. So in a very short period of time, the new Sangha of the Buddha already had more than one thousand people. All of them followed the Buddha to return to Mount Vulture Peak in Rajagrha. For the whole Sangha only walked, this long procession of Monks on the move caught the attention of the entire Kingdom of Magadha.

In his preachings, the Buddha always reminded that Buddhists always need two ways of education: the first way is secular education and the second one is religious education. These two ways are considered as the two wings for a bird. Without two wings, no bird can fly. Similarly, without these two ways of education, Buddhists would lead to a poor and obscure life, not only in the secular world but also in

the spiritual life. Secular education will help us with an appropriate profession to support our family while religious education will help us lead a true happy life. As a matter of fact, religious education is extremely necessary, for it teaches us how to think and act in order to be good and happy. Besides, it also helps us love and understand the meaning of life so that we are able to adjust ourselves to its laws in any circumstances. After experiencing six years in ascetic practices, the Buddha advised his followers to follow the middle path. He taught: “Buddhists should always make best use of their secular life while cultivating the path of true happiness in this world and hereafter.”

According to The Agama Sutra, in 49 years of preaching the Dharma, the Buddha declared explicitly that He did preach only on Suffering and the End of Suffering, and nothing else. He exhorted His disciples to go forth to preach the Dharma and to explain the holy life for the welfare of the many, for the happiness of the many, out of compassion for the world, for the advantage, for the happiness of the deities and human beings. The Buddha made it very clear that His purpose in preaching the Dharma was not to quarrel with other religious leaders or to compete with antagonistic doctrines. There is no quarrel in His preaching. He just shows the way to enlightenment and liberation from all sufferings and afflictions. The Buddha is always filled with love and compassion for all living beings. Even when He takes a rest, He still wants to spread His love and compassion to other beings. His preaching is only performed out of compassion and love for the world. There are over 150 Buddhist sutras, all of them are talking about the danger of mortality, so to preach others about Buddha’s teachings with the hope that they will eventually understand and be able to escape the cycle of births and deaths.

An Overview of Tripitakas: The Buddha has passed away, but His sublime teaching still exists in its complete form. Although the Buddha’s Teachings were not recorded during His time, his disciples preserved them, by committing to memory and transmitted them orally from generation to generation. At the time of the Buddha, literacy was a privilege of the elite in India, and this another indication of the premium placed on democracy within the Buddhist tradition that literary formulation of the teaching was neglected for so long. Many people were not literate, so word of mouth was the universal medium

for preservation and dissemination of the Dharma. Three months after the Buddha's Parinirvana, there were some tendencies to misinterpret or attempts were being made to pollute His Pure Teaching; therefore, his disciples convened Councils for gathering Buddha's sutras, or the collection and fixing of the Buddhist canon. In the development of Buddhism, several councils are known, the history of which remains partially obscure. These Councils were originally probably local assemblies of individual monastic communities that were later reported by tradition as general councils. In Buddhist history, there were four great councils inside of India and some other councils outside of India. The three baskets (tripitaka), or the three store houses, or three Buddhist Canon Baskets of Buddhist Teachings which contains the essence of the Buddha's teaching over 45 years. It is estimated to be about eleven times the size of the Bible. The Theravada canon written in Pali and the Mahayana canon written in Sanskrit. Even the Buddha already passed away, but His sublime Dharma still exists. Even though the Master did not leave any written records of His Teachings, his great disciples preserved them by committing to memory and transmitting them orally from generation to generation.

The three baskets (tripitaka) of Buddhist Teachings which contains the essence of the Buddha's teaching (is estimated to be about eleven times the size of the Bible). The Theravada canon written in Pali and the Mahayana canon written in Sanskrit. The Sutra Pitaka consists chiefly of instructive discourses delivered by the Buddha to both the Sangha and the laity on various occasions. A few discourses expounded by great disciples such as the Venerable Sariputra, Moggallana, and Ananda, are incorporated and are accorded as much veneration as the word of the Buddha himself, since they were approved by him. Most of the sermons were intended mainly for the benefit of Bhikkhus, and they deal with the holy life and with the exposition of the doctrine. There are several other discourses which deal with both the material and the moral progress of his lay-followers. The Sigalaka Sutra, for example, deals mainly with the duties of a layman. There are also a few interesting talks given to children. The Sutra Pitaka may be compared to books of prescriptions, since the discourses were expounded on diverse occasions to suit the temperaments of various persons. There may be seemingly contradictory statements, but they

should not be misconstrued, as they were uttered by the Buddha to suit a particular purpose; for instance, to the self-same question he would maintain silence, when the inquirer was merely foolishly inquisitive, or give a detailed reply when he knew the inquirer to be an earnest seeker after the truth. The Vinaya Pitaka, which is regarded as a strong virtuous foundation of the Holy Order, deals mainly with the rules and regulations of the Order of Bhikkhus and Bhikkhunis. For nearly twenty years after the enlightenment of the Buddha, no definite rules were laid down for the control and discipline of the Sangha. Subsequently as occasion arose, the Buddha promulgated rules for the future discipline of the Sangha. Vinaya Pitaka mentions in details (fully describes) reasons for the promulgation of rules, their various implications, and specific Vinaya ceremonies of the Sangha. Besides the history of the gradual development of the Sasana from its very inception, a brief account of the life and ministry of the Buddha, and details of the three councils are some other additional relevant contents of the Vinaya Pitaka. The Abhidhamma Pitaka is the most important and most interesting of the three, containing as it does the profound philosophy of the Buddha's teaching in contrast to the simpler discourses in the Sutta Pitaka. Abhidhamma, the higher doctrine of the Buddha, expounds the quintessence of his profound teachings. According to some scholars, Abhidhamma is not a teaching of the Buddha, but is later elaboration of scholastic monks. Tradition, however, attributes the nucleus of the Abhidhamma to the Buddha himself. The Matika or Matrices of the Abhidhamma such as wholesome states (kusala dhamma), unwholesome states (akusala dhamma), and indeterminate states (abhyakata dhamma), etc., which have been elaborated in the six books, except the Kathavatthu, were expounded by the Buddha. Venerable Sariputta was assigned the honour of having explained all these topics in detail. Whoever the great author or authors may have been, it has to be admitted that the Abhidhamma must be the product of an intellectual genius comparable only to the Buddha. This is evident from the intricate and subtle Patthana Pakarana which describes in detail the various causal relations. To the wise truth-seekers, Abhidhamma is an indispensable guide and an intellectual treat. Here is found food for thought for original thinkers and for earnest students who wish to develop wisdom

and lead an ideal Buddhist life. Abhidhamma is not a subject of fleeting interest designed for the superficial reader. The Chinese version is in three sections: The Mahayana Philosophy, the Hinayana Philosophy, and the Sung and Yuan Addenda (960-1368 AD). Higher Dharma or the analytic doctrine of Buddhist Canon or Basket of the Supreme Teaching which irrelevant problems that interest students and scholars, but have no relation to one's deliverance, are deliberately set aside. The Buddhist Abhidhamma Pitaka does not attempt to give a systematized knowledge of mind and matter. It investigates these two composite factors of the so-called being, to help the understanding of things as they truly are. Mrs. Rhys Davids, a famous Buddhist scholar wrote about Abhidhamma as follows: "Abhidhamma deals with what we find within us, around us, and of what we aspire to find." In short, it is generally admitted by most exponents of the Dhamma that a knowledge of the Abhidhamma is essential to comprehend fully the teachings of the Buddha, as it represents the key that opens the door of reality.

Chapter Four

Essential Summaries of Bodhisattvas In Buddhist Teachings

(A) An Overview Bodhisattvas In Buddhist Teachings

I. An Overview of Bodhisattvas in Buddhist Teachings:

An Overview of Bodhisattvas: “Enlightened Being” (Bodhisattva) is a Chinese Buddhist term that means an enlightened being (bodhi-being), or a Buddha-to-be, or a being who desires to attain enlightenment, or a being who seeks enlightenment, including Buddhas, Pratyeka-buddhas, or any disciples of the Buddhas. An enlightened being who does not enter Nirvana but chosen to remain in the world to save other sentient beings. Any person who is seeking Buddhahood, or a saint who stands right on the edge of nirvana, but remains in this world to help others achieve enlightenment. One who vows to live his or her life for the benefit of all sentient beings, vowing to save all sentient beings from affliction and aspiring to attainment of the Buddha-hood. One whose beings or essence is bodhi whose wisdom is resulting from direct perception of Truth with the compassion awakened thereby. Enlightened being who is on the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. A Bodhisattva is one who adheres to or bent on the ideal of enlightenment, or knowledge of the Four Noble Truths (Bodhi), especially one who is aspirant for full enlightenment (samma sambodhi). A Bodhisattva fully cultivates ten perfections (thập thiện: Parami) which are essential qualities of extremely high standard initiated by compassion, understanding and free from craving, pride and false views. There are five Bodhisattvas who have cultivated over countless lifetimes and expand in his life for the benefit of others. Therefore, a Bodhisattva is one who is enlightened, literally he is an Enlightenment-being, a Buddha-to-be, or one who wishes to become a Buddha. It would be a mistake to assume

that the conception of a Bodhisattva was a creation of the Mahayana. For all Buddhists each Buddha had been, for a long period before his enlightenment, a Bodhisattva. But why does a Bodhisattva have such a vow? Why does he want to undertake such infinite labor? For the good of others, because they want to become capable of pulling others out of this great flood of sufferings and afflictions. But what personal benefit does he find in the benefit of others? To a Bodhisattva, the benefit of others is his own benefit, because he desires it that way. Who could believe that? It is true that people devoid of pity and who think only of themselves, find it hard to believe in the altruism of the Bodhisattva. But compassionate people do so easily.

The two words of “Cause and Effect”, not only living beings who cannot escape them (cause and effect); even the Buddhas (before becoming enlightened) and Bodhisattvas cannot avoid them either. However, because Bodhisattvas have far-ranging vision, they avoid creating bad causes and only receive joyful rewards. Living beings, on the other hand, are very short-sighted. Seeing only what is in front of them, they often plant evil causes, and so they must often suffer the bitter retribution. Because the Bodhisattvas are afraid of bad consequences in the future, not only they avoid planting evil-causes or evil karma in the present, but they also diligently cultivate to gradually diminish their karmic obstructions; at the same time to accumulate their virtues and merits, and ultimately to attain Buddhahood. However, sentient beings complete constantly to gather evil-causes; therefore, they must suffer evil effect. When ending the effect of their actions, they are not remorseful or willing to repent. Not only do they blame Heaven and other people, but they continue to create more evil karma in opposition and retaliation. Therefore, enemies and vengeance will continue to exist forever in this vicious cycle.

Who Are Bodhisattvas?: Bodhisattva is a Sanskrit term for an Enlightened Being. This is the one whose essence is bodhi whose wisdom is resulting from direct perception of Truth with the compassion awakened thereby. Enlightened being who is on the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. A Sanskrit term which means “Awakening being” or a “being of enlightenment,” or “one whose essence is wisdom,” or “a being who aspires for enlightenment.” This

is the ideal of Mahayana Buddhism. The beginning of the bodhisattva's career is marked by the dawning of the "mind of awakening" (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemma, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: "Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings." This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. After that point the bodhisattva pursues the goal of Buddhahood by progressively cultivating the six, sometimes ten, "perfections" (Paramita): generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom. The two primary qualities in which the Bodhisattva trains are compassion and wisdom, and when the perfections are fully cultivated and compassion and wisdom developed to their highest level, the Bodhisattva becomes a Buddha. The Bodhisattva path is commonly divided into ten levels (Bhumi). The term Bodhisattva is not, however, confined solely to Mahayana Buddhism: in Theravada, Sakyamuni Buddha is referred to as "Bodhisatta" (Bodhisattva) in the past lives described in the Jatakas, during which he is said to have gradually perfected the good qualities of a Buddha. In the Mahayana sense, however, the Bodhisattva concept is an explicit rejection of Nikaya Buddhism's ideal religious paradigm, the Arhat. In Mahayana the Arhat is characterized as limited and selfish, concerned only with personal salvation, in contrast to the Bodhisattva, who works very hard for all sentient beings. So, the term "Bodhisattva" in general, means a "Bodhi being". It denotes a being who is destined to obtain fullest Enlightenment or Buddhahood. According to the Digha Nikaya, literally, a "Bodhisattva" means one who is an intellectual, or one who is resolved or maintained only to the paths that lead to enlightenment.

Several centuries after the Buddha's parinirvana, Bodhisattva is one of the most important ideas of Mahayana Buddhists. However, the concept was not a sole creation of the Mahayana. The term "Bodhisattva" had been mentioned in the Pali Canon and it stems from the original Pali Buddhism which is used more or less exclusively to designate Sakyamuni Buddha prior to His Enlightenment. According to Sarvastivada School, "Bodhisattva" is defined as a person who is certain to become a Buddha. He is a person who is born of wisdom and protected and served by the wise. According to the Astasahasrika Prajnaparamita, nothing real is meant by the word "Bodhisattva," because a Bodhisattva trains himself in non-attachment to all dharmas. For the Bodhisattva, the great being awakes in non-attachment to full enlightenment in the sense that he understands all the dharmas, because he has enlightenment as his aim, an enlightened being. In short, a Bodhisattva is an enlightener of sentient beings. He usually vows to take the enlightenment that he has been certified as having attained and the wisdom that he has uncovered to enlighten all other sentient beings. A Bodhisattva's job is not easy at all. Though his appearance is not rare as that of a Buddha, but it is extremely difficult for a Bodhisattva to appear, and it is also extremely difficult for ordinary people to encounter a real Bodhisattva.

A Bodhisattva is a Mahasattva as defined in Sanscrit language. 'Maha' means 'great' and 'sattva' means either 'being' or 'courage'. Nagarjuna gives a number of reasons why Bodhisattvas are called 'great beings'. It is because they achieve a great work, stand at the head of a great many beings, and activate great friendliness and great compassion, save a great number of beings. The Tibetans translate Mahasattvas as 'great spiritual hero' and their aspirations are truly on a heroic scale. They desire to discipline all beings everywhere, to serve and honor all the Buddhas everywhere. They want to retain firmly in their minds all the teachings of the Buddhas, to have a detailed knowledge of all the Buddha-fields to comprehend all the assemblies which anywhere gather around a Buddha, to plunge into the thoughts of all beings, to remove their defilements and to fathom their potentialities. In other words, Mahasattva is like Bodhisattva who will be able to eliminate all his bad karmas and sufferings and will show the emancipation way to all beings with all skills by his compassion. A

Bodhisattva is the one who benefits himself to help others. A great creature, having a great or noble essence, or being. Mahasattva is a perfect bodhisattva, greater than any other being except a Buddha. Also great being is one with great compassion and energy, who brings salvation to all living beings. In the beginning of the *Astasahasrika Prajna paramita*, the Buddha explained the meaning of 'Mahasattva' (great being) when Subhuti asked about it. The Buddha says that a Bodhisattva is called 'a great being' in the sense that he will demonstrate Dharma so that the great errors should be forsaken, such erroneous views as the assumption of a self, a being, a living soul, a person, of becoming, of not becoming, of annihilation, of eternity, of individuality, etc. According to the *Saddharmapundarika Sutra*, Mahasattvas have good qualities and method of practice paramita and under many hundreds of thousands of Buddhas had planted the roots of goodness.

In the Theravada Buddhism, a Bodhisattva is a person in the school of the elders who is desirous of acquiring the characteristics of a perfect being, the enlightened one. It appears as such in the Pali Nikayas. The accomplishment of such a state makes him content. But the ideal of Mahayana induces him to greater effort based on dynamic activity to help other beings attain ultimate bliss; before that he does not lay ore to save beings from the state of suffering. Not satisfied with his own mitigation of desire some actions that make him subjected to malice and all kind of craving, he strives up on helping all other beings to overcome their afflictions. While the Buddha reminded Mahamati in the *Lankavatara Sutra* as follows: "Oh Mahamati, the distinction between the Bodhisattva and the Two Vehicles is emphasized, as the latter are unable to go up further than the sixth stage where they enter into Nirvana. At the seventh stage, the Bodhisattva goes through an altogether new spiritual experience known as *anabhogacarya*, which may be rendered "a purposeless life." But, supported by the majestic power of the Buddhas, which enters into the great vows first made by the Bodhisattva as he started in his career, the latter now devises various methods of salvation for the sake of his ignorant and confused fellow-beings. But from the absolute point of view of the ultimate truth in the *Lankavatara Sutra*, attained by the Bodhisattva, there is no such graded course of spirituality in his life; for here is really no gradation

(krama), no continuous ascension (kramanusandhi), but the truth (dharma) alone which is imageless (nirabhasa), and detached altogether from discrimination.

According to the Mahaprajnaparamita sastra, Bodhi means the way of all the Buddhas, and Sattva means the essence and character of the good dharma. Bodhisattvas are those who always have the mind to help every being to cross the stream of birth and death. According to old translation, Bodhisattvas are beings with mind for the truth. According to new translation, Bodhisattvas are conscious beings of or for the great intelligence, or enlightenment. The Bodhisattva seeks supreme enlightenment not for himself alone but for all sentient beings. Bodhisattva is a Mahayanist, whether monk or layman, above is to seek Buddhahood, below is to save sentient beings (he seeks enlightenment to enlighten others). Bodhisattva is one who makes the six paramitas (lục độ) their field of sacrificial saving work and of enlightenment. The objective is salvation of all beings with four infinite characteristics of a bodhisattva are kindness (từ), pity (bi), joy (hỷ), self-sacrifice (xả). A person, either a monk, a nun, a layman or a laywoman, who is in a position to attain Nirvana as a Sravaka or a Pratyekabuddha, but out of great compassion for the world, he or she renounces it and goes on suffering in samsara for the sake of others. He or she perfects himself or herself during an incalculable period of time and finally realizes and becomes a Samyaksambuddha, a fully enlightened Buddha. He or she discovers the Truth and declares it to the world. His or her capacity for service to others is unlimited. Bodhisattva has in him Bodhicitta and the inflexible resolve. There are two aspects of Bodhicitta: Transcendental wisdom (Prajna) and universal love (Karuna). The inflexible resolve means the resolve to save all sentient beings. According to the Mahayana schools, the bodhisattvas are beings who deny themselves final Nirvana until, accomplishing their vows, they have first saved all the living. An enlightened being who, deferring his own full Buddhahood, dedicates himself to helping others attain liberation. Besides, the Bodhisattva regards all beings as himself or herself ought not to eat meat. A Bodhisattva is one who has the essence or potentiality of transcendental wisdom or supreme enlightenment, who is on the way to the attainment of transcendental wisdom. He is a potential Buddha. In

his self-mastery, wisdom, and compassion, a Bodhisattva represents a high stage of Buddhahood, but he is not yet a supremely enlightened, fully perfect Buddha. His career lasts for aeons of births in each of which he prepares himself for final Buddhahood by the practice of the six perfections (paramitas) and the stages of moral and spiritual discipline (dasabhumi) and lives a life of heroic struggle and unremitting self-sacrifice for the good of all sentient beings. Bodhisattva is an enlightening being who, deferring his own full Buddhahood, dedicates himself to helping others attain liberation. In his self-mastery, wisdom, and compassion a Bodhisattva represents a high stage of Buddhahood, but he is not yet a supreme enlightened, fully perfected Buddha.

According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, the Buddha told Maitreya, “You should know that there are two categories of Bodhisattvas: those who prefer proud words and a racy style, and those who are not afraid (of digging out) the profound meanings which they can penetrate. Fondness of proud words and a racy style denotes the superficiality of a newly initiated Bodhisattva; but he who, after hearing about the freedom from infection and bondage as taught in profound sutras, is not afraid of their deep meanings which he strives to master, thereby developing a pure mind to receive, keep, read, recite and practise (the Dharma) as preached is a Bodhisattva who has trained for a long time. Maitreya, there are two classes of newly initiated Bodhisattvas who cannot understand very deep Dharmas: those who have not heard about profound sutras and who, giving way to fear and suspicion, cannot keep them but indulge in slandering them, saying: ‘I have never heard about them; where do they come from?’, and those who refuse to call on, respect and make offerings to the preachers of profound sutras or who find fault with the latter; these are two classes of newly initiated Bodhisattvas who cannot control their minds when hearing the deep Dharma, thereby harming themselves. Maitreya, further, there are two categories of Bodhisattvas who harm themselves and fail to realize the patient endurance of the uncreated in spite of their belief and understanding of the deep Dharma: they are (firstly) those who belittle newly initiated Bodhisattva and do not teach and guide them; and (secondly) those who, despite their faith in the deep Dharma, still give rise to discrimination between form and formlessness.” After hearing

the Buddha expound the Dharma, Maitreya said: “World Honoured One, I have not heard all this before. As you have said, I shall keep from these evils and uphold the Dharma of supreme enlightenment which the Tathagata has collected during countless aeons. In future, if there are virtuous men and women who seek for Mahayana, I shall see to it that this sutra will be placed in their hands, and shall use transcendental power to make them remember it so that they can receive, keep, read, recite and proclaim it widely.

II. Great Bodhisattvas & Living Beings:

Great Bodhisattvas Look at Living Beings: According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, Chapter Seven, Looking at Living Beings, Manjusri asked Vimalakirti: “How should a Bodhisattva look at living beings?” Vimalakirti replied: “ A Bodhisattva should look at living beings like an illusionist does at the illusory men (he has created); and like a wise man looking at the moon’s reflection in water; at his own face in a mirror; at the flame of a burning fire; at the echo of a calling voice; at flying clouds in the sky; at foam in a liquid; at bubbles on water; at the (empty) core of a banana tree; at a flash of lightning; at the (non-existent) fifth element (beside the four that make the human body); at the sixth aggregate (beside the five that make a sentient being); at the seventh sense datum (beside the six objects of sense); at the thirteenth entrance (ayatana-beside the twelve involving the six organs and six sense data); at the nineteenth realm of sense (beside the eighteen dhatus or fields of sense); at form in the formless world; at the (non-existent) sprout of a charred grain of rice; at a body seen by a srota-apanna (who has wiped out the illusory body to enter the holy stream); at the entry of an anagamin (or a non-returning sravaka) into the womb of a woman (for rebirth); at an arhat still preserving the three poisons (of desire, anger and stupidity which he has eliminated forever); at a Bodhisattva realizing the patient endurance of the uncreate who is still greedy, resentful and breaking the prohibitions; at a Buddha still suffering from klesa (troubles); at a blind man seeing things; at an adept who still breathes air in and out while in the state of nirvanic imperturbability; at the tracks of birds flying in the air; at the progeny of a barren woman; at the suffering of an illusory man; at a sleeping man seeing he is awake in a dream; at a devout man realizing nirvana

who takes a bodily form for (another) reincarnation; and at a smokeless fire. This is how a Bodhisattva should look at living beings.”

At that time, Manjusri asked Vimalakirti: “When a Bodhisattva so meditates how should he practise kindness (maitri)? Vimalakirti replied: When a Bodhisattva has made this meditation, he should think that: a) Ought to teach living beings to meditate in the same manner; this is true kindness. b) Should practise causeless (nirvanic) kindness which prevents creativeness. c) Should practice unheated kindness which puts an end to klesa (troubles and causes of troubles). d) Should practice impartial kindness which coves all the three periods of time (which means that it is eternal involving past, future and present). e) Should practice passionless kindness which wipes out disputes. f) Should practice non-dual kindness which is beyond sense organs within and sense data without. g) Should practice indestructible kindness which eradicates all corruption. h) Should practice stable kindness which is a characteristic of the undying self-mind. i) Should practice pure and clean kindness which is spotless like Dharmata. j) Should practice boundless kindness which is all-pervasive like space. k) Should practice the kindness of the arhat stage which destroys all bondage. l) Should practice the Bodhisattva kindness which gives comfort to living beings. m) Should practice the Tathagata kindness which leads to the state of thatness. n) Should practice the Buddha kindness which enlightens all living beings. o) Should practice spontaneous kindness which is causeless. p) Should practice Bodhi kindness which is one flavour (i.e. uniform and unmixed wisdom). q) Should practice unsurpassed kindness which cuts off all desires. r) Should practice merciful kindness which leads to the Mahayana (path). s) Should practice untiring kindness because of deep insight into the void and non-existent ego. t) Should practice Dharma-bestowing (dana) kindness which is free from regret and repentance. u) Should practice precepts (sila) upholding kindness to convert those who have broken the commandments. v) Should practice patient (ksanti) kindness which protects both the self and others. w) Should practice Zealous (viryā) kindness to liberate all living beings. aa) Should practice serene (dhyana) kindness which is unaffected by the five senses. bb) Should practice wise (prajna) kindness which is always timely. cc) Should practice expedient (upaya) kindness to appear at all times for

converting living beings. dd) Should practice unhidden kindness because of the purity and cleanliness of the straightforward mind. ee) Should practice profound minded kindness which is free from discrimination. ff) Should practice undeceptive kindness which is without fault. gg) Should practice joyful kindness which bestows the Buddha joy (in nirvana). “Such are the specialities of Bodhisattva kindness.”

Manjusri asked Vimalakirti: “What should be his compassion (karuna)?” Vimalakirti replied: “His compassion should include sharing with all living beings all the merits he has won.” Manjusri asked: “What should be his joy (mudita)?” Vimalakirti replied: He should be filled with joy on seeing others win the benefit of the Dharma with no regret whatsoever.” Manjusri asked “What should he relinquish (upeksa)?” Vimalakirti replied: “In his work of salvation, he should expect nothing (i.e. no gratitude or reward) in return.” Manjusri asked: “On what should he rely in his fear of birth and death?” Vimalakirti replied: “He should rely on the power of the Tathagata’s moral merits.” Manjusri asked: “What should he do to win support from the power of the Tathagata’s moral merits?” Vimalakirti replied: “He should liberate all living beings in order to win support from the power of the Tathagata’s moral merit.” Manjusri asked: “What should he wipe out in order to liberate living beings?” Vimalakirti replied: “When liberating living beings, a Bodhisattva should first wipe out their klesa (troubles and causes of troubles)?” Manjusri asked: “What should he do to wipe out klesa?” Vimalakirti replied: “He should uphold right mindfulness.” Manjusri asked: “What should he do to uphold right mindfulness?” Vimalakirti replied: “He should advocate the unborn and the undying.” Manjusri asked: “What is the unborn and what is the undying?” Vimalakirti replied: “The unborn is evil that does not arise and the undying is good that does not end.” Manjusri asked: “What is the root of good and evil?” Vimalakirti replied: “The body is the root of good and evil.” Manjusri asked: “What is the root of the body?” Vimalakirti replied: “Craving is the root of the body.” Manjusri asked: “What is the root of craving?” Vimalakirti replied: “Baseless discrimination is the root of craving.” Manjusri asked: “What is the root of baseless discrimination?” Vimalakirti replied: “Inverted thinking is the root of discrimination.” Manjusri asked: “What is the root of inverted

thinking?" Vimalakirti replied: "Non abiding is the root of inverted thinking." Manjusri asked: "What is the root of non-abiding?" Vimalakirti replied: "Non abiding is rootless. Manjusri, from this non-abiding root all things arise." A goddess (devakanya) who had watched the gods (devas) listening to the Dharma in Vimalakirti's room appeared in bodily form to shower flowers on the Bodhisattvas and the chief disciples of the Buddha (in their honour). When the flowers fell on the Bodhisattvas, they fell to the ground, but when they fell on the chief disciples, they stuck to their bodies and did not drop in spite of all their efforts to shake them off.

At that time, the goddess asked Sariputra why he tried to shake the flowers off. Sariputra replied: "I want to shake off these flowers which are not in the state of suchness." The goddess said: "Do not say these flowers are not in the state of suchness. Why? Because they do not differentiate, and it is you (alone) who give rise to differentiation. If you (still) differentiate after leaving home in your quest of Dharma, this is not the state of suchness, but if you no longer give rise to differentiation, this will be the state of suchness. Look at the Bodhisattvas whose bodies do not retain the flowers this is because they have put an end to differentiation. This is like a man taking fright who invites trouble for himself is like a man taking right and evil (people). So, if a disciple fears birth and death, then form, sound, smell, taste and touch can trouble him, but if he is fearless, he is immune from all the five sense data. (in your case). It is because the force of habit still remains that these flowers cleave to your body but if you cut it off, they will not stick to it." Sariputra asked: "How long have you been in this room?" The goddess replied: "My stay in this room is just like the Venerable Elder's liberation." Sariputra asked: "Do you then mean that you have stayed here for a long time?" The goddess retorted: "Does your liberation also involve time?" Sariputra kept silent and did not reply. The goddess then asked: "Why is the wise elder silent on this point?" Sariputra replied: "He who wins liberation does not express it in words; hence I do not know what to say!" The goddess said: "Spoken and written word reveal liberation. Why? For liberation is neither within nor without nor in between, and words also are neither inside nor outside nor in between. Therefore, Sariputra, liberation cannot be preached without using words. Why? Because all things point

to liberation.” Sariputra asked: “Do you then mean that thee is no need to keep from carnality, hatred and stupidity to win liberation?” The goddess replied: “In the presence of those who are proud (of their superior knowledge) the Buddha said it is important to keep from carnality, hatred and stupidity in the quest of liberation; but where they are absent, He said that the underlying nature of carnality, hatred and stupidity (i.e. the self-nature) is identical with liberation. Sariputra exclaimed: “Excellent, goddess, excellent, what have you gained and experienced that gives you such an eloquence?” The goddess replied: “The fact that I neither gain nor experience anything gives me this eloquence. Why is it so? Because he who (claims to) have won and experienced (something) is arrogant in the eye of the Buddha Dharma.” Sariputra asked: “Which of the three vehicles is your aim?” The goddess replied: “When I preach the sravaka Dharma to convert people, I appear as a sravaka; when I expound the (twelve) links in the chain of existence I appear as a pratyeka-buddha; and when I teach great compassion to convert them, I appear as a (teacher of) Mahayana. Sariputra, like those entering a campa grove who smell only the fragrance of campas to the exclusion of all other odours, those entering this room smell only the fragrance of Buddha merits and no longer like the aroma of achievements by sravakas and pratyeka-buddha.” Sariputra, when Indra, Brahma, the four deva kings of the four heavens (guardians of the world), heavenly dragons, ghosts and spirits, etc. entered the room and heard this Upasaka (Vimalakirti) expound the right Dharma, they all took delight in smelling the fragrance of Buddha merits and developed the Mahayana mind before returning to their worlds. Sariputra, I have stayed here for twelve years during which I have never heard the Dharmas of sravakas and pratyeka-buddhas but only the doctrine of great kindness (maitri) and great compassion (karuna) of the Bodhisattvas and the inconceivable Buddha Dharma. Sariputra, in this room there are always eight unusual manifestations: First, this room is illuminated by a golden light, which is the same by day and by night and does not depend on either sunlight or moonlight to light it up. Second, he who enters it is immune from all troubles caused by defilements. Third, this room is visited by Indra, Brahma, the four deva kings of the four heavens and Bodhisattvas from other realms. Fourth, the never-receding Dharma of the six paramitas is

always expounded in it. Fifth, the most melodious heavenly music intoning countless Dharma doors (to enlightenment) is heard in it. Sixth, this room contains the four canons (of sutras, vinaya, sastras and miscellaneous scriptures) full of inexhaustible precious treasures for those who are (spiritually) poor. Seventh, when the Venerable Upasaka thinks of Sakyamuni Buddha, Amitabha Buddha, Aksobhya Buddha, the Buddha of Precious Virtues, the Buddha of Precious Flame, the Buddha of Precious Moonshine, the Buddha of Precious Majesty, the Invincible Buddha, the Buddha of the Lion's Roar, the Buddha of All-Perfection, and countless other Buddhas in the ten directions, they all come to expound the secrets of the esoteric Buddha Dharma, after which they return to their realms. Eighth, all majestic heavenly palaces and all pure lands of Buddhas appear in this room.

Sariputra, after witnessing these eight remarkable things in this room, who still seeks the sravaka Dharma?" Sariputra asked: "Why do not you change your female bodily form?" The goddess replied: "For the last twelve years, I have been looking in vain for a female bodily form; so, what do you want me to change? This is like an illusionist who creates an illusory woman; is it correct to ask him to change this unreal woman?" Sariputra said: "No, because it is not a real body; into what then can it be changed?" The goddess said: "All phenomena (including forms) are also unreal. So why have you asked me to change my unreal female body?" At that time, she used her supernatural powers to change Sariputra into a heavenly goddess and herself into a man similar to Sariputra, and asked him: "Why do you change your female form?" Sariputra replied: "I do not know why I have turned into a goddess." The goddess said: "Sariputra, if you can change your female body, all women should also be able to turn into men. Like Sariputra who is not a woman but appears in female bodily form, all women are the same and though they appear in female form, they are fundamentally not women. Hence the Buddha said: 'All things are neither male nor female'." At that time, the goddess again used her supernatural powers to change Sariputra back to his (original) male body, and asked: "Where is your female body now?" Sariputra replied: "The form of a woman neither exists nor is non-existent." The goddess then declared: "Likewise, all things are fundamentally neither existing nor non-existent, and that which neither exists nor is non-existent is

proclaimed by the Buddha.” Sariputra asked: “When will you leave (die) here and where will you be reborn?” The goddess replied: “I shall be reborn like a Buddha by transformation.” Sariputra interjected: “The Buddha’s transformation body implies neither birth nor death.” The goddess said: Likewise all living beings (fundamentally) are subject to neither death nor birth.” Sariputra asked: “When will you realize supreme enlightenment (anuttara-samyak-sambodhi)?” The goddess replied: “I shall realize supreme enlightenment when Sariputra returns to the worldly way of life.” Sariputra retorted: “There is no such thing as myself (a holy man at the sravaka stage) returning to the worldly way of life.” The goddess said: “There is also no such thing as myself realizing enlightenment. Why? Because bodhi (or enlightenment) is not an objective, which can be realized.” Sariputra retorted: “There are Buddhas as countless as sand grains in the Ganges, who have realized and will win supreme enlightenment; what will you say of them?” The goddess said: “The three periods of time(the past, future and present) are spoken of (to the common man) as being in line with worldly thinking but this does not mean that bodhi (which is timeless or eternal) is tied to the past, future and present.” She then asked Sariputra: “Sariputra, have you realized arhatship?” Sariputra replied: “I have realized it because I hold no concept of winning anything.” The goddess said: “Likewise, all Buddhas and great Bodhisattvas achieved their goals because they were free from the idea of winning supreme enlightenment.” At that time, Vimalakirti said to Sariputra: “This goddess has made offering to ninety-two lacs of Buddhas. She is able to play with the Bodhisattva transcendental powers, has fulfilled all her vows, has realized the patient endurance of the uncreate and has reached the never-receding Bodhisattva stage. In fulfillment of a vow, she appears at will (everywhere) to teach and convert living beings.”

Sentient Beings Are Subject to Illness, So Bodhisattvas Are Ill As Well: In Buddhism, a person who is not enlightened is “ill” by definition. The healing process into the aspiration to attain enlightenment. According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, at the time of the Buddha, one day Upasaka Vimalakirti was sick, the Buddha asked his great disciples, one after another, to call on Vimalakirti to enquire after his health, but no one dared to accept. Eventually, Manjusri Bodhisattva accepted the Buddha’s command to call on Vimalakirti to

enquire after his health. The Buddha then said to Manjusri: “You call on Vimalakirti to enquire after his health.” Manjusri said: “World Honoured One, he is a man of superior wisdom and it is not easy to match him (in eloquence). For he has reached reality, and is a skillful expounder of the essentials of the Dharma. His power of speech is unhindered and his wisdom is boundless. He is well versed in all matters pertaining to Bodhisattva development for he has entered the mysterious treasury of all Buddhas. He has overcome all demons, has achieved all transcendental powers and has realized wisdom by ingenious devices (upaya). Nevertheless, I will obey the holy command and will call on him to enquire after his health.” The Bodhisattvas, the chief disciples of the Buddha and the rulers of the four heavens who were present, thought to themselves: “As the two Mahasattvas will be meeting, they will certainly discuss the profound Dharma.” So, eight thousand Bodhisattvas, five hundred sravakas and hundreds and thousands of devas wanted to follow Manjusri. So Manjusri, reverently surrounded by the Bodhisattvas, the Buddha’s chief disciples and the deva, made for Vaisali town. Vimalakirti, who knew in advance that Manjusri and his followers would come, used his transcendental powers to empty his house of all attendants and furniture except a sick bed. When entering the house Manjusri saw only Vimalakirti lying on sick bed, and was greeted by the upasaka, who said: “Welcome, Manjusri, you come with no idea of coming and you see with no idea of seeing.” Manjusri replied: “It is so, Venerable Upasaka, coming should not be further tied to (the idea of) coming, and going should not be further linked with (the concept of) going. Why? Because there is neither whence to come nor whither to go, and that which is visible cannot further be (an object of) seeing. Now, let us put all this aside. Venerable Upasaka, is your illness bearable? Will it get worse by wrong treatment? The World Honoured One sends me to enquire after your health, and is anxious to have good news of you. Venerable Upasaka, where does your illness come from; how long has it arisen, and how will it come to an end?” Vimalakirti replied: “Stupidity leads to love which is the origin of my illness. Because all living beings are subject to illness I am ill as well. When all living beings are no longer ill, my illness will come to an end. Why? A Bodhisattva, because of (his vow to save) living beings, enters the realm of birth and death

which is subject to illness; if they are all cured the Bodhisattva will no longer be ill. For instance, when the only son of an elder falls ill, so do his parents, and when he recovers his health, so do they. Likewise, a Bodhisattva loves all living beings as if they were his sons; so when they fall ill, the Bodhisattva is also ill, and when they recover, he is no longer ill.”

(B) Summaries of the Bodhisattva Ideal in Buddhist Teachings

I. Summaries of the Origin of the Bodhisattva Ideal in Buddhist Teachings:

Bodhisattva is a Sanskrit term for an Enlightened Being. This is the one whose essence is bodhi whose wisdom is resulting from direct perception of Truth with the compassion awakened thereby. Enlightened being who is on the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. A Sanskrit term which means “Awakening being” or a “being of enlightenment,” or “one whose essence is wisdom,” or “a being who aspires for enlightenment.” This is the ideal of Mahayana Buddhism. The beginning of the bodhisattva’s career is marked by the dawning of the “mind of awakening” (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemma, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: “Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings.” This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. After that point the bodhisattva pursues the goal of Buddhahood by progressively cultivating the six, sometimes ten,

“perfections” (Paramita): generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom. The two primary qualities in which the Bodhisattva trains are compassion and wisdom, and when the perfections are fully cultivated and compassion and wisdom developed to their highest level, the Bodhisattva becomes a Buddha. The Bodhisattva path is commonly divided into ten levels (Bhumi). The term Bodhisattva is not, however, confined solely to Mahayana Buddhism: in Theravada, Sakyamuni Buddha is referred to as “Bodhisatta” (Bodhisattva) in the past lives described in the Jatakas, during which he is said to have gradually perfected the good qualities of a Buddha. In the Mahayana sense, however, the Bodhisattva concept is an explicit rejection of Nikaya Buddhism’s ideal religious paradigm, the Arhat. In Mahayana the Arhat is characterized as limited and selfish, concerned only with personal salvation, in contrast to the Bodhisattva, who works very hard for all sentient beings. So, the term “Bodhisattva” in general, means a “Bodhi being”. It denotes a being who is destined to obtain fullest Enlightenment or Buddhahood. According to the Digha Nikaya, literally, a “Bodhisattva” means one who is an intellectual, or one who is resolved or maintained only to the paths that lead to enlightenment. Several centuries after the Buddha’s parinirvana, Bodhisattva is one of the most important ideas of Mahayana Buddhists. However, the concept was not a sole creation of the Mahayana. The term “Bodhisattva” had been mentioned in the Pali Canon and it stems from the original Pali Buddhism which is used more or less exclusively to designate Sakyamuni Buddha prior to His Enlightenment. According to Sarvastivada school, “Bodhisattva” is defined as a person who is certain to become a Buddha. He is a person who is born of wisdom and protected and served by the wise. According to the Astasahasrika Prajnaparamita, nothing real is meant by the word “Bodhisattva,” because a Bodhisattva trains himself in non-attachment to all dharmas. For the Bodhisattva, the great being awakes in non-attachment to full enlightenment in the sense that he understands all the dharmas, because he has enlightenment as his aim, an enlightened being. In short, a Bodhisattva is an enlightener of sentient beings. He usually vows to take the enlightenment that he has been certified as having attained and the wisdom that he has uncovered to enlighten all other sentient beings. A Bodhisattva’s job is not easy at

all. Though his appearance is not rare as that of a Buddha, but it is extremely difficult for a Bodhisattva to appear, and it is also extremely difficult for ordinary people to encounter a real Bodhisattva. A Bodhisattva is a Mahasattva as defined in Sanscrit language. 'Maha' means 'great' and 'sattva' means either 'being' or 'courage'. Nagarjuna gives a number of reasons why Bodhisattvas are called 'great beings'. It is because they achieve a great work, stand at the head of a great many beings, activate great friendliness and great compassion, save a great number of beings. The Tibetans translate Mahasattvas as 'great spiritual hero' and their aspirations are truly on a heroic scale. They desire to discipline all beings everywhere, to serve and honor all the Buddhas everywhere. They want to retain firmly in their minds all the teachings of the Buddhas, to have a detailed knowledge of all the Buddha-fields to comprehend all the assemblies which anywhere gather around a Buddha, to plunge into the thoughts of all beings, to remove their defilements and to fathom their potentialities. In other words, Mahasattva is like Bodhisattva who will be able to eliminate all his bad karmas and sufferings and will show the emancipation way to all beings with all skills by his compassion. A Bodhisattva is the one who benefits himself to help others. A great creature, having a great or noble essence, or being. Mahasattva is a perfect bodhisattva, greater than any other being except a Buddha. Also great being is one with great compassion and energy, who brings salvation to all living beings. In the beginning of the Astasahasrika Prajna paramita, the Buddha explained the meaning of 'Mahasattva' (great being) when Subhuti asked about it. The Buddha says that a Bodhisattva is called 'a great being' in the sense that he will demonstrate Dharma so that the great errors should be forsaken, such erroneous views as the assumption of a self, a being, a living soul, a person, of becoming, of not becoming, of annihilation, of eternity, of individuality, etc. According to the Saddharmapundarika Sutra, Mahasattvas have good qualities and method of practice paramita and under many hundred of thousands of Buddhas had planted the roots of goodness. In the Theravada Buddhism, a Bodhisattva is a person in the school of the elders who is desirous of acquiring the characteristics of a perfect being, the enlightened one. It appears as such in the Pali Nikayas. The accomplishment of such a state makes him content. But

the ideal of Mahayana induces him to greater effort based on dynamic activity to help other beings attain ultimate bliss; before that he does not lay ore to save beings from the state of suffering. Not satisfied with his own mitigation of desire some actions that make him subjected to malice and all kind of craving, he strives up on helping all other beings to overcome their afflictions. While the Buddha reminded Mahamati in the Lankavatara Sutra as follows: “Oh Mahamati, the distinction between the Bodhisattva and the Two Vehicles is emphasized, as the latter are unable to go up further than the sixth stage where they enter into Nirvana. At the seventh stage, the Bodhisattva goes through an altogether new spiritual experience known as anabhogacarya, which may be rendered “a purposeless life.” But, supported by the majestic power of the Buddhas, which enters into the great vows first made by the Bodhisattva as he started in his career, the latter now devises various methods of salvation for the sake of his ignorant and confused fellow-beings. But from the absolute point of view of the ultimate truth in the Lankavatara Sutra, attained by the Bodhisattva, there is no such graded course of spirituality in his life; for here is really no gradation (krama), no continuous ascension (kramanusandhi), but the truth (dharma) alone which is imageless (nirabhasa), and detached altogether from discrimination. According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, the Buddha told Maitreya, “You should know that there are two categories of Bodhisattvas: those who prefer proud words and a racy style, and those who are not afraid (of digging out) the profound meanings which they can penetrate. Fondness of proud words and a racy style denotes the superficiality of a newly initiated Bodhisattva; but he who, after hearing about the freedom from infection and bondage as taught in profound sutras, is not afraid of their deep meanings which he strives to master, thereby developing a pure mind to receive, keep, read, recite and practise (the Dharma) as preached is a Bodhisattva who has trained for a long time. Maitreya, there are two classes of newly initiated Bodhisattvas who cannot understand very deep Dharmas: those who have not heard about profound sutras and who, giving way to fear and suspicion, cannot keep them but indulge in slandering them, saying: ‘I have never heard about them; where do they come from?’, and those who refuse to call on, respect and make offerings to the preachers of profound sutras or who find fault with the latter; these are two classes

of newly initiated Bodhisattvas who cannot control their minds when hearing the deep Dharma, thereby harming themselves. Maitreya, further, there are two categories of Bodhisattvas who harm themselves and fail to realize the patient endurance of the uncreated in spite of their belief and understanding of the deep Dharma: they are (firstly) those who belittle newly initiated Bodhisattva and do not teach and guide them; and (secondly) those who, despite their faith in the deep Dharma, still give rise to discrimination between form and formlessness.” After hearing the Buddha expound the Dharma, Maitreya said: “World Honoured One, I have not heard all this before. As you have said, I shall keep from these evils and uphold the Dharma of supreme enlightenment which the Tathagata has collected during countless aeons. In future, if there are virtuous men and women who seek for Mahayana, I shall see to it that this sutra will be placed in their hands, and shall use transcendental power to make them remember it so that they can receive, keep, read, recite and proclaim it widely.

Some 200 or 300 years after the Buddha’s death, a new variation of the Buddhist ideal began to emerge. Dissatisfied with the seemingly limited goal of the arhat, this new vision emphasized the Bodhisattva as the highest aspiration for all. A Bodhisattva is a being who resolves to become a fully enlightened Buddha and who dedicates his efforts to helping other sentient beings to attain salvation. These compassionate beings figure predominantly in the Mahayana tradition; indeed, the most distinguishing feature of Mahayana Buddhism may be its advocacy of the Bodhisattva as the vehicle to liberation. The Bodhisattva follows a long and arduous path, often described as having ten stages and spanning many lives at the end of which he attains complete Buddhahood. The Mahayana is thus able to consider a host of Bodhisattvas, at different stages along the path, as intervening in the lives of sentient beings. An advanced Bodhisattva, for example, can create “Buddha-Fields,” to which humans can aspire to be reborn by devotion and righteousness. The notion of the Bodhisattva is at times combined with the doctrine of the “Three Bodies” of the Buddha. This theory maintains that the ultimate form of Buddhahood and the true nature of things is the “Body of Dharma” itself (Dharmakaya). The Body of Dharma is revealed progressively by two other bodies: the “Enjoyment Body” (Sambhogakaya), a subtle form perceptible only to those advanced in the path, and the “Transformation Body” (Nirmanakaya), a physical form apparent to all. According to this scheme, Gautama was merely a Transformation Body, an apparition of ultimate Buddhahood. Other Bodhisattvas, who are Enjoyment Bodies, can also teach and intervene through transformation and apparition. Important Mahayana Bodhisattvas include Avalokitesvara; Manjusri, who personifies great wisdom and is often represented holding a sword, which he uses to cut through the veil

of ignorance; and Maitreya, “The Kindly One,” who will be the next Buddha and who, after attaining Buddhahood, will send the next Transformation Body to teach on earth. Other great Buddhist teachers are sometimes associated with Bodhisattvas, and are even seen as their incarnations. One of these is Nagarjuna, who was an abbot at the Buddhist university of Nalanda in the second century A.D. Nagarjuna is considered the founder of the Madhyamaka, a school of Buddhist philosophy that was active in Buddhist India. Madhyamaka greatly influenced certain forms of Chinese and Japanese Buddhism, such as Zen, and still flourishes today in Tibet.

In Tibetan, Bodhisattva is translated as “Heroic Being.” The heroic quality of the Bodhisattva is brought out by the Prajnaparamita: “Suppose a hero, endowed with great accomplishments, had gone out with his mother, father, sons, and daughters. By some set of circumstances, they would get into a huge wild forest. The foolish among them would be greatly frightened. The hero would, however, fearlessly say to them ‘Do not be afraid! I will speedily take you out of this great and terrible jungle, and bring you to safety.’ Since he is fearless, vigorous, exceedingly tender, compassionate, courageous and resourceful, it does not occur to him to take himself alone out of the jungle, leaving his relatives behind. Against the Arhat, Mahayana Buddhism claimed that we must take the whole of the creation with us to enlightenment, that we cannot just abandon any beings, as all beings are as near to us as our relatives are. What a man should do is to make no discrimination between himself and others, and to wait until he had helped everybody into Nirvana before losing himself into it. The Mahayanists thus claimed that the Arhat had not aimed high enough. According to the Mahayana Buddhism, the ideal man, the aim of the Buddhist effort, was not the rather self-centered, cold and narrow-minded Arhat, but the all-compassionate Bodhisattva, who abandoned the world, but not the beings in it. Wisdom had been taught as the highest quality for an Arhat, and compassion as a subsidiary virtue; but to a Bodhisattva, compassion came to rank as equal with wisdom. While the wisdom of an Arhat had been fruitful in setting free in himself. What there was to be set free, it was rather sterile in ways and means of helping ordinary people. The Bodhisattva would be a man who does not only set himself free, but who is also skilful in devising means for bringing out and maturing the latent seeds of enlightenment in others.

According to Buddhist history, after mighty and terrible struggles with himself, the Buddha had conquered in his body all those natural defects and human appetites and desires that prevent our ability of seeing the truth. He had to overcome all the bad influences of the sinful world around Him. Like a soldier fighting desperately in battle against many enemies, He struggled like a hero who conquers, he eventually gained his objects. He also discovered

supportive conditions leading practitioners who follow the Bodhisattva Ideal to bodhi and Buddhahood. Thirty-Seven Bodhisattvas' Conducts (Conditions) Leading to Bodhi or Thirty-seven limbs of enlightenment comprise of four right efforts, four sufficiencies, four foundations of mindfulness, five faculties, five powers, seven limbs of enlightenments, and the eightfold noble path. According to the Prajna-paramita-sutra, the Buddha taught: "Doers of what is hard are the Bodhisattvas, the great beings who have set out to win supreme enlightenment. They do not wish to attain their own private Nirvana. On the contrary, they have survey the highly painful world of being, but they do not tremble at birth-and-death. They have set out for the benefit of the world, for the peace and happiness of the world. They have resolved, and yet desirous to win supreme enlightenment, they do not tremble at birth and death. They have set out for the benefit of the world, for the ease of the world, out of pity for the world. They have resolved: 'We will become a shelter for the world, a refuge for all beings, the world's place of rest, the final belief of all beings, islands of the world, lights of the world, leaders of the world, the world's means of salvation.

According to the Mahayana Buddhism, the ideal of the Bodhisattva was partly due to social pressure on the Order, but to a great extent it was inherent in the practice of the 'Unlimited,' which had trained the monks not to discriminate between themselves and others. As we saw, Buddhism has at its disposal two methods by which it reduces the sense of separateness on the part of individuals. The one is the culture of the social emotions, or sentiments, such as loving-kindness (friendliness) and compassion. The other consists in acquiring the habit of regarding whatever one thinks, feels or does as an interplay of impersonal forces, called 'Dharmas,' weaning oneself slowly from such ideas as 'I' or 'mine' or 'self.' There is a logical contradiction between the method of wisdom, which sees no persons at all, but only Dharmas, and the method of the 'Unlimited' which cultivates relations to people as persons. The meditation on Dharmas dissolves other people, as well as oneself, into a conglomeration of impersonal and instantaneous dharmas. It reduces our manhood into 5 heaps, or pieces, plus a label. If there is nothing in the world except bundles of Dharmas, as cold and as impersonal as atoms, instantaneously perishing all the time, there is nothing which friendliness and compassion could work on. One cannot wish well to a Dharma which is gone by the time one has come to wish it well, nor can one pity a Dharma, say a 'mind-object,' or a 'sight-organ,' or a 'sound-consciousness.' In those Buddhist circles where the method of Dharmas was practiced to a greater extent than the 'Unlimited,' it led to a certain dryness of mind, to aloofness, and to lack of human warmth. The true task of the Buddhist is to carry on with both contradictory methods at the same time. As the method of Dharmas leads to

boundless expansion of the self, because one identifies oneself with more and more living beings. As the method of wisdom explodes the idea that there are any persons at all in the world, so the method of the 'Unlimited' increases the awareness of the personal problems of more and more persons. How then does the Mahayana resolve this contradiction? The Buddhist philosophers differs from philosophers bred in the Aristotelean tradition in that they are not frightened but delighted by a contradiction. They deal with this, as with other contradictions, by merely stating it in an uncompromising form, and then they leave it at that. According to the Diamond Sutra: "Here, oh! Subhuti! A Bodhisattva should think thus 'As many beings as there are in the universe of beings, be they being egg-born, or from a womb, or moisture-born, or miraculously born; be they with form, or without; be they with perception, without perception, or with neither perception nor no-perception, as far as any conceivable universe of beings is conceived; all these should be led by me into Nirvana, into that realm of Nirvana which leaves nothing behind. And yet, although innumerable beings have thus been led to Nirvana, no being at all has been led to Nirvana. And why? If in a Bodhisattva the perception of a 'being' should take place, he would not be called an 'enlightenment-being' or a Bodhisattva."

The ideal of the Bodhisattva was partly due to social pressure on the Sangha Order, but to a great extent it was inherent in the practice of the unlimited, which had trained the monks not to discriminate between themselves and others. As we saw, Buddhism has at its disposal two methods by which it reduces the sense of separateness on the part of individuals. The one is the culture of the social emotions, or sentiments, such as friendliness and compassion. The other consists in acquiring the habit of regarding whatever one thinks, feels or does as an interplay of impersonal forces, called Dharma, weaning oneself slowly from such ideas as 'I' or 'mine' or 'self'. There is a logical contradiction between the method of wisdom, which sees no person at all, but only Dharmas, and the method of the Unlimited which cultivates relations to people as persons. The meditation on Dharmas dissolves other people, as well as oneself, into a conglomeration of impersonal and instantaneous dharmas. It reduces our manhood into five heaps, or pieces, plus a label. If there is nothing in the world except bundles of Dharmas, as cold and as impersonal as atoms. Instantaneously perishing all the time, there is nothing which friendliness and compassion could work on. One cannot wish well to a Dharma which is gone by the time one has come to wish it well, nor can one pity a Dharma, say a 'mind-object,' or a 'sight-organ,' or a 'sound-consciousness.' In those Buddhist traditions where the method of Dharmas was practiced to a greater extent than the Unlimited, it led to a certain dryness of mind, to aloofness, and to lack of human warmth. The true task of a Buddhist

is to carry on with both contradictory methods at the same time. As the method of Dharmas leads to boundless contraction of the self because everything is emptied out of it, so the method of Unlimited leads to a boundless expansion of the self because one identifies oneself with more and more living beings. As the method of wisdom explodes the idea that there are any persons at all in the world, so the method of the Unlimited increases the awareness of the personal problems of more and more persons.

In short, the Bodhisattva ideal originated from Mahayana Buddhism, but the term Bodhisattva is not confined solely to Mahayana Buddhism. In Theravada, Sakyamuni Buddha is referred to as “Bodhisatta” (Bodhisattva) in the past lives described in the Jatakas, during which he is said to have gradually perfected the good qualities of a Buddha. In the Mahayana sense, however, the Bodhisattva concept is an explicit rejection of Nikaya Buddhism’s ideal religious paradigm, the Arhat. In Mahayana the Arhat is characterized as limited and selfish, concerned only with personal salvation, in contrast to the Bodhisattva, who works very hard for all sentient beings. The beginning of the bodhisattva’s career is marked by the dawning of the “mind of awakening” (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemma, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: “Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings.” This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. After that point the bodhisattva pursues the goal of Buddhahood by progressively cultivating the six, sometimes ten, “perfections” (Paramita): generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom. The two primary qualities in which the Bodhisattva trains are compassion and wisdom, and when the perfections are fully cultivated and compassion and wisdom developed to their highest level, the Bodhisattva becomes a Buddha.

II. Characteristics Bodhisattva Ideal:

The Bodhisattva seeks supreme enlightenment not for himself alone but for all sentient beings. A Bodhisattva is a Mahayanist, whether monk or layman, above is to seek Buddhahood, below is to save sentient beings (he

seeks enlightenment to enlighten others). Bodhisattva is the person who makes the six paramitas (lục độ) their field of sacrificial saving work and of enlightenment. The main objective of Bodhisattva Ideal is salvation of all beings. Four infinite characteristics of a bodhisattva are kindness (từ), pity (bi), joy (hỷ), self-sacrifice (xả). Bodhisattva is a person, either a monk, a nun, a layman or a laywoman, who is in a position to attain Nirvana as a Sravaka or a Pratyekabuddha, but out of great compassion for the world, he or she renounces it and goes on suffering in samsara for the sake of others. He or she perfects himself or herself during an incalculable period of time and finally realizes and becomes a Samyaksambuddha, a fully enlightened Buddha. He or she discovers the Truth and declares it to the world. His or her capacity for service to others is unlimited. Bodhisattva has in him Bodhicitta and the inflexible resolve. There are two aspects of Bodhicitta: Transcendental wisdom (Prajna) and universal love (Karuna). The inflexible resolve means the resolve to save all sentient beings, Bodhisattva Ideal always have three main characteristics: *First*, Bodhisattvas who hope to be reborn to help sentient beings must retain the seed of existence. According to the Vijnaptimatratasiddhi Sastra, a Bodhistva retains the obstacle of defilement to sustain his vow to be reborn into the samsara world. However, he is reborn, fully mindful and conscious of whatever place where he chooses to be reborn. In fact, he is not contaminated by the defilements owing to the fact that he has stayed with the view of pratityasanutpada for a long time, there is the “guarding of defilements”. *Second*, a Bodhisattva always has the “Four Immeasurable Minds” known as maitri, karuna, mudita and upeksha, which are not to be viewed in discreteness or in isolation. Maitri is the center of the others, and the remaining three are its corelation. Maitri is the basis of Karuna. It stands for love, respect and care for all lives. It is concreteness of loving kindness based on the feeling that just as our life is precious to us, so also is the life of others. Mudita is altruistic sympathetic joy. It is happiness in the happiness of all. It is a consequence of Karuna. Upeksha is the prerequisite of Karuna. It stands for compassion to all beings. It also means equanimity of mind apart from partiality. *Third*, on the Bodhisattva’s Path, with the development of Bodhicitta, Bodhisattvas always practice the paramitas. In other words, the Path from sentient beings to Bodhisattvas and the realization of complete fulfillment of Enlightenment, Bodhisattvas must always try to practice all the paramitas.

III. The Bodhisattva Ideal Is the Very Path of A Bodhisattva's Cultivation

An Overview of Cultivation in Buddhism: In Buddhist cultivation, it is traditional for Buddhists to honour the Buddha, to respect the Sangha and to pay homage the religious objects of veneration such as the relics of the Buddha, Buddha images, monastery, pagoda, and personal articles used by the Buddha. However, Buddhists should try to cultivate and attain a self-realization, and never pray to idols. To lead a religious life or cultivation in Buddhism is to put the Buddha's teachings into practice on a continued and regular basis. Cultivation in Buddhism also means to nourish the seeds of Bodhi by practicing and developing precepts, dhyana, and wisdom. Thus, cultivation in Buddhism is not solely practicing Buddha recitation or sitting meditation, it also includes cultivation of six paramitas, ten paramitas, thirty-seven aids to Enlightenment, etc. For Buddhists, to cultivate earnestly we cannot look down on ourselves and not to exert enough efforts. According to the Platform Sutra of the Sixth Patriarch's Dharma Treasure, the Sixth Patriarch, Hui-Neng, taught: Good Knowing Advisors, one who cultivates non-movement does not notice whether other people are right or wrong, good or bad, or whether they have other faults. That is the non-movement of the self-nature. Good Knowing Advisors, although the body of the confused person may not move, as soon as he opens his mouth, he speaks of what is right and wrong about others, of their good points and shortcomings and so, he turns his back on the way. Attachment to the mind and attachment to purity are obstructions to the Way." According to Buddhism, our fate depends entirely on our deeds; in other words, we are the architects of our karma. Cultivating in accordance with the Buddha's Teachings means we change the karma of ourselves; changing our karmas by not only giving up our bad actions or misdeeds, but also forgiving offences directed against us by others. We cannot blame anyone else for our miseries and misfortunes. We have to face life as it is and not run away from it, because there is no place on earth to hide from karma. Performing good deeds is indispensable for our own happiness; there is no need of imploring favors from deities or simply showing repentance. Changing karma also means remembrance of karma and using wisdom to distinguish virtue from evil and freedom from constraint so that we are able to avoid evil deeds, to do meritorious deeds, or not to create any deeds at all. Changing karma also means to purify our minds rather than praying, performing rites, or torturing our bodies. Changing karma also means to change your narrow-minded heart into a heart full of love and compassion and accomplish the four boundless hearts, especially the hearts of loving-kindness and compassion. True Buddhists should always remember that sooner or later everyone has to die once. After death, what can we bring with us? We cannot bring with us any worldly possessions; only our bad or good karma will follow us like a shadow of our own.

The Bodhisattva Ideal Is the Very Path of A Bodhisattva's

Cultivation: The beginning of the bodhisattva's career is marked by the dawning of the "mind of awakening" (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemmas, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: "Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings." This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. However, before starting one of these great vows, any practitioners who have a wish to cultivate in accordance with the Bodhisattva Ideal should first to begin their own journey of cultivation that is in accordance with Bodhisattvas' Spirit.

If we, Buddhist practitioners, want to cultivate in accordance with the Bodhisattva Ideal, we must first know and thoroughly understand who are parents and relatives of this Bodhisattva, and then rightly follow their guidance. According to Zen Master D.T. Suzuki in *Essays in Zen Buddhism*, Book III, Bodhisattvas have twenty parents and relatives: *First*, prajna (wisdom) is his mother. *Second*, upaya (skillful means) is his father. *Third*, dana (charity) is his wet nurse. *Fourth*, sila (morality) is his supporter. *Fifth*, ksanti (patience) is his decoration. *Sixth*, virya (strenuousness or energy) is his nurse. *Seventh*, dhyana (meditation) is his cleaner. *Eighth*, good friends are his instructors. *Ninth*, all factors of enlightenment are his companions. *Tenth*, all Bodhisattvas are his brothers. *Eleventh*, the Bodhicitta is his home. *Twelfth*, to conduct himself in accordance with the truth is his family manners. *Thirteenth*, the Bhūmis are his residence. *Fourteenth*, the Kshantis are his family members. *Fifteenth*, the vows are his family motto. *Sixteenth*, to promote deeds of devotion is his family legacy. *Seventeenth*, to make others accept Mahayana is his family business. *Eighteenth*, to be anointed after being bound for one more birth is his destiny as crown prince in the kingdom of Dharma. *Nineteenth*, paramitas are the Prajna Boat which conveys him to another shore of Enlightenment. *Twentieth*, to arrive at the full knowledge of Tathagatahood forms the foundation of his pure family relationship.

According to Buddhism, it is not only ordinary people cannot escape cause and effect, even the Bodhisattvas cannot avoid them. However,

Bodhisattvas are enlightening beings who have far-ranging vision. In cultivation, they always know bad causes will surely end up in bad results. Thus, Bodhisattvas are afraid of bad consequences in the future, not only they avoid planting evil-causes or evil karma in the present, but they also diligently cultivate to gradually diminish their karmic obstructions; at the same time to accumulate their virtues and merits, and ultimately to attain Buddhahood. However, sentient beings complete constantly to gather evil-causes; therefore, they must suffer evil effect. When ending the effect of their actions, they are not remorseful or willing to repent. Not only do they blame Heaven and other people, but they continue to create more evil karma in opposition and retaliation. Therefore, enemies and vengeance will continue to exist forever in this vicious cycle. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that by planting more good causes, we will surely reap good consequences in the future. In the contrary, if we only see the present, and engage in immoral practices by not planting good roots and accumulating merits and virtues, we will surely bear bad consequences, without any exception. Practitioners should always remember that in any undertaking, the most difficult part is right at the start, but a thousand-mile journey begins with just one first step. So, we should start our cultivation right at this very time, this very moment, and not wait for any time in the future because the time is not waiting for anyone! Great Enlightening Beings have many ways of cultivation; however, in the limitation of this little book, we can only mention some typical ones. *According to the Flower Adornment Sutra, there are ten kinds of cultivation of Great Enlightening Beings:* Enlightening beings who abide by these can achieve the supreme cultivation and practice all truths. These ten methods of cultivation include cultivation of the ways of transcendence, learning, wisdom, purpose, righteousness, emancipation, manifestation, diligence, accomplishment of true awakening, and operation of right teaching. Besides, according to the Flower Adornment Sutra, Chapter 21, *there are ten kinds of practices, which are expounded by the Buddhas of past, present and future:* They are the practice of giving joy, beneficial practice, practice of nonopposition, practice of indomitability, practice of nonconfusion, practice of good manifestation, practice of nonattachment, practice of that which is difficult to attain, practice of good teachings, and practice of truth. According to the Flower Adornment Sutra, Chapter 38, there are ten ways of getting rid of demons' actions of Great Enlightening Beings. *Enlightening Beings who abide by these can escape all demonic ways:* *First*, associating with the wise and honoring and serving them. *Second*, not elevating themselves or praising themselves. *Third*, believing in the profound teaching of Buddha without repudiating it. *Fourth*, never ever forgetting the determination for omniscience. *Fifth*, diligently cultivating refined practices, never being lax. *Sixth*, always seeking all the

teachings for enlightening beings. *Seventh*, always expounding the truth tirelessly. *The eighth way of getting rid of demons' actions* includes taking refuge with all the Buddhas in the ten directions and thinking of them as saviors and protectors. *Ninth*, faithfully accepting and remembering the support of the spiritual power of the Buddhas. *Tenth*, equally planting the same roots of goodness with all enlightening beings. Furthermore, according to the Buddha in The Flower Adornment Sutra, Chapter 38, Great Enlightening Beings have *ten kinds of practice which help them attain the practice of the unexcelled knowledge and wisdom of Buddhas*: *First*, the practice dealing with all sentient beings, to develop them all to maturity. *Second*, the practice seeking all truths, to learn them all. *Third*, the practice of all roots of goodness, to cause them all to grow. *Fourth*, the practice of all concentration, to be single-minded, without distraction. *Fifth*, the practice of all knowledge, to know everything. *Sixth*, the practice of all cultivations, to be able to cultivate them all. *Seventh*, the practice dealing with all Buddha-lands, to adorn them all. *Eighth*, the practice dealing with all good companions, respecting and supporting them. *Ninth*, the practice dealing with all Buddhas, honoring and serving them. *Tenth*, the practice all supernatural powers, to be able to transform anywhere, anytime to help sentient beings. *Also according to the Flower Adornment Sutra, Chapter 38, there are ten kinds of rules of behavior of great enlightening beings*: Enlightening beings who abide by these can attain the supreme discipline of great knowledge. *First*, Bodhisattvas should not slander any enlightening teachings. *Second*, Bodhisattvas' faith in the Buddhas should be indestructible. *Third*, Bodhisattvas should honor and respect all enlightening beings. *Fourth*, Bodhisattvas should never give up their friendship with wise people. *Fifth*, Bodhisattvas should not think of those who seek individual salvation. *Sixth*, Bodhisattvas should avoid all regression on the path of enlightening beings. *Seventh*, Bodhisattvas should not give rise to any malice toward sentient beings. *Eighth*, Bodhisattvas should cultivate all roots of goodness to perfection. *Ninth*, Bodhisattvas should be able to conquer all demons. *Tenth*, Bodhisattvas should fulfill all the ways of transcendence. Also according to the Flower Adornment Sutra, Chapter 38, there are ten norms of practice of Great Enlightening Beings. *Enlightening Beings who abide by these can attain the Buddhas' supreme method of practice*: *First*, honoring the wise. *Second*, always being alerted by the celestial spirits. *Third*, always having shame and conscience before the Buddhas. *The fourth norm of practice* includes having pity for sentient beings and not abandoning birth and death. *Fifth*, carrying tasks through consummation without change of mind. *The sixth norm of practice* includes single-mindedly following the enlightening beings, aspiring to universal enlightenment, and diligently learning. *The seventh norm of practice* includes getting rid of wrong views and earnestly

seeking the right Path. *Eighth*, destroying demons and the actions of afflictions. *The ninth norm of practice* includes knowing the different faculties and temperaments of sentient beings and teaching them and enable them to live in the state of Buddhahood. *The tenth norm of practice* includes abiding in the infinitely vast cosmos of reality and removing the afflictions and purifying the body.

IV. The Ideal of Spreading Kindness and Compassion to All Sentient Beings:

An Overview of Loving in Buddhist Teachings: The heroic quality of the Bodhisattva is brought out by the Prajnaparamita: “Suppose a hero, endowed with great accomplishments, had gone out with his mother, father, sons, and daughters. By some set of circumstances, they would get into a huge wild forest. The foolish among them would be greatly frightened. The hero would, however, fearlessly say to them ‘Do not be afraid! I will speedily take you out of this great and terrible jungle, and bring you to safety.’ Since he is fearless, vigorous, exceedingly tender, compassionate, courageous and resourceful, it does not occur to him to take himself alone out of the jungle, leaving his relatives behind.

In Buddhism, there are many different meanings of “Love”. Love as craving or sexual desire is one of the major causes of sufferings and rebirth. According to Buddhism, love is understanding, love does not judge or condemn, love listens and understands, love cares and sympathizes, love accepts and forgives, and so on and so on. Thus, in Buddhism, love has the meaning of “selfless love” which accompanies with loving-kindness, compassion, joy, and equanimity. Love goes hand-in-hand with compassion. When we have a loving heart, compassion arises easily in us. Whenever we see somebody suffering, we feel an urge to reach out to help the person ease his or her suffering. To remove or ease another’s suffering is the main characteristic of love. Thus, those who is compassionate, loving and forgiving, they really understand the meanings of the word “Love” in Buddhism. In fact, emancipation in Buddhism is not unrealistic, if we know how to focus from “Selfish” to “Altruistic”, and think more about others’ well-being and welfare, we have already liberated ourselves.

Love in Buddhism: In Buddhist teachings, there are two kinds of love. *First, Ordinary human love springing from desire:* This is the love in the passion realm, or passion-love. Ordinary human love springing from desire, in contrast with religious love (Pháp ái). Love inspired by desire through any of the five senses. Ordinary human love springing from desire, in contrast with religious love (Pháp ái). Love inspired by desire through any of the five

senses. *Second, Religious love:* Bodhisattva or religious love springing from the vow to save all creatures. Bodhisattva love with desire to save all creatures, in contrast with ordinary love (Dục ái). Religious love has Hinayana and Mahayana Dharma-love. Hinayana religious love: Hinayana Dharma-love as desire for nirvana. Mahayana religious love: Mahayana Dharma-love or Bodhisattva attachment to illusory things. Buddhist practitioners should always remember that both of these two religious loves must be eradicated and must be replaced by Tathagata-love, which goes out to all beings for salvation.

Kindness and Compassion: What is the ‘compassionate mind?’ To be compassionate is to pity and to be empathetic, wishing to help and rescue others without having discriminations or attachment to various characteristics. This means ‘altruism’ or to have mercy and compassion, wishing to help others but not to have any intention of taking advantages. For instance, seeing someone rich, beautiful, etc, one pretends to be compassionate by helping, but having ulterior motives of self-gain. This is called “Desirous Views,” or developing love and lust when seeing wealth and beauty according to binding ways of sentient beings; thus, to act in this way cannot be called being ‘compassionate.’ It was the spirit of loving-kindness and compassion taught by the Buddha that touched the heart of King Asoka, the great Buddhist Emperor of India in the third century B.C. Before he became a Buddhist, he was a warlike monarch like his father, King Bimbisara, and his grandfather, King Candragupta. Wishing to extend his territories he invaded and conquered Kalinga. In this war thousands were slain, while many more were wounded and taken captive. Later, however, when he followed the Buddha’s creed of compassion he realized the folly of killing. He felt very sad when he thought of the great slaughter, and gave up warfare. He is the only military monarch on record who after victory gave up conquest by war and inaugurated conquest by righteousness. As his Rock Edict XIII says, ‘he sheathed the sword never to unsheath it, and wish no harm to living beings.’ The spread of the Buddha’s creed of compassion throughout the Eastern world was largely due to the enterprise and tireless efforts of Asoka the Great. The Buddha-law made Asia mild and non-aggressive. However, modern civilization is pressing hard on Asian lands. It is known that with the rise and development of the so-called civilization, man’s culture deteriorates and he changes for the worse. With the match of modern science very many changes have taken place, and all these changes and improvements, being material and external, tend to make modern man more and more worldly minded and sensuous with the result that he neglects the qualities of the mind, and becomes self-interested and heartless. The waves of materialism seem to influence mankind and affect their way of thinking and living. People are so bound by their senses, they live so exclusively in the material world that they fail to contact the good within. Only

the love and compassion taught by the Buddha can establish complete mental harmony and well-being.

A Contradictory of Wisdom and Compassion: According to Buddhism, a Bodhisattva is a being compounded of the two contradictory forces of wisdom and compassion. In his wisdom, he sees no persons; in his compassion he is resolved to save them. His ability to combine these contradictory attitudes is the source of his greatness, and of his ability to save himself and others. What a man should do is to make no discrimination between himself and others, and to wait until he had helped everybody into Nirvana before losing himself into it. The Mahayanists thus claimed that the Arhat had not aimed high enough. The ideal man, the aim of the Buddhist effort, was, according to them, not the rather self-centered, cold and narrow-minded Arhat, but the all-compassionate Bodhisattva, who abandoned the world, but not the beings in it. Whereas in Theravada tradition, wisdom had been taught as the highest, and compassion as a subsidiary virtue; in Mahayana, compassion now came to rank as equal with wisdom. While the wisdom of the Arhat had been fruitful in setting free in himself what there was to be set free, it was rather sterile in ways and means of helping ordinary people. In Mahayana Buddhism, the Bodhisattva would be a man who does not only set himself free, but who is also skilful in devising means for bringing out and maturing the latent seeds of enlightenment in others. According to the Prajnaparamita Sutra, "Doers of what is hard are the Bodhisattvas, the great beings who have set out to win supreme enlightenment, but they do not wish to attain their own private Nirvana. On the contrary, they have surveyed the highly painful world of being, and yet, desirous to win supreme enlightenment, they do not tremble at birth-and-death. They have set out for the benefit of the world, for the ease of the world, out of pity for the world. They have resolved: 'We will become a shelter for the world, a refuge for the world, the world's place of rest, the final relief of the world, islands of the world, leaders of the world, the world's means of salvation.'"

Love and Desire: Love and desire means loves that attach to desires or love of family. Love and desire are the stumbling blocks in cultivation. Besides, the sea of emotional love of birth and death is fundamental obstacle to the Way. If cultivators feel love and desire, whether for people or objects, it will hinder them from making progress in cultivation. In one word, love and desire are just birth and death, and birth and death are just love and desire. Thus, love and desire are the root of birth and death. If we don't break through the ignorance of love and desire, there is no way we can escape the cycle of birth and death. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that before thinking of the Buddhahood, we should first cut off desire and get rid of love. More than twenty-five hundred years ago, Prince Siddhartha Gautama did just

that before he became a wandering ascetic monk. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that we all are human beings, and human beings surely have emotions, but we Buddhists should not cling to such emotions of love and desire. We should treat everyone equally, showing loving-kindness and compassion to all, but we must be careful not to get trapped in the trap of love and desire. Buddhists have no other way to transcend but cutting off desire and getting rid of love, for whatever we are fond of, we love, and whatever we dislike, we hate. So if we don't cut desire and get rid of love, we will continue to go round and round in the cycle of love and hate forever.

The Buddha's Teachings on "Love and Desire" in the Dharmapada Sutra: It is difficult to renounce the world. It is difficult to be a householder. It is painful to associate with those who are not friends. It is painful to be wandering in the samsara forever. Reaching the enlightenment and let wander no more! Let's suffer no more! (Dharmapada 302). Whoever binds to craving, his sorrows flourish like well-watered birana grass (Dharmapada 335). Whoever in this world overcomes this unruly craving, his sorrows fall away just like water-drops from a lotus leaf (Dharmapada 336). This is my advice to you: "Root out craving; root it out, just like birana grass is rooted out. Let not Mara crush you again and again as a flood crushes a reed! (Dharmapada 337). Latent craving is not conquered, suffering recovers and grows again and again, just like a tree hewn down grows up again as long as its roots is unrooted (Dharmapada 338). If in any man, the thirty-six streams of craving are still flowing, such deluded person is still looking for pleasure and passion, and torrential thoughts of lust sweep him away (Dharmapada 339). Streams of pleasure and passion flow in all directions, just like the creeper sprouts and stands. Seeing the creeper that has sprung up in your mind, cut it off with wisdom (Dharmapada 340). Common people are subject to attachment and thirst; they are always happy with pleasure; they run after passion. They look for happiness, but such men caught in the cycle of birth and decay again and again (Dharmapada 341). Men who are crazed with craving, are terrified like hunted hares. The more they hold fast by fetters, bonds, and afflictions, the longer they suffer (Dharmapada 342). Men who are crazed with craving, are terrified just like hunted hares. Therefore, a monk who wishes his own passionlessness, should first banish craving (Dharmapada 343). He who is free from desire for the household, finds pleasure (of asceticism or monastic life) in the forest, yet run back to that very home. Look at that man! He runs right back into that very bondage again! (Dharmapada 344). To a wise man, the bondage that is made of hemp, wood or iron, is not a strong bond, the longing for wives, children, jewels, and ornaments is a greater and far stronger attachment (Dharmapada 345). The wise people say that that bond is very strong. Such fetters seem supple, but hard to break. Break them! Cut off desire

and renounce the world! (Dharmapada 346). A man infatuated with lust falls back into the stream as a spider into the web spun by itself. He who cuts off this bond, retire from the world, with no clinging, will leave all sorrow behind (Dharmapada 347). He who has reached the goal, without fear, without craving and without desire, has cut off the thorns of life. This is his final mortal body (Dharmapada 351). He who is without craving, without attachment; who understands subtleties of words and meanings; they are truly a great wise who bear the final mortal body (Dharmapada 352). Strive hard to cut off the stream of desires. Oh! Brahman! Knowing that all conditioned things will perish. Oh! Brahman! You are a knower of the Unmade Nirvana! (Dharmapada 383).

V. The Bodhisattva Ideal Is Spreading Kindness and Compassion with Wisdom:

A Summary on Compassion: Compassion means sympathy, or pity (compassion) for another in distress and desire to help him or to deliver others from suffering out of pity. The compassion is selfless, non-egoistic and based on the principle of universal equality. A compassionate mind is a mind with wholesome thoughts which always wishes others to be released from their sufferings and afflictions. 'Karuna' means pity or compassion. In Pali and Sanskrit, 'Karuna' is defined as 'the quality which makes the heart of the good man tremble and quiver at the distress of others.' The quality that rouses tender feelings in the good man at the sight of others' suffering. Cruelty, violence is the direct enemy of 'karuna'. Though the latter may appear in the guise of a friend, it is not true 'karuna', but falsely sympathy; such sympathy is deceitful and one must try to distinguish true from false compassion. The compassionate man who refrains from harming and oppressing others and endeavors to relieve them of their distress, gives the gift of security to one and all, making no distinction whatsoever. A compassionate mind does not only bring forth happiness and tranquility for others, but also to ourselves. The compassionate mind also helps us dispel our negative thoughts such as anger, envy and jealousy, etc. Compassion extends itself without distinction to all sentient beings. However, compassion must be accompanied by wisdom in order to have right effect.

The Buddhist conception of "Karuna" has no compromising limitations. All beings include even the tiniest creature that crawls at our feet. The Buddhist view of life is such that no living being is considered as outside the circle of "Metta and Karuna" which make no distinction between man, animal and insect, or between man and man, as, high and low, rich and poor, strong and weak, wise and unwise, dark and fair, Brahmin and Candala, and so forth; for "Metta and Karuna" are boundless and no sooner do we try to keep men

apart on the false basis mentioned above, than the feeling of separateness creeps in and these boundless qualities become limited which is contrary to the teaching of the Buddha. We must be careful not to confuse compassion with morbid manifestations of sadness, with feelings of mental pain and with sentimentality. At the loss of a dear one, man weeps, but that is not compassion. If we analyze such feelings carefully, we will conclude that they are outward manifestations of our inner thoughts of self affection. Why do we feel sad? Because our loved one has passed away. He who was our kin is now no more. We feel that we have lost the happiness and all else that we derived from him and so we are sad. Do we not see that all these feelings revolve round the 'I' and 'Mine'? Whether we like it or not, self interest was responsible for it all. Can we call this 'karuna', pity or compassion? Why do we not feel equally sad when others who are not our kin pass away before our eyes? Because we were not familiar with them, they were not ours, we have not lost anything and are not denied the pleasures and comforts we already enjoy.

A Summary on Wisdom: Wisdom is the knowledge of things and realization of truth. Wisdom is arosen from perception or knowing. Wisdom is based on right understanding and right thought. Decision or judgment as to phenomena or affairs and their principles, of things and their fundamental laws. Prajna is often interchanged with wisdom. Wisdom means knowledge, the science of the phenomenal, while prajna more generally to principles or morals. The difference between Buddhi and Jnana is sometimes difficult to point out definitively, for they both signify worldly relative knowledge as well as transcendental knowledge. While Prajna is distinctly pointing out the transcendental wisdom. The Prajna-paramita-sutra describes "prajna" as supreme, highest, incomparable, unequalled, unsurpassed. Wisdom or real wisdom. According to the Mahayana Buddhism, only an immediate experienced intuitive wisdom, not intelligence can help man reach enlightenment. Therefore, to achieve prajna is synonymous with to reach enlightenment. One of the two perfections required for Buddhahood. The wisdom which enables us to transcend disire, attachment and anger so that we will be emancipated (not through the mercy of any body, but rather through our own power of will and wisdom) and so that we will not be reborn again and again in "samsara" or transmigration.

Knowing reveals itself in many ways. Knowing can be active whenever there is hearing, seeing, feeling, comparing, remembering, imagining, reflecting, worrying, hoping and so forth. In the Vijnanavadin school of Buddhism, which specialized in the study of "consciousnesses," many more fields of activity were attributed to knowing. For instance, in alayavijnana, or "storehouse of consciousness," the fields of activity of knowing are

maintaining, conserving, and manifesting.” Also, according to the Vijnanavadins, all sensation, perception, thought, and knowledge arise from this basic store-house consciousness. Manyana is one of the ways of knowing based on this consciousness and its function is to grasp onto the object and take it as a “self.” Manovijnana serves as the headquarters for all sensations, perceptions, and thoughts, and makes creation, imagination, as well as dissection of reality possible. Amala is the consciousness that shines like a pure white light on the store-house consciousness. In any phenomena, whether psychological, physiological, or physical, there is dynamic movement, life. We can say that this movement, this life, is the universal manifestation, the most commonly recognized action of knowing. We must not regard “knowing” as something from the outside which comes to breathe life into the universe. It is the life of the universe itself.

According to Buddhism, understanding is not an accumulation of knowledge. To the contrary, it is the result of the struggle to become free of knowledge. Understanding shatters old knowledge to make room for the new that accords better with reality. When Copernicus discovered that the Earth goes around the sun, most of the astronomical knowledge of the time had to be discarded, including the ideas of above and below. Today, physics is struggling valiantly to free itself from the ideas of identity and cause effect that underlie classical science. Science, like the Way, urges us to get rid of all preconceived notions. Understanding, in human, is translated into concepts, thoughts, and words. Understanding is not an aggregate of bits of knowledge. It is a direct and immediate penetration. In the realm of sentiment, it is feeling. In the realm of intellect, it is perception. It is an intuition rather than the culmination of reasoning. Every now and again it is fully present in us, and we find we cannot express it in words, thoughts, or concepts. “Unable to describe it,” that is our situation at such moments. Insights like this are spoken of in Buddhism as “impossible to reason about, to discuss, or to incorporate into doctrines or systems of thought.” Besides, understanding also means a shield to protect cultivator from the attack of greed, hatred and ignorance. A man often does wrong because of his ignorance or misunderstanding about himself, his desire of gaining happiness, and the way to obtain happiness. Understanding will also help cultivators with the ability to remove all defilements and strengthen their virtues.

Higher intellect or spiritual wisdom; knowledge of the ultimate truth (reality). Jnana is the essential clarity and unerring sensibility of a mind that no longer clings to concepts of any kind. It is direct and sustained awareness of the truth, for a Bodhisattva, that meaning and existence are found only in the interface between the components of an unstable and constantly shifting web of relationships, which is everyday life, while prajna is the strength of

intellectual discrimination elevated to the status of a liberating power, a precision tool capable of slicing through obstructions that take the form of afflictions and attachments to deeply engrained hereditary patterns of thought and action. Jnana is a very flexible term, as it means sometimes ordinary worldly knowledge, knowledge of relativity, which does not penetrate into the truth of existence, but also sometimes transcendental knowledge, in which case being synonymous with Prajna or Arya-jnana.

Wisdom is described as the understanding of the Four Noble Truths, the understanding of interdependent origination, and the like. The attainment of wisdom is the ability of transformation of these doctrinal items from mere objects of intellectual knowledge into real, personal experience. In other words, according to Buddhism, wisdom is the ability to change our knowledge of the four Noble Truths and the like from mere sutra learning into actual, living truth. To attain wisdom, we must first cultivate good conduct, then cultivate mental development. It should be noted that reading and understanding the meaning of a sutra doesn't mean attaining wisdom. Wisdom means reading, understanding, and transforming doctrinal items from sutras into real, personal experience. Wisdom gives us the ability of "seeing the truth" or "seeing things as they really are" because the attainment of wisdom is not an intellectual or academic exercise, it is understanding or seeing these truths directly.

In Buddhism, wisdom is the highest virtue of all. It is usual to translate the Sanskrit term "Prajna" (pali-Panna) by "wisdom," and that is not positively inaccurate. When we are dealing with the Buddhist tradition, however, we must always bear in mind that, there Wisdom is taken in a special sense that is truly unique in the history of human thought. "Wisdom" is understood by Buddhists as the methodical contemplation of 'Dharmas.' This is clearly shown by Buddhaghosa's formal and academic definition of the term: "Wisdom has the characteristic of penetrating into dharmas as they are themselves. It has the function of destroying the darkness of delusion which covers the own-being of dharmas. It has the manifestation of not being deluded. Because of the statement: 'He who is concentrated knows, sees what really is,' concentration is its direct and proximate cause."

Wisdom understanding that emptiness of inherent existence is the ultimate nature of all phenomena. This specific type of wisdom is the sole means to eliminate our ignorance and other disturbing states. It is also the most powerful tool for purifying negative karmic imprints. In addition, it enables us to benefit others effectively, for we can then teach them how to gain this wisdom themselves. This is also the first key to liberation and enlightenment. In order to be able to obtain this type of wisdom, we must invest all our efforts in cultivating Buddhist laws and practicing Buddhist

meditation. Conventional intelligence knowing, logic, science, arts, and so forth. This type of wisdom is from birth; however, the person who possesses this type of wisdom is believed that in previous lives, he or she had already cultivated or practiced so many good deeds.

Fundamental wisdom which is inherent in every man and which can manifest itself only after the veil of ignorance, which screens it, has been transformed by means of self-cultivation as taught by the Buddha. According to the Buddha, wisdom is extremely important for it can be commensurate with enlightenment itself. It is wisdom that finally opens the door to freedom, and wisdom that removes ignorance, the fundamental cause of suffering. It is said that while one may sever the branches of a tree and even cut down its trunk, but if the root is not removed, the tree will grow again. Similarly, although one may remove attachment by means of renunciation, and aversion by means of love and compassion, as long as ignorance is not removed by means of wisdom, attachment and aversion will sooner or later arise again. As for the Buddha, immediately after witnessing the unhappy incident involving the worm and the bird at the plowing ceremony, the prince sat under a nearby rose-apple tree and began to contemplate. This is a very early experience of meditation of the Buddha. Later, when he renounced the world and went forth to seek the ultimate truth, one of the first disciplines he developed was that of meditation. Thus, the Buddha himself always stressed that meditation is the only way to help us to achieve wisdom.

The resulting wisdom, or training in wisdom. Even though wisdom involves cause and effect. Those who cultivated and planted good roots in their past lives would have a better wisdom. However, in this very life, if you want to get rid of greed, anger, and ignorance, you have no choice but cultivating discipline and samadhi so that you can obtain wisdom paramita. With wisdom paramita, you can destroy these thieves and terminate all afflictions. Wisdom is one of the three studies in Buddhism. The other two are precepts and meditation. According to Bhikkhu Piyadassi Mahathera in *The Spectrum of Buddhism*, high concentration is the means to the acquisition of wisdom or insight. Wisdom consists of right understanding and right thought, the first two factors of the path. This is called the training in wisdom or panna-sikkha. Wisdom helps us get rid of the clouded view of things, and to see life as it really is, that is to see life and things pertaining to life as arising and passing.

In the *Dharmapada Sutra*, the Buddha taught: “Long is the night to the wakeful; long is the road to him who is tired; long is samsara to the foolish who do not know true Law (Dharmapada 60). If a traveler does not meet a companion who is better or at least equal, let him firmly pursue his solitary career, rather than being in fellowship with the foolish (Dharmapada 61).

These are my sons; this is my wealth; with such thought a fool is tormented. Verily, he is not even the owner of himself. Whence sons? Whence wealth? (Dharmapada 62). A foolish man who knows that he is a fool, for that very reason a wise man; the fool who think himself wise, he is indeed a real fool (Dharmapada 63). If a fool associates with a wise man even all his life, he will understand the Dharma as little as a spoon tastes the flavour of soup (Dharmapada 64). An intelligent person associates with a wise man, even for a moment, he will quickly understand the Dharma, as the tongue tastes the flavour of soup (Dharmapada 65). The knowledge and fame that the fool gains, so far from benefiting; they destroy his bright lot and cleave his head (Dharmapada 72). Swans can only fly in the sky, man who has supernatural powers can only go through air by their psychic powers. The wise rise beyond the world when they have conquered all kinds of Mara (Dharmapada 175).”

In summary, in Buddhism, wisdom is of the highest importance; for purification comes through wisdom, through understanding; and wisdom in Buddhism is the key to enlightenment and final liberation. But the Buddha never praised mere intellect. According to him, knowledge should go hand in hand with purity of heart, with moral excellence (*vijja-caranasampanna-p*). Wisdom gained by understanding and development of the qualities of mind and heart is wisdom par excellence (*bhavanamaya panna-p*). It is saving knowledge, and not mere speculation, logic or specious reasoning. Thus, it is clear that Buddhism is neither mere love of, nor inducing the search after wisdom, nor devotion, though they have their significance and bearing on mankind, but an encouragement of a practical application of the teaching that leads the follower to dispassion, enlightenment and final deliverance. Wisdom in Buddhism is also a sole means to eliminate our ignorance and other disturbing attitudes. It is also a tool for purifying negative karmic imprints. Many people say that wisdom is gained from information or knowledge. The Buddha told us the opposite! He taught us that wisdom is already within our self-nature; it does not come from the outside. In the world, there are some very intelligent and wise people, such as scientists and philosophers, etc. However, the Buddha would not recognize their knowledge as the proper Buddhist enlightenment, because they have not severed their afflictions. They still dwell on the rights and wrongs of others, on greed, anger, ignorance and arrogance. They still harbor wandering discriminatory thoughts and attachments. In other words, their minds are not pure. Without the pure mind, no matter how high the level of realization one reaches, it is still not the proper Buddhist enlightenment. Thus, our first hindrance to enlightenment and liberation is ego, our self-attachment, our own wandering thoughts. Only the wisdom that is based on concentration has the ability to eliminate attachments and ignorance. That is to say the wisdom that arises from a pure mind, not the wisdom that is

attained from reading and studying books, for this wisdom is only worldly knowledge, not true wisdom. Thus, the Buddha said: "He who is concentrated knows and sees what really is." According to the Flower Adornment Sutra, all sentient beings possess the same wisdom and virtuous capabilities as the Buddha, but these qualities are unattainable due to wandering thoughts and attachments. Practicing Buddhism will help us rid of wandering, discriminating thoughts and attachments. Thus, we uncover our pure mind, in turn giving rise to true wisdom. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that our innate wisdom and abilities are temporarily lost due to the cloud of ignorance, attachments and wandering discriminatory thoughts, but are not truly or permanently lost. Our goal in Practicing Buddhism is to break through this cloud and achieve enlightenment.

Bodhisattvas' Two Prongs of Saving Beings: Spreading Kindness and Compassion with Wisdom: Pity and wisdom, the two characteristics of a bodhisattva seeking to attain perfect enlightenment and the salvation of all beings. Karuna or compassion means below is to save sentient beings. Jnana or wisdom means above is to seek Bodhi. Compassion is surely not a flabby state of mind. It is a strong enduring thing. When a person is in distress, it is truly compassionate man's heart that trembles. This, however, is not sadness; it is this quacking of the heart that spurs him to action and incites him to rescue the distressed. And this needs strength of mind, much tolerance and equanimity. So, it is totally wrong to come to a hurry conclusion that compassion to be an expression of feebleness, because it has the quality of tenderness. In Mahayana Buddhism, Pity is typified by Avalokitesvara and wisdom by Mahasthamaprapta. In the esoteric sects, pity is represented by the garbhadhatu or the womb treasury, while wisdom is represented by the vajradhatu or the diamond treasury. Two doors of Karuna and Jnana help practitioners with two aims: above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings. This is also one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. *The first door is the door of Compassion:* Buddha-pity, or Bodhisattva-pity, the way of pity directed to others. *The second door is the door of Wisdom:* Wisdom gate or Buddha-wisdom, or the way of enlightenment. In Buddhism, wisdom and compassion are the natural characteristics or qualities of the enlightened mind. However, if we want to develop it, we have to cultivate and practice hard. It is similar to a seed that we all know its potential to grow into a plant with the conditions that we grow it in the right soil, water, fertilize and maintain it under a temperate temperature.

2

Part Two
Essential Summaries of Bodhisattvas’
Minds-Stages & Precepts
in the Bhrama Net Sutra
(Phần Hai: Yếu Lược Về Tâm Địa & Giới Bốn
Của Chư Bồ Tát Trong Kinh Phạm Võng)

Chapter Five

An Overview of the Sutra Pitaka & The Brahmajala Sutra

I. An Overview of the Sutra Pitaka:

The Sutra Pitaka consists chiefly of instructive discourses delivered by the Buddha to both the Sangha and the laity on various occasions. A few discourses expounded by great disciples such as the Venerable Sariputra, Moggallana, and Ananda, are incorporated and are accorded as much veneration as the word of the Buddha himself, since they were approved by him. Most of the sermons were intended mainly for the benefit of Bhikkhus, and they deal with the holy life and with the exposition of the doctrine. There are several other discourses which deal with both the material and the moral progress of his lay-followers. The Sigalovada Sutra, for example, deals mainly with the duties of a layman. There are also a few interesting talks given to children. The Sutra Pitaka may be compared to books of prescriptions, since the discourses were expounded on diverse occasions to suit the temperaments of various persons. There may be seemingly contradictory statements, but they should not be misconstrued, as they were uttered by the Buddha to suit a particular purpose; for instance, to the self-same question he would maintain silence, when the inquirer was merely foolishly inquisitive, or give a detailed reply when he knew the inquirer to be an earnest seeker after the truth. The Sanskrit or Mahayana Canon divides them into five sections: 1) Dirghagama (Long Discourse), which corresponds to the Digha Nikaya in the Pali Canon; 2) Madhyamagama (Middle Length Discourses), which corresponds to the Majjhima Nikaya in the Pali Canon; 3) Samyuktagama (Connected Discourses), which corresponds to the Samyutta Nikaya in the Pali Canon; 4) Ekotarikagama (Increased-by-one Discourses), which corresponds to the Anguttara Nikaya in the Pali Canon. 5) The Sanskrit Canon has a so-called “Ksudrakagama” (Lesser Discourses), however, it does not correspond to the “Khuddaka Nikaya” in the Pali Canon.

Sutras mean to sew or to thread or to string together. Strung together as a garland of flowers. Sutras also mean a thread or a string. “Sutra” is a Sanskrit term for “discourses” or “scripture.” Literally, sutra means a thread on which jewels are strung. Words spoken by the Buddha or sermons attributed to Sakyamuni Buddha, and sometimes, less commonly, to one of his immediate disciples. Sutra-pitaka is one of the three in the Buddhist Tripitaka. According to the Buddhism history, in the first Buddhist Council presided by Mahakashyapa, right after the death of the Buddha, based on the responses of Ananda’s to recite Buddha sutras. Usually, sutras begin with the only formula, “Thus have I heard at one time,” which according to tradition was adopted at the “First Buddhist Council” at Rajagrhā. The sutras are Buddhist scriptures, that is, the purported dialogues and sermons of Sakyamuni Buddha. There are said to be over ten thousand, only a fraction of which have been translated into English. The so-called Hinayana were originally recorded in Pali, the Mahayana in Sanskrit. Most Buddhist sects are founded upon one particular sutra from which they derive their authority. The T’ien-T’ai and Lotus Sects from the Lotus sutra; the Hua-yen from the Avatamsaka Sutra. The Zen sects, however, is associated with no sutra, and this gives Zen masters freedom to use the scriptures as and when they see fit or to ignore them entirely. There is a familiar statement that Zen is a special transmission outside the scriptures, with no dependence upon words and letters. This only means that for the Zen sect, truth must be directly grasped and not taken on the authority of any thing, even the sutras. Nowadays, there are two kinds of Buddhist canon: Mahayana sutras and Theravada sutras. Mahayana sutras totally differ in terms of contents and form from those of the Pali Canon. It is said that Mahayana did not appear in India until around first century B.C. (several centuries after the death of the Buddha). The temporal discrepancy is explained by their adherents as being due to their being hidden from the masses and only passed on to advanced practitioners. The Theravada school rejects the Mahayana sutras as foreign sutras that could not have been spoken by Sakyamuni Buddha, but adherents of Mahayana assert that their texts are advanced teachings, while the sutras of the Pali Canon were spoken for followers of lesser capacities. Characteristics of explanation and translation of sutras. *The first characteristics are Five layers of*

mystic meaning when one explicates the text of a sutra: i) To explain the title of the sutra. ii) To discern the essence of the sutra. iii) To explain the guiding principle of the sutra. iv) To explain the sutra's powerful function. v) To explain forms of the Buddhist teaching in the sutra. *The second characteristics are Five kinds of terms that cannot be translated:* Five kinds of terms which Hsuan-Tsang did not translate but transliterated. i) The Esoteric: Cannot be translated such as Dharani mantras. ii) Those with several meanings. iii) Those without equivalent in China. iv) Old-established terms. v) Those which would be less impressive when translated.

II. Summaries of the Brahmajala Sutra:

According to Buddhist history, Sakyamuni Buddha, after first appearing in the Lotus Treasury World, proceeded to the east and appeared in the Heavenly King's palace to teach the "Demon Transforming Sutra." He then descended to Jambudvīpa to be born in Kapilavastu, his name being Siddhartha and his father's name Suddhodana. His mother was Queen Maya. He achieved Enlightenment at the age of thirty, after seven years of cultivation, under the name of Sakyamuni Buddha. The Buddha spoke in ten assemblies from the Diamond Seat at Bodhgaya to the palace of Maheshvara. At that time, he contemplated the wonderful Jewel Net hung in Lord Brahma's palace and praised the Brahma Net Sutra for the Great Assembly. He said: "The innumerable worlds in the cosmos are like the eyes of the net. Each and every world is different, its variety infinite. So too are the Dharma-Doors or methods of cultivation taught by the Buddhas. Once again, I shall preach for the Great Assembly the chapter of the Inexhaustible Precept Treasury. These are the precepts of all sentient beings, the source of the pure Self-Nature. This was the time of birth of the Bhramajala Sutra.

Brahmajala Sutra: Brahma-Net Sutra, or Indra's Net Sutra, Sutra of Net of Indra. Also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the

Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains ten rules of Mahayana for every follower. The sutra was translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva.

Brahmajala Bodhisattva-Precepts Sutra: The Brahmajala Bodhisattva-Precepts Sutra is also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains ten rules of Mahayana for every follower. The sutra was translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva. There are two main divisions of moral code.

Chapter Six

Summaries of the Text of the Brahma Net Sutra

The Buddha Speaks the Brahma Net Sutra. Translation into Chinese Kumarajiva. Translation into Vietnamese: Most Venerable Thích Trí Tịnh.

I. VAIROCANA BUDDHA:

At that time, Vairocana Buddha began speaking in general about the Mind-Ground for the benefit of the Great Assembly. What he said represents but an infinitesimal part, the tip of a hair, of His innumerable teachings, as numerous as the grains of sand in the river Ganges. He concluded: “The Mind-Ground has been explained , is being explained and will be explained by all the Buddhas past, present, and future. It is also the Dharma Door or cultivation method (method of development) that all the Bodhisattvas of the past, present, and future have studied, are studying and will study. I have cultivated this Mind-Ground for hundreds of eons. My name is Vairocana. I request all Buddhas to transmit my words to all sentient beings, so as to open this path of cultivation to all.”

At that time, from his Lion’s Throne in the Lotus Treasury World, Vairocana Buddha emitted rays of light. A voice among the rays is heard telling the Buddha seated on thousands of lotus petals, “You should practice and uphold the Mind Ground Dharma Door and transmit it to the innumerable Sakyamuni Buddhas, one after another, as well as to all sentient beings. Everyone should uphold, read, recite, and singlemindedly put its teachings into practice.

After receiving the Dharma-door of the Mind Ground, the Buddhas seated atop the thousands of lotus flowers along with the innumerable Sakyamuni Buddhas all arose from their Lion Seats, their bodies emitting innumerable rays of light. In each of these rays appeared innumerable Buddhas who simultaneously made offerings of green, yellow, red and white celestial flowers to Vairocana Buddha. They then slowly took their leave.

The Buddhas then disappeared from the Lotus Treasury World, entered the Essence-Nature Empty Space Floral Brilliance Samadhi and returned to their former places under the Bodhi-tree in this world of Jambudvipa. They then arose from their samadhi, sat on their Diamond Throne in Jambudvipa and the Heaven of the Four Kings, and preached the Dharma of the “Ten Oceans of Worlds.”

Thereupon, they ascended to Lord Sakya’s palace and expounded the Ten Dwelling; proceeded to the Suyama Heaven and taught the Ten Practices; proceeded further to the Fourth Heaven and taught the Ten Dedications; proceeded further to the Transformation of Bliss Heaven and taught the Ten Dhyana Samadhi; proceeded further to the Heaven of Comfort From Others’ Emanations and taught the Ten Grounds; proceeded further to the First Dhyana Heaven and taught the Ten Vajra Stages; proceeded further to the Second Dhyana Heaven and taught the Ten Patiences and proceeded further to the Third Dhyana Heaven and taught the Ten Vows. Finally, in the Fourth Dhyana Heaven, at Lord Mahesvara's Palace, they taught the Mind Ground Dharma-Door chapter, which Vairocana Buddha, in eons past, expounded in the Lotus Treasury World or the Cosmos.

All the other innumerable transformation Sakyamuni Buddhas did like these in their respective worlds.

II. SAKYAMUNI BUDDHA:

At that time, Sakyamuni Buddha, after first appearing in the Lotus Treasury World, proceeded to the east and appeared in the Heavenly King’s palace to teach the “Demon Transforming Sutra.” He then descended to Jambudvipa to be born in Kapilavastu, his name being Siddhartha and his father’s name Suddhodana. His mother was Queen Maya. He achieved Enlightenment at the age of thirty, after seven years of cultivation, under the name of Sakyamuni Buddha.

The Buddha spoke in ten assemblies from the Diamond Seat at Bodhgaya to the palace of Maheshvara.

At that time, he contemplated the wonderful Jewel Net hung in Lord Brahma’s palace and praised the Brahma Net Sutra for the Great Assembly. He said: “The innumerable worlds in the cosmos are like the eyes of the net. Each and every world is different, its variety infinite. So too are the Dharma-Doors or methods of cultivation taught by the Buddhas.

I have come to this world eight thousand times. Based in this saha World, seated upon the Jewel Diamond Seat in Bodhgaya and all the way up to the palace of Lord Maheshvara, I have spoken in general about the Mind Ground Dharma Door for the benefit of the great multitude.

Thereafter, I descended from Lord Maheshvara's palace to Jambudvipa, the Human World. I have preached the Diamond Illuminated Jeweled Precepts or the Bodhisattva precepts from beneath the Bodhitree for the sake of all sentient beings on earth, however, dull and ignorant they may be. These precepts were customarily recited by Vairocana Buddha when he first developed the Bidhi Mind in the causal stages. They are precisely the original source of all Buddhas and all Bodhisattvas as well as the seed of the Buddha Nature.

All sentient beings possess Buddha-Nature. All with consciousness, form and mind are encompassed by the precepts of the Buddha Nature. Sentient beings possess the correct cause of the Buddha Nature and therefore, they will assuredly attain the ever-present Dharma Body.

For this reason, the ten Pratimoksa or Bodhisattva precepts came into being in this world. These precepts belong to the True Dharma. They are received and upheld in utmost reverence by all sentient beings of the Three Periods of Time, past, present and future.

Once again, I shall preach for the Great Assembly the chapter of the Inexhaustible Precept Treasury. These are the precepts of all sentient beings, the source of the pure Self-Nature.

Now, I, Vairocana Buddha
Am sitting atop a lotus pedestal;
On a thousand flowers surrounding me
Are a thousand Sakyamuni Buddhas.

Each flower supports a hundred million worlds;
In each world a Sakyamuni Buddha appears.
All are seated beneath a Bodhi-tree
All simultaneously attain Buddhahood.

All these innumerable Buddhas
Have Vairocana as their original body.
These countless Sakyamuni Buddhas
All bring followers along, as numerous
as motes of dust.
They all proceed to my lotus pedestal
To listen to the Buddha's precepts.

I now preach the Dharma, this exquisite nectar.
 Afterward, the countless Buddhas,
 return to their respective worlds
 And, under a Bodhi-tree, proclaim
 these major and minor precepts
 Of Vairocana, the Original Buddha.

The precepts are like the radiant sun and moon,
 Like a shining necklace of gems,
 Bodhisattvas as numerous as motes of dust
 Uphold them and attain Buddhahood.

These precepts are recited by Vairocana,
 These precepts I recite as well.
 You novice Bodhisattvas
 Should reverently accept and uphold them.

And once you have done so,
 Transmit and teach them to sentient beings.
 Now listen attentively as I recite
 The Bodhisattva Pratimoksa, the
 source of all precepts in the Buddha Dharma.

All of you in the Great Assembly
 should firmly believe
 That you are the Buddhas of the future
 While I am a Buddha already accomplished.
 If you should have such faith at all times,
 Then this precept code is fulfilled.

All beings with resolve
 Should accept and uphold the Buddha's precepts.
 Sentient beings on receiving them
 Join forthwith the ranks of Buddhas.
 They are in essence equal to the Buddhas.
 They are the true offspring of the Buddhas.

Therefore, great Assembly,
 Listen with utmost reverence
 As I proclaim the Bodhisattva Moral Code.

III. THE BUDDHA RECITING THE BODHISATTVA PRECEPTS:

At that time, when Sakyamuni Buddha first attained Supreme Enlightenment under the Bodhi tree, he explained the Bodhisattva precepts. The Buddha taught filial piety towards one parents, Elder Masters and the Triple Jewel. Filial piety and obedience, he said, are the Ultimate Path to Buddhahood. Filial piety is called the precepts, thus, it means restraint and cessation.

The Buddha then emitted limitless lights from his mouth. Thereupon, the whole Great Assembly, consisting of innumerable Bodhisattvas, the gods of the eighteen Brahma Heavens, the gods of the six Desire Heavens, and the rulers of the sixteen great kingdoms all joined their palms and listened singlemindedly to the Buddha recite the Mahayana precepts.

The Buddha then said to the Bodhisattvas: “Twice a month I recite the precepts observed by all Buddhas. All Bodhisattvas, from those who have just developed the Bodhi Mind to the Bodhisattvas of the Ten Dwellings, the Ten Practices, the Ten Dedications and the Ten Grounds also recite them. Therefore, this precept-light shines forth from my mouth. It does not arise without a cause. This light is neither blue, yellow, red, white nor black. It is neither form nor thought. It is neither existent nor nonexistent, neither cause nor effect. This precepts-light is precisely the original source of all Buddhas and all members of this Great Assembly. Therefore, all you disciples of the Buddha should receive and observe, read, recite and study these precepts with utmost attention.

Disciples of the Buddha listen attentively! Whoever can understand and accept a Dharma Master’s words of transmission can receive the Bodhisattva precepts and be called foremost in purity. This is true whether that person is a king; a prince; an official; a monk; a nun or a god of the eighteen Brahma Heavens; a god of the six Desire Heavens, or a human, a eunuch, a libertine, a prostitute, a slave or a member of the Eight Divisions of Divinities, a Vajra spirit, an animal or even a transformation-being.

IV. THE TEN MAJOR PRECEPTS:

Bodhisattvas’ Ten Major Precepts: The Buddha said to his disciples, “As for the ten major Bodhisattva precepts, if one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice) them, he is not a bodhisattva, nor is he a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart.” First, Major Precept on Killing: A

disciple of the Buddha shall not himself kill, encourage others to kill, kill by expedient means, praise killing, rejoice at witnessing killing, or kill through incantation or deviant mantras. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of killing, and shall not intentionally kill any living creature. As a Buddha's disciple, he ought to nurture a mind of compassion and filial piety, always devising expedient means to rescue and protect all beings. If instead, he fails to restrain himself and kills sentient beings without mercy, he commits a Parajika offense.

Second, Major Precept on Stealing: A disciple of the Buddha must not himself steal or encourage others to steal, steal by expedient means, steal by means of incantation or deviant mantras. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of stealing. No valuables or possessions, even those belonging to ghosts and spirits or thieves and robbers, be they as small as a needle or a blade of grass, may be stolen. As a Buddha's disciples, he ought to have a mind of mercy, compassion, and filial piety, always helping other people to earn merits and achieve happiness. If instead, he steals the possessions of others, he commits a Parajika offense.

Third, Major Precept on Sexual Misconduct (not to lust): A disciple of the Buddha must not engage in licentious acts or encourage others to do so. He (a monk) should not have sexual relations with any female; be she a human, animal, deity or spirit, nor create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of such misconduct. Indeed, he must not engage in improper sexual misconduct with anyone. A Buddha's disciple ought to have a mind of filial piety, rescuing all sentient beings and instructing them in the Dharma of purity and chastity. Sexual misconduct is also one of the five basic precepts for householders. If instead, he lacks compassion and encourages others to engage in sexual relations promiscuously, including with animals and even their mothers, daughters, sisters, or other close relatives, he commits a Parajika offense.

Fourth, Major Precept on Lying and False Speech: A disciple of the Buddha must not himself use false words and speech, or encourage others to lie or lie by expedient means. He should not involve himself in the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of lying, saying that he has seen what he has not seen or vice-versa, or lying implicitly through physical or mental means. As a Buddha's disciple, he ought to maintain Right Speech and Right Views always, and lead all others to maintain them as well. If instead, he causes wrong speech, wrong views or evil karma in others, he commits a Parajika offense.

Fifth, Major Precept on Drinking or Selling Alcohol Beverages: A disciple of the Buddha must not drink or trade in alcohol beverages or encourage others to do so. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods or karma of drinking or selling any intoxicant whatsoever, for intoxicants are the causes and conditions of all kinds of offenses. As a Buddha's disciple, he ought to help all sentient beings achieve clear wisdom.

If instead, he causes them to have upside-down, topsy-turvy thinking, he commits a Parajika offense. Sixth, Major Precept on Broadcasting the Faults of the Assembly: Also called not to discuss the faults of other Buddhists. A disciple of the Buddha must not himself broadcast the misdeeds or infractions of Bodhisattva-clerics or Bodhisattva-laypersons, or of ordinary monks and nuns, nor encourage others to do so. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of discussing the offenses of the Assembly. As a Buddha's disciple, whenever he hears evil persons, externalists or followers of the Two Vehicles speak of practices contrary to the Dharma or contrary to the precepts within the Buddhist community, he should instruct them with a compassionate mind and lead them to develop wholesome faith in the Mahayana. If instead, he discusses the faults and misdeeds that occur within the assembly, he commits a Parajika offense. Seventh, Major Precept on Praising Oneself and Disparaging Others: Also called not to praise oneself and disparage others. A disciple of the Buddha shall not praise himself and speak ill of others, or encourage others to do so. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of praising himself and disparaging others. As a disciple of the Buddha, he should be willing to stand in for all sentient beings and endure humiliation and slander, accepting blame and letting sentient beings have all the glory. He should never display his own virtues and conceal the good points of others, thus causing them suffer slander, he commits a Parajika offense. Eighth, Major Precept on Stinginess and Abuse of others: A disciple of the Buddha must not be stingy or encourage others to be stingy. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of stinginess. As a Bodhisattva, whenever a destitute person comes for help, he should try his best to help, not to refuse. Besides, he must try to help others understand and practice Dharma. If instead, out of anger and resentment, he denies all assistance, refusing to help even a penny, a needle, a blade of grass, even a single sentence or verse or a phrase of Dharma, but instead scolds and abuses that person, he commits a Parajika offense. Ninth, Major Precept on Anger and Resentment: Also called not to get angry. A disciple of the Buddha shall not harbor anger or encourage others to be angry. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of anger. In the contrary, As a disciple of the Buddha, he ought to be compassionate and filial, helping all sentient beings, or even transformation beings (deities and spirits) be happy at all times. If instead, he insults and abuses sentient beings, or even transformation beings such as deities and spirits, with harsh words, hitting them with his fists or feet, or attacking them with a knife or club, or harbors grudges even when the victim confesses his mistakes and humbly seeks forgiveness in a soft, conciliatory voice, the disciple commits a Parajika offense. Tenth, Major Precept on Slandering the Triple Jewel: Also called not to insult the Three

Treasures. A Buddha's disciple shall not himself speak ill of the Triple Jewel or encourage others to do so. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of slandering. As a devoted Buddhist, when hearing a single word of slander against the Triple Jewel from externalists or evil beings, he experiences a pain similar to that of hundreds of thousands of spears piercing his heart. How then could he possibly slander the Triple Jewel himself? As a disciple of the Buddha, we are not only always revere the Triple Jewel ourselves, but we also help others understand and revere the Triple Jewel. On the contrary, if a disciple lacks faith and filial piety towards the Triple Jewel, and even assists evil persons or those of wrong views to slander the Triple Jewel, he commits a Parajika offense.

V. BUDDHA CONCLUDES ON THE TEN MAJOR PRECEPTS:

As a disciple of the Buddha, you should study these ten parajika or major precepts and not break any one of them in even the slightest way, much less break all of them! Anyone guilty of doing so cannot develop the Bodhi Mind in his current life and will lose whatever high position he may have attained, be it that of an emperor, Wheel-Turning King, Bhiksu, Bhiksuni, as well as whatever level of Bodhisattvahood he may have reached, whether the Ten Dwellings, the Ten Practices, the Ten Dedications, the Ten Grounds, and all the fruits of the eternal Buddha Nature, he will lose all of those levels of attainment and descend into the Three Evil Realms, unable to hear the words "parents" or "Triple Jewel" for eons! Therefore, Buddha's disciples should avoid breaking any one of these major precepts. All of you Bodhisattvas should study and observe the Ten Precepts, which have been observed, are being observed, and will be observed by all Bodhisattvas.

VI. THE FORTY-EIGHT SECONDARY PRECEPTS:

(For more information, please see Chapter 17 B-II).

VII. CONCLUSION:

The Buddha said, "All of you disciples! These are the Forty-eight Secondary Precepts that you should observe. Bodhisattvas of the past have recited them, those of the future will recite them, those of the present are now reciting them. Disciples of the Buddha! You should all listen! These Ten Major and Forty-eight Secondary Precepts are recited by all Buddhas of the Three Periods of Time, past, present, and future. I now recite them as well.

VIII. PENETRATING & FLOWING:

The Buddha continued to teach: Disciples of the Buddha listen attentively! Whoever can understand and accept a Dharma Master's words of transmission can

receive the Bodhisattva precepts and be called foremost in purity. This is true whether that person is a king; a prince; an official; a monk; a nun or good men and believing (good) women, should receive, read, recite, lecture, record in order to penetrate and flow this sutra forever. Therefore, they will meet Buddhas and be handed down by the Buddhas. They will forever escape the three evil paths (1) and eight adversities (2). They will always be able to be reborn in the human or devine realms.

IX. THE PRAJNA PARAMITA HEART SUTRA:

Bodhisattva Avalokiteshvara was practicing the profound Prajna Paramita, he illuminated the five skandhas and saw that they are all empty, and he crossed beyond all sufferings and difficulties. Shariputra! form does not differ from emptiness, emptiness does not differ from form; form itself is emptiness, emptiness itself is form; so too are feeling, cognition, formation and consciousness. Shariputra! All Dharmas are empty of characteristics. They are not produced, not destroyed, not defiled, not pure, and they neither increase nor diminish. Therefore, in emptiness there is no form, feeling, cognition, or consciousness; no eyes, ears, nose, tongue, body, or mind; no sights, sounds, smells, tastes, objects of touch, or Dharmas; no field of the eyes up to and including no field of mind consciousness and no ignorance or ending of ignorance, up to and ending no old age and death or ending of old age and death. There is no suffering, no accumulating, no extinction, and no way, and no understanding and no attaining. Because nothing is attained, the Bodhisattva through reliance on Prajna Paramita is unimpeded in his mind. Because there is no impediment, he is not afraid and he leaves distorted dream-thinking far behind. Ultimately Nirvana! All Buddhas of three periods of time attain anuttarasamyak-sambodhi through reliance on the Prajna Paramita. Therefore, know that Prajan Paramita is a great spiritual mantra, a great bright mantra, a supreme mantra, an unequalled mantra. It can remove all suffering: It is genuine and not false. That is why the mantra of Prajna Paramita was spoken. Recite it like this: Gate Gate Paragate Parasamagate Bodhi Svaha! (3 times).

Maha Prajan Paramita (3 times).

X. DEDICATIONS & THREE REFUGES:

X-A. DEDICATIONS

Listening to these precepts is an act of supreme virtues;
I dedicate these countless supreme virtues and merits to
all sentient beings in the Dharma Realm,
Vowing that they may swiftly achieve rebirth
In the land of the Buddha of Limitless Light.
I vow to eradicate all obstructions and afflictions,
I vow to attain Supreme Enlightenment,
I vow to eradicate all delusive karma,
Thus, will I always follow the Bodhisattva Path.
I vow to be reborn in the Western Pure Land,

The Nine Lotus Grades will be my parents;
 When the blossoms open, I will see Amitabha Buddha
 And awaken to the truth of Non-Birth,
 Non-retrogressing Bodhisattvas will be my friends.
 I dedicate these merits and virtues
 To everyone everywhere
 So that all sentient beings and I
 Achieve Buddhahood together.

X-B. THREE REFUGES:

I take refuge in the Buddha, vowing that sentient beings may understand the Great Way and develop the Supreme Mind! I take refuge in the Dharma, vowing that sentient beings may penetrate all the sutras with wisdom as profound as the oceans! I take refuge in the Sangha, vowing that sentient beings be in harmony with the Great Assembly, free of all obstructions!

Notes:

- (1) ***The Three Lower Gatis:*** Three evil paths include hells, hungry ghosts, and animals. Also called three lower gatis. *First, the realm of hells*, the Sanscrit term is “Naraka-gati”. This is the state of being miserable of being in hells. This is the lowest and most miserable condition of existence. Sentient being (alaya-consciousness) is condemned to stay in Hell due to his worse karma. In the hellish path, the sufferings there are so great that no words can describe them. In Buddhism, Naraka-gati symbolizes ignorance, greed and aggression. Depraved men or “hellish beings” who are in the lowest stage. *Second, the state of hungry ghosts*, the Sanscrit term is “Preta-gati”. This realm of starved ghosts where greedy, selfish and deceitful souls are reborn. In the path of hungry ghosts, beings have ugly, smelly bodies, with bellies as big as drums and throats as small as needles, while flames shoot out of their mouths. They are subject to hunger and thirst for incalculable eons. Hungry ghosts symbolize greed, departed beings, otherwise called “hungry spirits.” Besides, hungry ghosta also include “asura” or fighting spirits, though partially heavenly, they are placed in the lower realm. *Third, animality*, or the state of animals, the Sanscrit term is Tiragyoni. The animals’ realm reserved for those souls who are dull-witted, depraved, or have committed fornication. The path of animals, such as buffaloes, cattle, donkeys and horses, is subject to heavy toil. Other domestic animals, such as goats, pigs, chicken and ducks, are subject to be killed to make food for human beings. Still other animals suffer from stupidity, living in filth, and killing one another for food. These beings symbolize ignorance or innocent in nature, including the whole animal kingdom.
- (2) ***Eight Adversities:*** The eight conditions under which it is difficult to meet Buddhas and Bodhisattvas or hear the Dharma: rebirth in the hells, rebirth as a hungry ghosts, rebirth as an animal, rebirth in Uttarakuru (where life is so pleasant that people have no motivation to practice the Dharma), rebirth in any long-life heaven (where one is not motivated to seek the Dharma), rebirth with impaired faculties, rebirth as an intelligent, educated person in the mundane sense, rebirth in the intermediate period between a Buddha and his successor.

Chapter Seven

Summaries of Mind-Grounds of Practitioners Who Cultivate in Bodhisattvas' Spirit

I. An Overview of Bodhisattvas in Buddhism:

Bodhisattva is a Sanskrit term for an Enlightened Being. This is the one whose essence is bodhi whose wisdom is resulting from direct perception of Truth with the compassion awakened thereby. Enlightened being who is on the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. A Sanskrit term which means “Awakening being” or a “being of enlightenment,” or “one whose essence is wisdom,” or “a being who aspires for enlightenment.” This is the ideal of Mahayana Buddhism. The beginning of the bodhisattva’s career is marked by the dawning of the “mind of awakening” (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemma, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: “Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings.” This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. After that point the bodhisattva pursues the goal of Buddhahood by progressively cultivating the six, sometimes ten, “perfections” (Paramita): generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom. The two primary qualities in which the Bodhisattva trains are compassion and wisdom, and when the perfections are fully cultivated and compassion and wisdom developed to their highest level, the Bodhisattva becomes a Buddha. The Bodhisattva path is commonly divided into ten levels (Bhumi). The

term Bodhisattva is not, however, confined solely to Mahayana Buddhism: in Theravada, Sakyamuni Buddha is referred to as “Bodhisatta” (Bodhisattva) in the past lives described in the Jatakas, during which he is said to have gradually perfected the good qualities of a Buddha. In the Mahayana sense, however, the Bodhisattva concept is an explicit rejection of Nikaya Buddhism’s ideal religious paradigm, the Arhat. In Mahayana the Arhat is characterized as limited and selfish, concerned only with personal salvation, in contrast to the Bodhisattva, who works very hard for all sentient beings. So, the term “Bodhisattva” in general, means a “Bodhi being”. It denotes a being who is destined to obtain fullest Enlightenment or Buddhahood. According to the Digha Nikaya, literally, a “Bodhisattva” means one who is an intellectual, or one who is resolved or maintained only to the paths that lead to enlightenment. Several centuries after the Buddha’s parinirvana, Bodhisattva is one of the most important ideas of Mahayana Buddhists. However, the concept was not a sole creation of the Mahayana. The term “Bodhisattva” had been mentioned in the Pali Canon and it stems from the original Pali Buddhism which is used more or less exclusively to designate Sakyamuni Buddha prior to His Enlightenment. According to Sarvastivada school, “Bodhisattva” is defined as a person who is certain to become a Buddha. He is a person who is born of wisdom and protected and served by the wise. According to the Astasahasrika Prajnaparamita, nothing real is meant by the word “Bodhisattva,” because a Bodhisattva trains himself in non-attachment to all dharmas. For the Bodhisattva, the great being awakes in non-attachment to full enlightenment in the sense that he understands all the dharmas, because he has enlightenment as his aim, an enlightened being. In short, a Bodhisattva is an enlightener of sentient beings. He usually vows to take the enlightenment that he has been certified as having attained and the wisdom that he has uncovered to enlighten all other sentient beings. A Bodhisattva’s job is not easy at all. Though his appearance is not rare as that of a Buddha, but it is extremely difficult for a Bodhisattva to appear, and it is also extremely difficult for ordinary people to encounter a real Bodhisattva. A Bodhisattva is a Mahasattva as defined in Sanscrit language. ‘Maha’ means ‘great’ and ‘sattva’ means either ‘being’ or ‘courage’. Nagarjuna gives a number of reasons why Bodhisattvas are called

‘great beings’. It is because they achieve a great work, stand at the head of a great many beings, activate great friendliness and great compassion, save a great number of beings. The Tibetans translate Mahasattvas as ‘great spiritual hero’ and their aspirations are truly on a heroic scale. They desire to discipline all beings everywhere, to serve and honor all the Buddhas everywhere. They want to retain firmly in their minds all the teachings of the Buddhas, to have a detailed knowledge of all the Buddha-fields to comprehend all the assemblies which anywhere gather around a Buddha, to plunge into the thoughts of all beings, to remove their defilements and to fathom their potentialities. In other words, Mahasattva is like Bodhisattva who will be able to eliminate all his bad karmas and sufferings and will show the emancipation way to all beings with all skills by his compassion. A Bodhisattva is the one who benefits himself to help others. A great creature, having a great or noble essence, or being. Mahasattva is a perfect bodhisattva, greater than any other being except a Buddha. Also great being is one with great compassion and energy, who brings salvation to all living beings. In the beginning of the Astasahasrika Prajna paramita, the Buddha explained the meaning of ‘Mahasattva’ (great being) when Subhuti asked about it. The Buddha says that a Bodhisattva is called ‘a great being’ in the sense that he will demonstrate Dharma so that the great errors should be forsaken, such erroneous views as the assumption of a self, a being, a living soul, a person, of becoming, of not becoming, of annihilation, of eternity, of individuality, etc. According to the Saddharmapundarika Sutra, Mahasattvas have good qualities and method of practice paramita and under many hundred of thousands of Buddhas had planted the roots of goodness. In the Theravada Buddhism, a Bodhisattva is a person in the school of the elders who is desirous of acquiring the characteristics of a perfect being, the enlightened one. It appears as such in the Pali Nikayas. The accomplishment of such a state makes him content. But the ideal of Mahayana induces him to greater effort based on dynamic activity to help other beings attain ultimate bliss; before that he does not lay ore to save beings from the state of suffering. Not satisfied with his own mitigation of desire some actions that make him subjected to malice and all kind of craving, he strives up on helping all other beings to overcome their afflictions. While the Buddha reminded Mahamati in

the Lankavatara Sutra as follows: “Oh Mahamati, the distinction between the Bodhisattva and the Two Vehicles is emphasized, as the latter are unable to go up further than the sixth stage where they enter into Nirvana. At the seventh stage, the Bodhisattva goes through an altogether new spiritual experience known as anabhogacarya, which may be rendered “a purposeless life.” But, supported by the majestic power of the Buddhas, which enters into the great vows first made by the Bodhisattva as he started in his career, the latter now devises various methods of salvation for the sake of his ignorant and confused fellow-beings. But from the absolute point of view of the ultimate truth in the Lankavatara Sutra, attained by the Bodhisattva, there is no such graded course of spirituality in his life; for here is really no gradation (krama), no continuous ascension (kramanusandhi), but the truth (dharma) alone which is imageless (nirabhasa), and detached altogether from discrimination. According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, the Buddha told Maitreya, “You should know that there are two categories of Bodhisattvas: those who prefer proud words and a racy style, and those who are not afraid (of digging out) the profound meanings which they can penetrate. Fondness of proud words and a racy style denotes the superficiality of a newly initiated Bodhisattva; but he who, after hearing about the freedom from infection and bondage as taught in profound sutras, is not afraid of their deep meanings which he strives to master, thereby developing a pure mind to receive, keep, read, recite and practise (the Dharma) as preached is a Bodhisattva who has trained for a long time. Maitreya, there are two classes of newly initiated Bodhisattvas who cannot understand very deep Dharmas: those who have not heard about profound sutras and who, giving way to fear and suspicion, cannot keep them but indulge in slandering them, saying: ‘I have never heard about them; where do they come from?’, and those who refuse to call on, respect and make offerings to the preachers of profound sutras or who find fault with the latter; these are two classes of newly initiated Bodhisattvas who cannot control their minds when hearing the deep Dharma, thereby harming themselves. Maitreya, further, there are two categories of Bodhisattvas who harm themselves and fail to realize the patient endurance of the uncreate in spite of their belief and understanding of the deep Dharma: they are (firstly) those who belittle newly initiated Bodhisattva and do not teach and guide

them; and (secondly) those who, despite their faith in the deep Dharma, still give rise to discrimination between form and formlessness.” After hearing the Buddha expound the Dharma, Maitreya said: “World Honoured One, I have not heard all this before. As you have said, I shall keep from these evils and uphold the Dharma of supreme enlightenment which the Tathagata has collected during countless aeons. In future, if there are virtuous men and women who seek for Mahayana, I shall see to it that this sutra will be placed in their hands, and shall use transcendental power to make them remember it so that they can receive, keep, read, recite and proclaim it widely.

II. Summaries of Mind-Grounds of Practitioners Who Cultivate In Bodhisattvas' Spirit:

An Overview of Bodhisattvas' Minds: Bodhisattva is one whose mind is bodhi mind and whose wisdom is resulting from direct realization of Truth. Enlightened being is also who is on the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. The Bodhisattva's mind or the altruistic mind of enlightenment, or a mind which wishes to achieve attainment of enlightenment for self, spontaneously achieve enlightenment for all other sentient beings. Bodhi mind is the gateway to Enlightenment and attainment of Buddha. An intrinsic wisdom or the inherently enlightened heart-mind, or the aspiration toward perfect enlightenment. “Mind” is another name for Alaya-vijnana. Unlike the material body, immaterial mind is invisible. We are aware of our thoughts and feelings and so forth by direct sensation, and we infer their existence in others by analogy. The mind is the root of all dharmas. In Contemplation of the Mind Sutra, the Buddha taught: “All my tenets are based on the mind that is the source of all dharmas.” The mind has brought about the Buddhas, the Heaven, or the Hell. It is the main driving force that makes us happy or sorrowful, cheerful or sad, liberated or doomed. A Japanese term “Kokoro” for heart, mind, soul and spirit. Ancient people believed that ‘kokoro’ is in the chest area. In Zen, it means either the mind of a person in the sense of all his powers of consciousness, mind, heart and spirit, or else absolutely reality, the mind beyond the distinction between mind and matter. It is for the sake of giving practitioners an easier understanding of Mind, Buddhist teachers usually divide the mind into aspects or layers, but to Zen, Mind is one great Whole, without parts or divisions. The manifesting, illuminating, and nonsubstantial

characteristics of Mind exist simultaneously and constantly, inseparable and indivisible in their totality. In Buddhism, Bodhisattvas' mind is the altruistic mind of enlightenment, or a mind which wishes to achieve attainment of enlightenment for self, spontaneously achieve enlightenment for all other sentient beings. Bodhi mind is the gateway to Enlightenment and attainment of Buddha. An intrinsic wisdom or the inherently enlightened heart-mind, or the aspiration toward perfect enlightenment. According to the Lotus Sutra, the Buddha gave eight advices to all Bodhisattvas as follows: “*First*, a Bodhisattva does not harbor an envious or deceitful mind. *Second*, he does not slight or abuse other learners of the Buddha-way even if they are beginners, nor does he seek out their excesses and shortcomings. *Third*, if there are people who seek the Bodhisattva-way, he does not distress them, causing them to feel doubt and regret, nor does he say discouraging things to them. *Fourth*, he should not indulge in discussions about the laws or engage in dispute but should devote himself to cultivation of the practice to save all living beings. *Fifth*, he should think of saving all living beings from the sufferings through his great compassion. *Sixth*, he should think of the Buddhas as benevolent fathers. *Seventh*, he should always think of the Bodhisattvas as his great teachers. *Eighth*, he should preach the Law equally to all living beings.”

Summaries of Mind-Grounds of Practitioners Who Cultivate In Bodhisattvas' Spirit: “Mind” is another name for Alaya-vijnana. Unlike the material body, immaterial mind is invisible. We are aware of our thoughts and feelings and so forth by direct sensation, and we infer their existence in others by analogy. The mind is the root of all dharmas. In Contemplation of the Mind Sutra, the Buddha taught: “All my tenets are based on the mind that is the source of all dharmas.” The mind has brought about the Buddhas, the Heaven, or the Hell. It is the main driving force that makes us happy or sorrowful, cheerful or sad, liberated or doomed. In Zen, it means either the mind of a person in the sense of all his powers of consciousness, mind, heart and spirit, or else absolutely reality, the mind beyond the distinction between mind and matter. It is for the sake of giving practitioners an easier understanding of Mind, Buddhist teachers usually divide the mind into aspects or layers, but to Zen, Mind is one great Whole, without parts or divisions. The manifesting, illuminating, and nonsubstantial characteristics of Mind exist simultaneously and constantly, inseparable and indivisible in their totality. In short, the Mind from which all things spring. ‘Mind-ground’ is another term for the mind. The mind is compared to the ground. According to the Sixth Patriarch Hui-Neng, the mind is the source from which all dharmas spring and also the place to which all dharmas return.

Chapter Eight

Summaries of Forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra

As mentioned above, a Bodhisattva is an enlightener of sentient beings. For Bodhisattvas' ideal, he or she usually vows to take the enlightenment that he has been certified as having attained and the wisdom that he has uncovered to enlighten all other sentient beings. A Bodhisattva's job is not easy at all. Though his appearance is not rare as that of a Buddha, but it is extremely difficult for a Bodhisattva to appear, and it is also extremely difficult for ordinary people to encounter a real Bodhisattva. Devout Buddhists should always remember that entering the state of mind of a Nirvana as the Buddha taught does not mean to renounce the world and to enter into a temple as a monk or nun, but it means to enter into practicing well-being exercises that are linked to established daily life patterns, makes our lives more peaceful. Devout Buddhists should always remember the goal of any Buddhist cultivator is to achieve self-enlightening, that is examining with one's own intelligence, and not depending upon another; enlightening or awakening of others, then achieve the final accomplishment, to go beyond the cycle of births and deaths, that is to reach the state of mind of a Nirvana right in this very life. These are the very ideal of Bodhisattvas. In other words, the ideal path of a Bodhisattva is to benefit self and benefit others, leading to Buddhahood; and above to seek bodhi, below to transform all beings. Practitioners who cultivate the Bodhisattva's Practices will always try to find ways to fearlessly break the false and make manifest the right. Besides, practitioners must also live and cultivate forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra for these are things that lead the mind to the cutting off of all affairs and advance them to a life full of peace, mindfulness and happiness. Practitioners who live and cultivate on these forty minds on a daily basis can lead their own mind to a peaceful state where there exists no more sufferings and afflictions. On this path,

contemplation of the Sunyata contributes a great deal to the perfection of the aim of the Bodhisattva Ideal of practitioners.

As mentioned in previous chapters, the Bodhisattva follows a path of Bodhisattva Ideal which very long and extremely arduous, and spanning many lives at the end of which he attains complete Buddhahood. On this path, Living and Cultivating With Forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra contribute a great part in the attainment of the fruit of Bodhisattva. The Bodhisattva seeks supreme enlightenment not for himself alone but for all sentient beings. A Bodhisattva is a Mahayanist, whether monk or layman, above is to seek Buddhahood, below is to save sentient beings (he seeks enlightenment to enlighten others). Bodhisattva is the person who makes Living and Cultivating With Forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra their field of sacrificial saving work and of enlightenment. The main objective of Bodhisattva Ideal is salvation of all beings. Beside Living and Cultivating With Forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the inflexible resolve means the resolve to save all sentient beings, Bodhisattva Ideal always have three other characteristics: First, Bodhisattvas who hope to be reborn to help sentient beings must retain the seed of existence. According to the Vijnaptimatratasiddhi Sastra, a Bodhisttva retains the obstacle of defilement to sustain his vow to be reborn into the samsara world. However, he is reborn, fully mindful and conscious of whatever place where he chooses to be reborn. In fact, he is not contaminated by the defilements owing to the fact that he has stayed with the view of pratyasanutpada for a long time, there is the "guarding of defilements". Second, a Bodhisattva always has the "Four Immeasurable Minds" known as maitri, karuna, mudita and upeksha, which are not to be viewed in discreteness or in isolation. Maitri is the center of the others, and the remaining three are its corelation. Maitri is the basis of Karuna. It stands for love, respect and care for all lives. It is concreteness of loving kindness based on the feeling that just as our life is precious to us, so also is the life of others. Mudita is altruistic sympathetic joy. It is happiness in the happiness of all. It is a consequence of Karuna. Upeksha is the prerequisite of Karuna. It stands for compassion to all beings. It also means equanimity of mind apart from partiality. Third, on the Bodhisattva's Path, with the development

of Bodhicitta, Bodhisattvas always practice the paramitas. In other words, the Path from sentient beings to Bodhisattvas and the realization of complete fulfillment of Enlightenment, Bodhisattvas must always try to practice all the paramitas. The journey from man to Buddha still demands continuous efforts with right understanding and practice. Devout Buddhists should always remember the goal of any Buddhist cultivator is to achieve self-enlightening, that is examining with one's own intelligence, and not depending upon another; enlightening or awakening of others, then achieve the final accomplishment, to go beyond the cycle of births and deaths, that is to reach the state of mind of a Nirvana right in this very life. According to Buddhist teachings, any practitioners who want to begin the journey on the Path of the Bodhisattva Ideal, they should first be always Living and Cultivating With Forty Bodhisattvas' Minds In the Brahma-Net Sutra.

Enlightened being is one who is treading the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. Bodhisattvas' mind is the altruistic mind of enlightenment, or a mind which wishes to achieve attainment of enlightenment for self, spontaneously achieve enlightenment for all other sentient beings. Bodhi mind is the gateway to Enlightenment and attainment of Buddha. An intrinsic wisdom or the inherently enlightened heart-mind, or the aspiration toward perfect enlightenment. The mind of a cultivator must be pure. Do not long for foreknowledge of events. To have this kind of foreknowledge is, in fact, nothing but a lot of trouble, because it leads to discrimination in our thinking and prevents us from being able to concentrate. Being unable to concentrate or focus our energy on cultivation, our idle thoughts run wild, then afflictions come in droves (herds). If we do not crave this foreknowledge in the first place, then we also will not have afflictions, and we are free of impediments. According to the Heart Sutra, the Buddha taught: "Because there is no impediment, he leaves distorted dream-thinking far behind; ultimately Nirvana!" This, then, should be the mind of a cultivator. According to Brahma-Net Sutra, there are forty Bodhisattva Positions or forty minds or forty phases of developing of minds. ***Ten Initial Stages of Directional Decisions, These Minds Are Associated With the Ten Stages in Which the Bodhisattvas Have the Following Ten Decisions of Inclination or Ten Directional Decisions:*** the mind of renouncement of the world, the mind of observance of the commandments, the mind of patience or endurance, the mind of zealous progress, the mind of meditation, the mind of wisdom or perfect understanding, the mind of the will for good for oneself and others, the

mind of protection of the Triratna (Buddha, Dharma, Sangha), the mind of joy, and the highest wisdom (the mind of spiritual baptism by the Buddha). ***The Second Ten Steps in the Nourishment of Perfection Are Ten Minds Which Are Associated With the Ten Necessary Activities in Which the Bodhisattvas Have the Following Ten Kinds of Well-nourished Heart, Essential to Entry into the Cult of the Higher Patience and Endurance:*** a heart of kindness, a heart of pity, a heart of joy in progress toward salvation of others, a heart of renunciation, a heart of almsgiving, a heart of delight in telling the dharma, a heart of benefitting or aiding others to salvation, a heart of unity or amity, a heart of concentration in meditation, and a heart of wisdom. ***The Third Ten Steps Are Ten Characteristics of the “Diamond Heart” As Developed by a Bodhisattva:*** complete insight into all truth, saving of all creatures, the glorifying of all Buddha-worlds, transference of his good deeds, services of all Buddhas, realization of the truth of all Buddha-laws, manifestation of all patience and endurance, unflagging devotion to his vocation, perfection of his work, and aiding to all fulfill their vows and accomplish their spiritual ends. Ten “diamond” steps of firmness associated with ten bestowings one’s merits to another (these are associated with the ten dedications): the mind of faith, remembrance, bestowing one’s merits on others, understanding, uprightness, no-retreat, mahayana, formlessness, wisdom, and the mind of indestructibility. ***The Last Ten Steps Are “Ten Stages” of the Development of a Bodhisattva into a Buddha:*** Dry or unfertilized stage of wisdom (Unfertilized by Buddha-truth or Worldly wisdom), the embryo-stage of the nature of Buddha-truth, the stage of patient endurances, the stage of freedom from wrong views, the stage of freedom from the first six of nine delusions in practice, the stage of freedom from the remaining worldly desires, the stage of complete discrimination in regard to wrong views and thoughts or the stage of an arhat, Pratyekabuddhahood, Bodhisattvahood, and Buddhahood. ***The ten stages of Bodhisattvabhumi:*** Joyful stage or land of joy, or ground of happiness or delight; Immaculate stage or land of purity, or ground of leaving filth (land of freedom from defilement), Radiant stage or land of radiance, or ground of emitting light; Blazing stage or the blazing land, or the ground of blazing wisdom; Hard-to-conquer stage or the land extremely difficult to conquer, or the ground of invincibility, Face-to-face stage or land in view of wisdom, or the ground of manifestation; Going-far-beyond stage or the far-reaching land, or the ground of traveling far; Immovable stage or the immovable land; Good-thought stage or the land of good thoughts, or the ground of good wisdom; and Cloud of dharma stage or land of dharma clouds, or the ground of the Dharma cloud.

As mentioned above, Bodhisattvas are enlightening beings who, deferring their own full Buddhahood, dedicate themselves to helping others attain

liberation, and vow to forego complete enlightenment until they help all other beings attain enlightenment. In their self-mastery, wisdom, and compassion Bodhisattvas represent a high stage of Buddhahood, but they are not yet the supreme enlightened, or fully perfected Buddha. Bodhisattvas manifest numerous different minds to transform beings, but generally speaking, Bodhisattvas' mind is the altruistic mind of enlightenment, or a mind which wishes to achieve attainment of enlightenment for self, spontaneously achieve enlightenment for all other sentient beings. If practitioners want to follow in the footsteps of Bodhisattvas, we should try to cultivate and practice the ways of minds of Bodhisattvas.

Notes:

- (1) Six Desire Heavens or Heavens of Desires (they are still in the region of sexual desire). The six Desire Heavens are the heavens of the Desire Realm. The Desire Realm, the Form Realm and the Formless Realm are called the Three Realms. According to Buddhism, we are under *the Heaven of the Four Kings*, which is one of the six Desire Heavens. The heaven which we can see directly is the Heaven of the Four Kings, ruled by the Four Great Heavenly Kings. This Heaven is located halfway up Mount Meru. These are Heavens in which the Heavenly beings are still attached to intimate relations from low to high. Owing to the cultivation of the five precepts and ten good deeds, beings earn the blessing of being born in this Heaven. However, these are good roots which have outflows. So, it is difficult for them to end the cycle of birth and death. In the Surangama, the Buddha reminded Ananda about the six heavens, although they have transcended the physical in these six heavens, the traces of their minds still become involved. First, the heaven of the four kings (Catur-maha-rajakayika skt). The Heaven of the four Kings. It is described as half-way up Mount Sumeru. In the Surangama Sutra, book Eight, the Buddha explained to Ananda about the Heaven of the four kings as follows: "Ananda! There are many people in the world who do not seek what is eternal and who cannot renounce the kindness and love they feel for their wives, but they have no interest in deviant sexual activity and so develop a purity and produce light. When their life ends, they draw near the sun and moon and are among those born in the heaven of the four kings. *Second, Trayastrimsha, or the Trayastrimsha Heaven.* It is described as at the summit of Mount Sumeru. This Heaven is in the middle of eight heavens in its east, eight heavens in its west, eight heavens in its south, and eight heavens in its north, making thirty-two heavens surrounding it. It is said that this is the second of the desire-heavens, the heaven of Indra, on the summit of Meru. It is the Svarga of Hindu mythology, situated at the top of Meru with thirty-two deva-cities, eight on each side; a central city is Sudarsana, or Amaravati, where Indra, with 1,000 heads and eyes and four arms, lives in his palace called Vaijayanta, and revels in numberless sensual pleasures together with his wife Saci and with 119,000 concubines. There he receives the monthly reports of the four Maharajas as to the good and evil in the world." The average lifespan of gods in this heaven is 30,000,000 years. It is said that Sakyamuni Buddha has visited there for three months during the seventh year after his awakening in order to preach the Abhidharma to his mother. This is the second level heaven of six heavens of desire, also called Heaven of Thirty-Three. The palace of Trayastrimsa Heaven, one of the ancient gods of India, the god of the sky who fights the demons with his vajra, or thunderbolt. He is inferior to the Trimurti, Brahma, Visnu, and Siva, having taken the place of Varuna, or sky. Buddhism adopted him as its defender, though, like all the gods, he is considered inferior to a Buddha or any who have attained bodhi. His wife is Indrani. According to Bhikkhu Bodhi

in Abhidhamma, Tavatimsa is so named because, according to legend, a group of thirty-three noble-minded men who dedicated their lives to the welfare of others were reborn here as the presiding deity and this thirty-two assistants. The chief of this realm is Sakka, also known as Indra, who resides in the Vejayanta Palace in the realm's capital city, Sudassana. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said, "Those whose sexual love for their wives is slight, but who have not yet obtained the entire flavor of dwelling in purity, transcend the light of sun and moon at the end of their lives, and reside at the summit of the human realm. They are among those born in the Tryastrimsha Heaven." The rest four Heavens are located between Mount Sumeru and the Brahmaloкас. **Third, the heavens of Suyama.** Among them, there is a heaven called "Extreme Happy Heaven". Beings in the Suyama Heaven are extremely happy, and they sing songs from morning to night. They are happy in the six periods of the day and night, that is why people call "Suyama Heaven" the Heaven of Time Period, for every time period is joyful. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: "Those who become temporarily involved when they meet with desire but who forget about it when it is finished, and who, while in the human realm, are active less and quiet more, abide at the end of their lives in light and emptiness where the illumination of sun and moon does not reach. These beings have their own light, and they are among those born in the Suyama Heaven." **The Fourth Heaven is the Tushita Heaven.** Tushita means "Blissfully Content." Beings in this Heaven are constantly happy and satisfied. Since they know to be content, they are always happy. From morning to night, they have no cares nor worries; no afflictions nor troubles. That is why this Heaven is also called the Heaven of Contentment. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: "Those who are quiet all the time, but who are not yet able to resist when stimulated by contact, ascend at the end of their lives to a subtle and ethereal place; they will not be drawn into the lower realms. The destruction of the realms of humans and gods and the obliteration of kalpas by the three disasters will not reach them, for they are among those born in the Tushita Heaven." **The Fifth Heaven is the Transformation of Bliss Heaven** (Nirmanarati: Joy-born heaven). Beings in this Heaven can obtain happiness by transformation. When they think about clothing, clothing appears. When they think about food, food appears. Freely performing transformations, they are extremely blissful. The fifth of the six desire-heaven, 640,000 yojanas above Meru; it is next above the Tusita (fourth devaloka). A day there is equal 800 human years; life lasts 8,000 years; its inhabitants are eight yojanas in height, and light-emitting; mutual smiling produces impregnation and children are born on the knees by metamorphosis, at birth equal in development to human children of twelve. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: "Those who are devoid of desire, but who will engage in it for the sake of their partner, even though the flavor of doing so is like the flavor of chewing wax, are born at the end of their lives in a place of transcending transformations. They are among those born in the Heaven of Bliss by Transformation." **The sixth Heaven is the Heaven of Transformation of Others' Bliss** (Parinimmita-vasavati p). Also called the Comfort Gained From The Transformation of Others' Bliss. Beings in this Heaven have no happiness of their own, so they have to take the bliss of other gods and transform it into their own. Why do they do this? It is because they obey no rules. They are just like bandits in the human realm who seize the wealth and possessions of other people for themselves, not caring whether other live or die. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: "Those who have no kind of worldly thoughts while doing what worldly people do, who are lucid and beyond such activity while involved in it, are capable at the end of their lives of entirely transcending states where transformations may be present and may be lacking. They are among those born in the Heaven of the Comfort from others' transformations."

Chapter Nine

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Stages & Ten Directional Decisions

I. A Summary of the Bodhisattva Ideal:

According to Buddhism, Bodhisattvas are enlightening beings who, deferring their own full Buddhahood, dedicate themselves to helping others attain liberation, and vow to forego complete enlightenment until they help all other beings attain enlightenment. In their self-mastery, wisdom, and compassion Bodhisattvas represent a high stage of Buddhahood, but they are not yet the supreme enlightened, or fully perfected Buddha. Bodhisattvas have numerous different abidings, but here, we only mention some typical abidings that Bodhisattvas have taken as abiding places on their path of cultivation. If practitioners want to follow in the footsteps of Bodhisattvas, we should also try to enter into some typical abidings of Bodhisattvas on their way of salvation of beings. The ideal of the Bodhisattva was partly due to social pressure on the Order, but to a great extent it was inherent in the practice of the 'Unlimited,' which had trained the monks not to discriminate between themselves and others. As we saw, Buddhism has at its disposal two methods by which it reduces the sense of separateness on the part of individuals. The one is the culture of the social emotions, or sentiments, such as loving-kindness (friendliness) and compassion. The other consists in acquiring the habit of regarding whatever one thinks, feels or does as an interplay of impersonal forces, called 'Dharmas,' weaning oneself slowly from such ideas as 'I' or 'mine' or 'self.' There is a logical contradiction between the method of wisdom, which sees no persons at all, but only Dharmas, and the method of the 'Unlimited' which cultivates relations to people as persons. The meditation on Dharmas dissolves other people, as well as oneself, into a conglomeration of impersonal and instantaneous dharmas. It reduces our manhood into 5 heaps, or pieces, plus a label. If there is nothing in the world except bundles of Dharmas, as cold and as impersonal as atoms, instantaneously perishing all the time, there is nothing which friendliness and compassion could work on. One cannot wish well to a

Dharma which is gone by the time one has come to wish it well, nor can one pity a Dharma, say a 'mind-object,' or a 'sight-organ,' or a 'sound-consciousness.' In those Buddhist circles where the method of Dharmas was practiced to a greater extent than the 'Unlimited,' it led to a certain dryness of mind, to aloofness, and to lack of human warmth. The true task of the Buddhist is to carry on with both contradictory methods at the same time. As the method of Dharmas leads to boundless expansion of the self, because one identifies oneself with more and more living beings. As the method of wisdom explodes the idea that there are any persons at all in the world, so the method of the 'Unlimited' increases the awareness of the personal problems of more and more persons. How then does the Mahayana resolve this contradiction? The Buddhist philosophers differs from philosophers bred in the Aristotelean tradition in that they are not frightened but delighted by a contradiction. They deal with this, as with other contradictions, by merely stating it in an uncompromising form, and then they leave it at that. According to the Diamond Sutra: "Here, oh! Subhuti! A Bodhisattva should think thus 'As many beings as there are in the universe of beings, be they being egg-born, or from a womb, or moisture-born, or miraculously born; be they with form, or without; be they with perception, without perception, or with neither perception nor no-perception, as far as any conceivable universe of beings is conceived; all these should be led by me into Nirvana, into that realm of Nirvana which leaves nothing behind. And yet, although innumerable beings have thus been led to Nirvana, no being at all has been led to Nirvana. And why? If in a Bodhisattva the perception of a 'being' should take place, he would not be called an 'enlightenment-being' or a Bodhisattva.'" In short, the Bodhisattva ideal originated from Mahayana Buddhism, but the term Bodhisattva is not confined solely to Mahayana Buddhism. In Theravada, Sakyamuni Buddha is referred to as "Bodhisatta" (Bodhisattva) in the past lives described in the Jatakas, during which he is said to have gradually perfected the good qualities of a Buddha. In the Mahayana sense, however, the Bodhisattva concept is an explicit rejection of Nikaya Buddhism's ideal religious paradigm, the Arhat. In Mahayana the Arhat is characterized as limited and selfish, concerned only with personal salvation, in contrast to the Bodhisattva, who works very hard for all sentient beings. The beginning of the bodhisattva's career is marked by the dawning of the "mind of awakening" (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including

environments, calamities and other dilemmas, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: “Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings.” This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. After that point the bodhisattva pursues the goal of Buddhahood by progressively cultivating the six, sometimes ten, “perfections” (Paramita): generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom. The two primary qualities in which the Bodhisattva trains are compassion and wisdom, and when the perfections are fully cultivated and compassion and wisdom developed to their highest level, the Bodhisattva becomes a Buddha.

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Stages & Ten Directional Decisions:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the city of Sakra or the city of beautiful of the Lord of devas, or capital of the thirty-three Indra-heavens (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on ten initial stages of directional decisions, these minds are associated with the ten stages in which the Bodhisattvas have the following Ten Decisions of Inclination or Ten Directional Decisions. ***Ten Initial Stages of Directional Decisions, These Minds Are Associated With the Ten Stages in Which the Bodhisattvas Have the Following Ten Decisions of Inclination or Ten Directional Decisions:*** the mind of renouncement of the world, the mind of observance of the commandments, the mind of patience or endurance, the mind of zealous progress, the mind of meditation, the mind of wisdom or perfect understanding, the mind of the will for good for oneself and others, the mind of protection of the Triratna (Buddha, Dharma, Sangha), the mind of joy, and the highest wisdom (the mind of spiritual baptism by the Buddha). ***Ten Stages of Bodhisattvas:*** The first stage is the purposive stage, or the mind set upon Buddhahood or the mind that dwells of bringing forth the resolve. These good people use honest expedients to bring forth those ten minds of faith. When the essence of these minds becomes dazzling, and the ten functions interconnect, then a single mind is perfectly accomplished. This is called the dwelling of bringing forth the resolve. *The second stage is the clear understanding and mental control or the dwelling of the ground of regulation.* From within this mind light comes forth like pure crystal, which reveals pure gold inside. Treading upon the previous wonderful mind as a ground is called the dwelling of the ground of regulation. *The third stage is the*

unhampered liberty in every direction or dwelling of cultivation. When the mind-ground connects with wisdom, both become bright and comprehensive. Traversing the ten directions then without obstruction. This is called the dwelling of cultivation. *The fourth stage is the acquiring the Tathagata nature or seed or dwelling of noble birth.* When their conduct is the same as the Buddhas' and they take on the demeanor of a Buddha, then, like the intermediate skandha body searching for a father and mother, they penetrate the darkness with a hidden trust and enter the lineage of the Thus Come One. This is called the dwelling of noble birth. *The fifth stage is the perfect adaptability and resemblance in self-development and development of others or dwelling with endowment with skill-in-means.* Since they ride in the womb of the way and will themselves become enlightened heirs, their human features are in no way deficient. This is called the dwelling of endowment with skill-in-means. *The sixth stage is the whole mind becoming Buddha-like or dwelling of the rectification of the mind.* With a physical appearance like that of a Buddha and a mind that is the same as well, they are said to be dwelling in the rectification of the mind. *The seventh stage is the non-retrogression. Perfect unity and constant progress or dwelling of irreversibility.* United in body and mind, they easily grow and mature day by day. In this stage, Bodhisattvas realize serenity of mind and also achieve unimpeded liberation. This is called the dwelling of irreversibility. *The eighth stage is the as a Buddha-son now, or the stage of youth in Buddhahood or dwelling of pure youth.* With the efficacious appearance of ten bodies, which are simultaneously perfected, they are said to be at the dwelling of a pure youth. *The ninth stage is the as prince of the law or dwelling of a Dharma Prince.* Completely developed, they leave the womb and become sons of the Buddha. This is called the dwelling of a Dharma Prince. *The tenth stage is the Baptism as the summit of attainment of the conception of Buddhahood or or dwelling anointing the crown of the head.* Reaching the fullness of adulthood, they are like the chosen prince to whom the great king of a country turns over the affairs of state. When this Kshatriya King's eldest is ceremoniously anointed on the crown of the head, he has reached what is called the dwelling of anointing the crown of the head."

Notes:

- (1) The city of Sakra or the city of beautiful of the Lord of devas. The chief city or capital of the thirty-three Indra-heavens. Also called the Sudarsana city good to behold, or city a joy to behold. Sakra, king of the devaloka. One of the ancient gods of India, the god of the sky who fights the demons with his vajra or thunderbolt. He is inferior to the trimurti, Brahma, Visnu, and Siva, having taken the place of Varuna or sky. Buddhism adopted him as its defender, though, like all the gods, he is considered inferior to a Buddha or any who have attained bodhi.

Chapter Ten

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Kinds of Practices & Ten Steps in the Nourishment of Perfection

I. An Overview of Bodhisattva's Practices in Buddhist Teachings:

Bodhisattva practice (Bodhisattva's practising) according to the tradition of Northern Buddhism. A Bodhisattva must achieve the following Bodhisattva's practices: to vow to devote the mind to bodhi (bodhicita), to practise the four immeasurables, to practise the six Paramitas, and to practise the four all-embracing virtues. According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, Bodhisattvas are those who were well known for having achieved all the perfections that lead to the great wisdom. They had received instructions from many Buddhas and formed a Dharma-protecting citadel. By upholding the right Dharma, they could fearlessly give the lion's roar to teach sentient beings; so their names were heard in the ten directions. They were not invited but came to the assembly to spread the teaching on the Three Treasures to transmit it in perpetuity. They had overcome all demons and defeated heresies; and their six faculties, karmas of deeds, words and thoughts were pure and clean; being free from the (five) hindrances and the (ten) bonds. They had realized serenity of mind and had achieved unimpeded liberation. They had achieved right concentration and mental stability, thereby acquiring the uninterrupted power of speech. They had achieved all the (six) paramitas: charity (dana), discipline (sila), patience (ksanti), devotion (virya), serenity (dhyana) and wisdom (prajna), as well as the expedient method (upaya) of teaching which completely benefit self and others. However, to them these realizations did not mean any gain whatsoever for themselves, so that they were in line with the patient endurance of the uncreate (anutpattika-dharma-ksanti). They were able to turn the wheel of the Law that never turns back. Being able to interpret the (underlying nature of) phenomena, they knew very well the roots (propensities) of all living beings; they surpassed them all and realized fearlessness. They had cultivated their minds by means of

merits and wisdom with which they embellished their physical features which were unsurpassable, thus giving up all earthly adornments. Their towering reputation exceeded the height of Mount Sumeru. Their profound faith in the uncreated was unbreakable like a diamond. Their treasures of the Dharma illuminated all lands and rained down nectar. Their speeches were profound and unsurpassable. They entered deep into all (worldly) causes, but cut off all heretical views for they were already free from all dualities and had rooted out all (previous) habits. They were fearless and gave the lion's roar to proclaim the Dharma, their voices being like thunder. They could not be gauged for they were beyond all measures. They had amassed all treasures of the Dharma and acted like (skillful) seafaring pilots. They were well versed in the profound meanings of all Dharmas. They knew very well the mental states of all living beings and their comings and goings (within the realms of existence). They had reached the state near the unsurpassed sovereign wisdom of all Buddhas, having acquired the ten fearless powers (dasabala) giving complete knowledge and the eighteen different characteristics (of a Buddha as compared with Bodhisattvas (avenikadharma). Although they were free from (rebirth in) evil existences, they appeared in five mortal realms as royal physicians to cure all ailments, prescribing the right medicine in each individual case, thereby winning countless merits to embellish countless Buddha lands. Each living being derived great benefit from seeing and hearing them, for their deeds were not in vain. Thus they had achieved all excellent merits.

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Kinds of Practices & Ten Steps in the Nourishment of Perfection:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the Suyama Heaven (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on ten steps in the nourishment of perfection. These ten minds are associated with the ten necessary activities in which the Bodhisattvas have the following ten kinds of well-nourished heart, essential to entry into the cult of the higher patience and endurance. Ten Steps in the Nourishment of Perfection Are Ten Minds Which Are Associated With the Ten Necessary Activities in Which the Bodhisattvas Have the Following Ten Kinds of Well-nourished Heart, Essential to Entry into the Cult of the Higher

Patience and Endurance: *a heart of kindness, a heart of pity, a heart of joy in progress toward salvation of others, a heart of renunciation, a heart of almsgiving, a heart of delight in telling the dharma, a heart of benefitting or aiding others to salvation, a heart of unity or amity, a heart of concentration in meditation, and a heart of wisdom. Ten Kinds of Practices Which Are Expounded by the Buddhas of Past, Present and Future:* the practice of giving joy, beneficial practice, practice of nonopposition, practice of indomitability, practice of nonconfusion, practice of good manifestation, practice of nonattachment, practice of that which is difficult to attain, practice of good teachings, and practice of truth. In most Buddhist sutras, the Buddha reminded Ananda about the ten necessary activities, or practices of a Bodhisattva. *The first practice is the conduct of happiness:* The practice of joyful service, or giving joy. The Buddha told Ananda: “Ananda! After these good men have become sons of the Buddha, they are replete with the limitlessly many wonderful virtues of the Thus Come Ones, and they comply and accord with beings throughout the ten directions. This is called the conduct of happiness.” *The second practice is the conduct of benefitting:* The practice of beneficial service, or beneficial practice. The Buddha told Ananda: “Being well able to accommodate all living beings is called the conduct of benefitting.” *The third practice is the conduct of non-opposition:* The practice of never resenting, or non-opposition. The Buddha told Ananda: “Enlightening oneself and enlightening others without putting forth any resistance is called the conduct of non-opposition.” *The fourth practice is the conduct of endlessness:* The practice of indomitability, or without limit in helping others. The Buddha told Ananda: “To undergo birth in various forms continuously to the bounds of the future, equally throughout the three periods of time and pervading the ten directions is called the conduct of endlessness.” *The fifth practice is the conduct of freedom from deluded confusion:* The practice of nonconfusion. The Buddha told Ananda: “When everything is equally in accord, one never makes mistakes among the various dharma doors. This is called the conduct of freedom from deluded confusion.” *The sixth practice is the conduct of wholesome manifestation:* The practice of good manifestation, or appearing in any form at will to save sentient beings. The Buddha told Ananda: “Then within what is identical, myriad

differences appear; the characteristics of every difference are seen, one and all, in identity. This is called the conduct of wholesome manifestation.” *The seventh practice is the conduct of non-attachment:* The practice of nonattachment, or unimpeded practice. The Buddha told Ananda: “This continues until it includes all the dust motes that fill up empty space throughout the ten directions. In each and every mote of dust there appear the worlds of the ten directions. And yet, the appearance of worlds do not interfere with one another. This is called the conduct of non-attachment.” *The eighth practice is the conduct of veneration:* The practice of exalting the paramitas amongst all beings, or the practice of that which is difficult to attain. The Buddha told Ananda: “Everything that appears before one is the foremost paramita. This is called the conduct of veneration.” *The ninth practice is the conduct of wholesome Dharma:* The practice of good teaching, or perfecting the Buddha-law by complete virtue. The Buddha told Ananda: “With such perfect fusion, one can model oneself after all the Buddhas of the ten directions. This is called the conduct of wholesome dharma.” *The tenth practice is the conduct of true actuality:* The practice of truth, or manifest in all things the pure, final and true reality. The Buddha told Ananda: “To then be pure and without outflows in each and every way is the primary truth, which is unconditioned, the essence of the nature. This is called the conduct of true actuality.”

Notes:

- (1) Celestial is a term which Eastern Asian peoples used to call “Heaven.” Celestial beings or gods, one of the three good modes of existence as a reward for their previous good deeds. Devas allotted a very long, happy life in the Deva although they are still subject to the cycle of rebirth. However, this happiness may constitute a substantial hindrance on their path to liberation for they cannot recognize the truth of suffering. Six Desire Heavens or Heavens of Desires (they are still in the region of sexual desire). The six Desire Heavens are the heavens of the Desire Realm. The Desire Realm, the Form Realm and the Formless Realm are called the Three Realms. The heavens of Suyama or the Suyama Heaven. Among them, there is a heaven called “Extreme Happy Heaven”. Beings in the Suyama Heaven are extremely happy, and they sing songs from morning to night. They are happy in the six periods of the day and night, that is why people call “Suyama Heaven” the Heaven of Time Period, for every time period is joyful. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: “Those who become temporarily involved when they meet with desire but who forget about it when it is finished, and who, while in the human realm, are active less and quiet more, abide at the end of their lives in light and emptiness where the illumination of sun and moon does not reach. These beings have their own light, and they are among those born in the Suyama Heaven.”

Chapter Eleven

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Dedications & Ten Characteristics of the “Diamond Heart”

Developed by Bodhisattvas

I. Summaries of Dedication in Buddhist Teachings:

The Nature of Dedication in Buddhist Teachings: Dedication is done with a wish to convert the virtue into a cause for one’s complete enlightenment. It is also to have the wish that your root virtues may not disappear. What is to be dedicated? One’s root virtues. Why dedicate them? So that they will not be lost. To what end do practitioners dedicate them? To your supreme enlightenment. For whose sake do practitioners dedicate your root virtues? For the sake of all sentient beings. How do practitioners dedicate them? Through method and right perception. This means that we should dedicate our root virtues by means of the union of method and wisdom. We must develop right perception of the three components of the act of dedication. In other words, you should negate the assertion or belief that the thing being dedicated, the end to which it is dedicated and the sentient beings for whose sake this is being done do not lack inherent existence. To think of these three components of dedication as lacking inherent existence prevents you from clinging to the thing being dedicated as if it was established as true. What happen if we do not dedicate our virtue? According to Bodhisattva Shatideva: “No matter how many excellent deeds you may have performed for a thousand aeons, such as generosity or making offerings to Tathagatas, they all perish in one fit of anger.” This is what happens if we do not dedicate our virtues. Therefore, we should dedicate our root virtues if we do not want them destroy by anger. When we do dedications, it is like our root virtue is being deposited in a safe place. We mix our root virtues with that of the Victorious Ones and their children. It is like a drop of water, which is our own root virtue, being mixed with the ocean, which is the virtue of the Victorious Ones, so that the drop of water does not disappear until the ocean runs dry. Buddhist practitioners should always

remember that dedication and prayers are very powerful. Through the power of dedication and prayer, Sariputra became the wisest of the wise. Our virtue is like a horse and our prayer is like the bridle. Another example is gold. It can be fashioned into either a statue or a common container. It all depends on the goldsmith. It is the same case with the results of our virtue. Depending on our dedications and prayers, the result of our virtue will be either high or low.

Dedication and Self-Attachment: Attachment to a self also called Self-attachment. Maybe before we know how to cultivate we only limit the welfare to ourselves, i.e. “I want this, I don’t want that,” etc. This narrow attitude for our own happiness causes us to pay no attention to the welfare of anyone else. This extremely restricted view inevitably causes our heart to close. Then, even if we do not say it out, it is as if we feel “I am the most important person in the universe. The problems that others have are nothing related to me at all. It is only my own happiness that counts.” As long as we remain focused only on our own happiness, whether mundane or supermundane, we will never experience the vastness of a truly open heart. The only way to achieve the total vision of complete enlightenment is to free ourselves from the restrictions of this narrow, self-cherishing attitude. Sincere Buddhists should always try to overcome this self-cherishing and dedicate ourselves as fully possible to the welfare of others, the more the better, for this is the only way to achieve a completely opened heart, the only way to experience lasting happiness. How can we achieve a completely opened heart and to experience lasting happiness? We should always practice “Dedication” Demitting means transferring the good we have done to all others, or to turn something from us to another or dedicating, or transferring of merit. The goal or direction of Bodhisattva or Buddha which devotes all merits to the salvation of others. This is one of the most outstanding ideas of Mahayana Buddhism. Furthermore, dedication also means that, having created a certain atmosphere of positive energy within ourselves, we determine to share this happiness with others as much as possible. Only “dedication” can help us eliminate our “self-cherishing” which is the main cause of all our confusion, frustration, sufferings, and afflictions. Let take a look at what Sakyamuni Buddha did with his life. He gave up all his self-attachment, dedicated himself completely to the welfare

of others, and as a result He attained the unsurpassed bliss of complete enlightenment. Then look at us, we are obsessed with the “I” and “I” and “I” and what we have gotten is unending misery and disappointment. Thus, sincere Buddhists should try to cultivate on “Dedication” to eliminate “Self-attachment” and to attain lasting happiness for not only us, but also others.

Cultivation of Transference of Merit in Buddhist Teachings: The goal or direction of bodhisattva or Buddha which devotes all merits to the salvation of others. This is one of the most outstanding ideas of Mahayana Buddhism. The method of cultivation of transference of merit is a special method of Buddhist methods of cultivation. In fact, transference of merit is one of the most important parts of the Buddha’s Teachings. Sharing of merits is made by the doer of merit (good deeds), resolving that everybody may partake of the merit of his good deeds. However, such sharing becomes really effective when the intended recipient becomes aware of the good deeds and rejoices such transference. Transference of merit is itself a good deed, adds to the merit of other good deeds already done, the result is inconceivable. Transference of merit means to turn (to turn towards) something from one person or thing to another. Therefore, transference of merit, especially of one’s merits to another. According to the Lankavatara Sutra, parinamana means transference, especially of one’s merit to another or towards the realization of supreme wisdom. This is one of the most characteristic ideas of Mahayana Buddhism. Dedication is done with a wish to convert the virtue into a cause for one’s complete enlightenment. It is also to have the wish that your root virtues may not disappear. In the Surangama Sutra, book Eight, the Buddha reminded Ananda about the ten transferences as follows: transference apart from appearances; transference of indestructibility; transference of sameness with all Buddhas; transference of reaching all places; transference of the treasury of inexhaustible merit and virtue; transference of the identity of all good roots; transference of contemplating all living beings equally; transference of the appearance of True Suchness; transference of liberation; and transference of limitlessness of the Dhama Realm.

What happen if we do not dedicate our virtue? According to Bodhisattva Shatideva: “No matter how many excellent deeds you may

have performed for a thousand aeons, such as generosity or making offerings to Tathagatas, they all perish in one fit of anger.” This is what happens if we do not dedicate our virtues. Therefore, we should dedicate our root virtues if we do not want them destroyed by anger. When we do dedications, it is like our root virtue is being deposited in a safe place. We mix our root virtues with that of the Victorious Ones and their children. It is like a drop of water, which is our own root virtue, being mixed with the ocean, which is the virtue of the Victorious Ones, so that the drop of water does not disappear until the ocean runs dry. Dedication and prayers are very powerful. Through the power of dedication and prayer, Sariputra became the wisest of the wise. Our virtue is like a horse and our prayer is like the bridle. Another example is gold. It can be fashioned into either a statue or a common container. It all depends on the goldsmith. It is the same case with the results of our virtue. Depending on our dedications and prayers, the result of our virtue will be either high or low.

According to the Mahayana traditions, merit is a quality in us that ensures future benefits to us, either material or spiritual. It is not difficult to perceive that to desire merit, to hoard, accumulate, and store merit imply a considerable degree of self-seeking, however meritorious it may be. It has always been the tactics of the Buddhists to weaken the possessive instincts of the spiritually less-endowed members of the community by withdrawing them from such objects as wealth and family, and directing them instead towards one aim and object, i.e. the acquisition of merit. But that, of course, is good enough only on a fairly low spiritual level. At higher stages one will have to turn also against this form of possessiveness, one will have to be willing to give up one’s store of merit for the sake of the happiness of others. The Mahayana drew this conclusion and expected its followers to endow other beings with their own merit, or, as the Scriptures put it: “To turn over, or dedicate, their merit to the enlightenment of all beings. Through the merit derived from all my good deeds, I wish to appease the suffering of all creatures, to be the medicine, the physician, and the nurse of the sick as long as there is sickness. Through rains of food and drink I wish to extinguish the fire of hunger and thirst. I wish to be inexhaustible treasure to the poor, a servant who furnishes them with all they lack. My life and all my re-births, all my

possessions, all the merit that I have acquired or will acquire, all that I abandon without hope of any gain for self in order that the salvation of all beings might be promoted.

According to the Tibetan traditions, what is to be dedicated? One's root virtues. Why dedicate them? So that they will not be lost. To what end do you dedicate them? To your supreme enlightenment. For whose sake do you dedicate your root virtues? For the sake of all sentient beings. How do you dedicate them? Through method and right perception. This means that we should dedicate our root virtues by means of the union of method and wisdom. We must develop right perception of the three components of the act of dedication. In other words, you should negate the assertion or belief that the thing being dedicated, the end to which it is dedicated and the sentient beings for whose sake this is being done do not lack inherent existence. To think of these three components of dedication as lacking inherent existence prevents you from clinging to the thing being dedicated as if it was established as true. The purposes of Dedications in Vajrayana is to create good causes for other people to advance their Mahayana Path. Devout Buddhists always vow: "I dedicate whatever white virtues thus create as causes to uphold the holy Dharma of scripture and insight and to fulfil without exception the prayers and deeds of all Buddhas and Bodhisattvas of the three times. By the force of this merit, may I never be parted in all my lives from Mahayana's four spheres, and reach the end of my journey along the path of renunciation, bodhicitta, pure view and the two stages." Dedication of merit (Tibetan tradition)-Final Lam Rim Dedication Prayer: "From my two collections, vast as space, that I have amassed from working with effort at this practice for a great length of time. May I become the chief leading Buddha for all those, whose mind's wisdom eye is blinded by ignorance. Even if I do not reach this state, may I be held in your loving compassion for all my lives, Manjusri. May I find the best of complete graded paths of the teachings. May I please all Buddhas by practicing using skillful means drawn by the strong force of compassion. May I clear the darkness from the minds of all beings with the points of the paths as I have discerned them. May I uphold Buddha's teachings for a very long time with my heart going out with great compassion in whatever direction the most precious teachings have not yet spread, or once spread have

declined. May I expose this treasure of happiness and aid. May the minds of those who wish for liberation be granted bounteous peace, and the Buddhas' deeds be nourished for a long time by even this Graded Course to Enlightenment completed due to the wondrous virtuous conduct of the Buddhas and their Sons. May all human and non-human beings who eliminate adversity and make things conducive for practicing the excellent paths never parted in any of their lives from the purest path praised by the Buddhas. Whenever someone makes effort to act in accordance with the ten-fold Mahayana virtuous practices, may he always be assisted by the mighty ones. And may oceans of Dharma prosper and spread everywhere."

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Dedications & Ten Characteristics of the "Diamond Heart" Developed by Bodhisattvas:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the Tushita Heaven (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on ten steps or ten characteristics of the diamond heart as developed by Bodhisattvas. Ten "diamond" steps of firmness associated with ten bestowings one's merits to another (these are associated with the ten dedications). ***Ten Steps or Ten Characteristics of the "Diamond Heart" Developed by Bodhisattvas:*** complete insight into all truth, saving of all creatures, the glorifying of all Buddha-worlds, transference of his good deeds, services of all Buddhas, realization of the truth of all Buddha-laws, manifestation of all patience and endurance, unflagging devotion to his vocation, perfection of his work, and aiding to all fulfill their vows and accomplish their spiritual ends. ***Ten "diamond" steps of firmness associated with ten bestowings one's merits to another (these are associated with the ten dedications):*** the mind of faith, remembrance, bestowing one's merits on others, understanding, uprightness, no-retreat, mahayana, formlessness, wisdom, and the mind of indestructibility.

In most Buddhist sutras, the Buddha reminded Ananda about the ten necessary transferences of a Bodhisattva. The first transference is the transference apart from appearances: When these good persons replete with spiritual penetrations, have done the Buddhas' work, are totally pure and absolutely true, and remain distant from obstacles and

calamities, then they take living beings across while casting aside the appearance of taking them across. They transform the unconditioned mind and go toward the path of nirvana. This is called the transference of saving and protecting living beings, while apart from the appearance of living beings. The second transference is the transference of indestructibility: To destroy what should be destroyed and to remain what should be behind is called the transference of indestructibility. The third transference is the transference of sameness with all Buddhas: Fundamental enlightenment is profound indeed, an enlightenment equal to the Buddhas's enlightenment. The fourth transference is the transference of reaching all places. When absolute truth is discovered, one's level is the same as the level of all Buddhas. The fifth transference is the transference of the treasury of inexhaustible merit and virtue: Worlds and Thus Come Ones include one another without any obstruction. The sixth transference is the transference of the identity of all good roots: Since they are identical with the Buddha-ground, they create causes which are pure at each and every level. Brilliance emanates from them as they rely on these causes, and they go straight down the path to Nirvana. The seventh transference is the transference of contemplating all living beings equally: When the true roots are set down, then all living beings in the ten directions are my own nature. Not a single being is lost, as this nature is successfully perfected. The eighth transference is the transference of the appearance of True Suchness: All dharmas are themselves apart from all appearances, and yet there is no attachment either to their existence or to separation from them. The ninth transference is the transference of liberation: That which is thus is truly obtained, and there is no obstruction throughout the ten directions. The tenth transference is the transference of limitlessness of the Dhama Realm: When the virtue of the nature is perfectly accomplished, the boundaries of the dharma realm are destroyed.

Notes:

- (1) Celestial is a term which Eastern Asian peoples used to call "Heaven." Celestial beings or gods, one of the three good modes of existence as a reward for their previous good deeds. Devas allotted a very long, happy life in the Deva although they are still subject to the cycle of rebirth.

However, this happiness may constitute a substantial hindrance on their path to liberation for they cannot recognize the truth of suffering. Six Desire Heavens or Heavens of Desires (they are still in the region of sexual desire). The six Desire Heavens are the heavens of the Desire Realm. The Desire Realm, the Form Realm and the Formless Realm are called the Three Realms. The Tushita Heaven also means “Blissfully Content.” Beings in this Heaven are constantly happy and satisfied. Since they know to be content, they are always happy. From morning to night, they have no cares nor worries; no afflictions nor troubles. That is why this Heaven is also called the Heaven of Contentment. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: “Those who are quiet all the time, but who are not yet able to resist when stimulated by contact, ascend at the end of their lives to a subtle and ethereal place; they will not be drawn into the lower realms. The destruction of the realms of humans and gods and the obliteration of kalpas by the three disasters will not reach them, for they are among those born in the Tushita Heaven.”

Chapter Twelve

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Grounds of Development of a Bodhisattva into a Buddha

I. An Overview of Bodhisattva-Bhumi in Buddhism

“Bhumi” is a Sanskrit term referring to stages of development of a Bodhisattva. Each succeeding level represents a further stage of spiritual accomplishment and is accompanied by progressively greater power and wisdom. In Mahayana, there are ten levels through which Bodhisattvas progress on their way to the attainment of buddhahood: 1) very joyous (pramudita) or land of joy, which is attained when a bodhisattva first directly perceives emptiness (sunyata), and which is simultaneous with the path of seeing (darsanamarga); bodhisattvas on this level develop the perfection (paramita) of generosity (dana); 2) the “stainless” (vimala) or land of purity, during which bodhisattvas ripen the perfection of ethics (sila) and overcome all tendencies to engage in negative actions; 3) the “luminous” (prabhakari) or land of radiance, when bodhisattvas cultivate the perfection of patience (ksanti); 4) the “radiant” (arcismati) or balzing land, when they work at the perfection of effort (virya); 5) the “difficult to cultivate” (sudurjaya) or land of extreme difficult to conquer, during which they ripen the perfection of concentration (dhyana); 6) the “manifest” (abhimuki) or land in view of wisdom, on which they develop the perfection of wisdom (prajna); 7) the “gone afar” (duramgama) or far-reaching land, the stage of perfecting “skill in mean” (upaya-kausalya, the ability skillfully to adapt their teachings to any audience); 8) the “immovable” (acala) or immovable land, during which they work at the perfection of aspiration (pranidhana), from this point onward they are incapable of backsliding and will inevitably progress steadily toward buddhahood; 9) the “good intelligence” samdhumati) or land of good thoughts, the level on which they advance the perfection of power (bala) and fully comprehend all doctrines; 10) the “cloud of doctrine” (dharma-megha) or land of dharma clouds, during which they eliminate the subtlest traces of

remaining afflictions and cultivate the perfection of knowledge (jnana) and finally attain Buddhahood.

Probably in the fourth century A.D., Asanga, one of the leading figures of the Indian Buddhist Yogacara tradition, wrote a Sanskrit treatise named “Yogacara-Bhumi Sastra”. It outlines the path to buddhahood followed by the Bodhisattva and describes the practices pertaining to the path. It is the fifteenth section of his voluminous Levels of Yogic Practice (Yogacara-bhumi). Asanga describes ten Bodhisattva-bhumi, grading the upward course of the Bodhisattva’s spiritual development, which culminates in the realization of Buddhahood. The work is said to have been dictated to him in or from the Tusita heaven by Maitreya, about the doctrine of the Yogacara or Vijnanavada. The sastra was translated into Chinese by Hsuan-Tsang, is the foundation text of this school. Treatise on the Stages of the Yogachara. This is the fundamental work of the Yogachara school, which the author might have been either Asanga or Maitreyanatha. Later in the 5th century AD Dharmatrata and Buddhasena based on the *Bodhisattva-bhumi Sastra* to compose the Yogacharabhumi-Sutra on the methods of meditation for the Hinayana. The sutra was translated into Chinese by Buddhahadra. The sutra was divided into five parts. First, the seventeen stages presenting the progression on the path to enlightenment with the help of the Yogachara teaching, this is the most important part. Second, interpretations of these stages. Third, explanation of these sutras from which the Yogachara doctrine of the stages draws support. Fourth, classifications contained in these sutras. Fifth, topics from the Buddhist canon (sutra, Vinaya-pitaka, Abhidharma).

The Yogacara-Bhumi Sastra itself outlines the path to Buddhahood followed by the Bodhisattva and describes the practices pertaining to the path. It is the fifteenth section of his voluminous Levels of Yogic Practice. There are ten Bodhisattva-bhumi, grading the upward course of the Bodhisattva’s spiritual development, which culminates in the realization of Buddhahood. The first stage is the stage of joy in which one rejoices at realizing a partial aspect of the truth; and having overcome the former difficulties and now entering on the path to Buddhahood. The second stage is the stage of purity in which one is free from all defilements, or freedom from all possible defilements and

afflictions. The third is the stage of further enlightenment. In the stage of the emission of light, one radiates the light of wisdom. The fourth is the stage of glowing wisdom in which the flame of wisdom burns away earthly desires. The fifth is the stage of mastery of utmost or final difficulties; or the stage of overcoming final illusions of darkness. The sixth is the stage of the open way of wisdom above definitions of impurity and purity; or the stage of the sign of supreme wisdom in which supreme wisdom appears. The seventh is the stage of proceeding afar, getting above ideas of self in order to help others. In the stage of progression, one rises above the state of two Vehicles. The eighth is the stage of attainment of calm unperturbedness. In this stage of immobility, one dwell firmly in the truth of the Middle Way. The ninth is the stage of the finest discriminatory wisdom, knowing where and how to save. In the stage of all penetrating wisdom, one preaches the Law freely and without restriction. The tenth is the stage of attaining to the fertilizing powers of the Law-cloud. In the stage of the Cloud of Teaching, one benefits all sentient beings with the Law (Dharma).

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Grounds of Development of a Bodhisattva into a Buddha:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the Heaven of Transformation of Others' Bliss (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on Ten grounds of Development of a Bodhisattva into a Buddha. The last ten steps are "ten stages" of the development of a bodhisattva into a Buddha: Dry or unfertilized stage of wisdom (Unfertilized by Buddha-truth or Worldly wisdom), the embryo-stage of the nature of Buddha-truth, the stage of patient endurances, the stage of freedom from wrong views, the stage of freedom from the first six of nine delusions in practice, the stage of freedom from the remaining worldly desires, the stage of complete discrimination in regard to wrong views and thoughts or the stage of an arhat, Pratyekabuddhahood, Bodhisattvahood, and Buddhahood. *The ten stages of Bodhisattvabhumi:* Joyful stage or land of joy, or ground of happiness or delight; Immaculate stage or land of purity, or ground of leaving filth (land of freedom from defilement), Radiant stage or land of radiance, or ground of emitting light; Blazing stage or the blazing land, or the ground of blazing wisdom; Hard-to-conquer stage

or the land extremely difficult to conquer, or the ground of invincibility, Face-to-face stage or land in view of wisdom, or the ground of manifestation; Going-far-beyond stage or the far-reaching land, or the ground of traveling far; Immovable stage or the immovable land; Good-thought stage or the land of good thoughts, or the ground of good wisdom; and Cloud of dharma stage or land of dharma clouds, or the ground of the Dharma cloud.

In most Buddhist sutras, the Buddha reminded Ananda about the Ten grounds of Development of a Bodhisattva into a Buddha. *The first stage of Joy* (or utmost joy) at having overcome the former difficulties, realizing a partial aspect of the truth, and now entering on the path to Buddhahood and enlightenment. In this stage, the Bodhisattva attains the holy nature for the first time and reaches the highest pleasure, having been removed from all errors of Life-View (darsana-marga) and having fully realized the twofold sunyata: pudgala and dharma. In this stage, a Bodhisattva feels delight because he is able to pass from the narrow ideal of personal Nirvana to the higher ideal of emancipation all sentient beings from the suffering of ignorance. The Buddha told Ananda: “Ananda, these good men have successfully penetrated through to great Bodhi. Their enlightenment is entirely like the Thus Come One’s. They have fathomed the state of Buddhahood. This is called the ground of happiness.” *The second stage is the land of purity*, or ground of leaving filth, or land of freedom from defilement (Vimala). Negatively speaking, Vimala means ‘freedom from defilement;’ positively speaking, Vimala means ‘purity of heart.’ This is the stage of purity, perfect of discipline, and freedom from all possible defilement through practices of dhyana and samadhi. The stage of purity in which a bodhisattva overcomes all passions and impurity. In this stage, the Bodhisattva reaches the perfection of discipline (sila) and becomes utterly taintless with regard to morality. The Buddha told Anana: “The differences enter into identity; the identity is destroyed. This is called the ground of leaving filth.” *The third stage is the land of radiance*, or ground of emitting light (Prabhakari). The stage of further enlightenment where Bodhisattva’s insight penetrates into the impermanence of all things, or where he gains insight into impermanence (anitya) of existence and develops the virtue of patience (kshanti) in bearing difficulties and in actively

helping all sentient beings. In this stage of the emission of light, after having attained the deepest introspective insight, the Bodhisattva radiates the light of wisdom, gets the perfection of forbearance (ksanti) and becomes free from the errors of Life-Culture (bhavana-marga). The Buddha told Ananda: “At the point of ultimate purity, brightness comes forth. This is called the ground of emitting light.” *The fourth stage is the blazing land*, or the ground of blazing wisdom (Archishmati). Archishmati is the stage in which the Bodhisattva practices passionlessness and detachment and burns the twin coverings of defilement and ignorance. This is the stage of glowing or flaming wisdom where Bodhisattva attains the perfection of bravery or effort (virya), thereby increasing the power of insight more and more. He is able to burn away earthly desires as well as remaining false conceptions, develops wisdom and perfects the thirty-seven requisites of enlightenment. The Buddha told Ananda: “When the brightness becomes ultimate, enlightenment is full. This is called the ground of blazing wisdom.” *The fifth stage is the land extremely difficult to conquer*, or the ground of invincibility (Sudurjaya). The stage of mastery of utmost or final difficulties, or illusions of darkness, or ignorance. In this stage, the bodhisattva develops the spirit of sameness and absorbs himself in meditation, gets the perfection of meditative concentration, in order to achieve an intuitive grasp of the truth, to understand the four noble truths, to clear away doubt and uncertainty, to know what is proper and what is not. During this stage Bodhisattva continues to work on the perfection of the thirty-seven requisites of enlightenment. The Buddha told Ananda: “No identity or difference can be attained. This is called the ground of invincibility.” *The sixth stage is the land in view of wisdom*, or the ground of manifestation (Abhimukhi). In this stage, the Bodhisattva attains the perfection of wisdom or insight (prajna), recognizes that all dharmas are free from characteristics origins, and without distinction between existence and nonexistence. In this stage, the Bodhisattva stands face to face with Reality. He realizes the sameness of all phenomena. Thus, the sign of supreme wisdom begins to appear; owing to the perfection of the virtue of wisdom and comprehension of nothingness, bodhisattva can enter nirvana; however, also retains equanimity as to purity and impurity, so he still vows to come back to the world to save beings. This is the stage

of the open way of wisdom above definitions of impurity and purity. The Buddha told Ananda: “With unconditioned true suchness, the nature is spotless, and brightness is revealed. This is called the ground of manifestation.” *The seventh stage is the far-reaching land*, or the ground of travelling far (Duramgama). The stage of proceeding afar, or far-going, which is the position farthest removed the selfish state of the two Vehicles. He is getting above ideas of self, gaining knowledge and skillful means which enable him to exercise great mercy to all beings by helping them proceed the way to enlightenment. After passing through this stage, the Bodhisattva rises above the states of the Two Vehicles, and it’s impossible to fall back to lower levels. In this stage, the Bodhisattva acquires the knowledge that enable him to adopt ant means for his work of salvation. He has won Nirvana, but without entering it, for he is busily engaged for the emancipation of other sentient beings. The Buddha told Ananda: “Coming to the farthest limits of true suchness is called the ground of traveling far.” *The eighth stage is the immovable land (Acala)*: The immovable land (the stage of immovability), or the ground of immovability. When the Bodhisattva reaches here, he experiences the anutpattika-dharma-ksanti or the acquiescence in the unoriginatedness of all phenomena. He knows in detail the evolution and involution of the universe. In this stage, he gets rid of discrimination and has a thorough understanding of the nature of existence, realizing why it is like maya, etc., how discrimination starts from our inmate longing to see existence divided into subject and object, and how the mind and what belongs to it are stirred up; he would then practice all that pertains to the life of a good Buddhist, leading to the path of truth all those who have not yet come to it. This is the Bodhisattva's’ nirvana which is not extinction. In this stage, the Bodhisattva completes the perfection of vow (pranidhana) and abiding in the view of “No Characteristic” (alaksana), wanders freely according to any opportunity. In this stage, the Bodhisattva dwells firmly in the truth of the Middle Way; he reaches the stage of attainment of calm unperturbedness where he no longer be disturbed by anything. He gains the ability to transfer his merit to other beings and renounce the accumulation of further karmic treasures. The Buddha told Ananda: “The single mind of true suchness is called the ground of immovability.” *The ninth stage is the land of good thoughts*, or the

ground of good wisdom (Sadhumati). In this stage, the Bodhisattva acquires comprehensive knowledge, unfathomable by ordinary human intelligence. He knows the desires and thoughts of men and is able to teach them according to their capacities. This is the stage of wisdom of the Bodhisattva is complete (all-penetrating wisdom). In this stage he possesses the finest discriminatory wisdom, six supernatural powers, four certainties, eight liberations, all dharanis. He knows the nature of all dharmas and expound them without problems (without restriction). He also knows when, where and how to save other sentient beings. In this stage, the Bodhisattva preaches everywhere discriminating between those who are to be saved and those who are not. The Buddha told Ananda: “Bringing forth the function of true suchness is called the ground of good wisdom. Ananda! All Bodhisattvas at this point and beyond have reached the effortless way in their cultivation. Their merit and virtue are perfected, and so all the previous positions are also called the level of cultivation.” *The tenth stage is the land of dharma clouds*, or the ground of the Dharma cloud (Dharmamegha). The stage of attaining to the fertilizing powers of the Law-cloud (the Cloud of Teaching). Bodhisattva has realized all understanding and immeasurable virtue. The dharmakaya of the bodhisattva is fully developed. In this stage, the Bodhisattva benefits all sentient beings with the Law just as a cloud sends down rain impartially on all things. His Buddhahood is confirmed by all Buddhas. In this he acquires perfection of contemplation, knows the mystery of existence, and is consecrated as perfect. In fact, this is the stage of the Buddha who is represented by such a Bodhisattva (he attains Buddhahood). In this stage, the Bodhisattva is able to preach the Dharma to all the world equally, just as the rainclouds pour down heavy rains during drought. The Buddha told Ananda: “The voice of a wonderful cloud of compassionate protection one covers the sea of Nirvana. This is called the ground of the Dharma cloud.”

Notes:

- (1) Celestial is a term which Eastern Asian peoples used to call “Heaven.” Celestial beings or gods, one of the three good modes of existence as a reward for their previous good deeds. Devas allotted a very long, happy life in the Deva although they are still subject to the cycle of rebirth.

However, this happiness may constitute a substantial hindrance on their path to liberation for they cannot recognize the truth of suffering. Six Desire Heavens or Heavens of Desires (they are still in the region of sexual desire). The six Desire Heavens are the heavens of the Desire Realm. The Desire Realm, the Form Realm and the Formless Realm are called the Three Realms. The Heaven of Transformation of Others' Bliss (Parinimmita-vasavati p), also called the Comfort Gained From The Transformation of Others' Bliss. There are beings who rejoice in the creations of others, such as the devas Having Power over Others' Creation. Beings in this Heaven have no happiness of their own, so they have to take the bliss of other gods and transform it into their own. Why do they do this? It is because they obey no rules. They are just like bandits in the human realm who seize the wealth and possessions of other people for themselves, not caring whether other live or die. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: "Those who have no kind of worldly thoughts while doing what worldly people do, who are lucid and beyond such activity while involved in it, are capable at the end of their lives of entirely transcending states where transformations may be present and may be lacking. They are among those born in the Heaven of the Comfort from others' transformations."

Chapter Thirteen

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Buddhas' Ten Kinds of Samadhi

I. An Overview & Meanings of Samadhi:

According to Buddhism, samadhi means the balanced state, concentration of thought, putting together, joining or combining with. In Mahayana Buddhism, samadhi designates equilibrium, tranquility, and collectedness of mind. It also designates a completely wakeful total absorption of the mind in itself. It is a nondualistic state of mind in which there is no distinction between subject and object, either inner and outer. There is no mind of the meditator (subject) that is directed toward an object of meditation or concentrated on a point (so-called one-pointedness of mind). In Zen, the subject and object are one. This term has a variety of meanings. In Buddhism, it means the mind fixed and undisturbed. Composing the mind, intent contemplation, perfect absorption, union of the meditator with the object of meditation. In Zen it implies not merely equilibrium, tranquility, and one-pointedness, but a state of intense yet effortless concentration, of complete absorption of the mind in itself, of heightened and expanded awareness. Samadhi and Bodhi are identical from the view of the enlightened Bodhi-mind. Seen from the developing stages leading to enlightenment-awakening; however, samadhi and enlightenment are different. Samadhi also means one-pointedness of mind which is obtained from the practices of meditation or the combination of meditation (Dhyana) and Prajna (Transcendental wisdom). The state of mental concentration resulting from the practice of meditation and contemplation on Reality (the state of even-mindedness). Samadhi is the key tool that leads to enlightenment. Samadhi is a non-dualistic state of consciousness in which the consciousness of the experiencing "subject" becomes one with the experienced "object." Samadhi is neither a straining concentration on one point, nor the mind is directed from here (subject) to there (object), which would be dualistic mode of experience. To enter samadhi means to attain the state of absorption of dhyana.

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Buddhas' Ten Kinds of Samadhi:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the Transformation of Bliss Heaven (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on ten concentrations of the Buddhas. In most Buddhist sutras, the Buddha reminded Ananda about the Ten kinds of Samadhi. ***Ten Concentrations of the Buddhas (Ten Samadhis)***: According to the Brahma-Net Sutra & the Flower Adornment Sutra, Chapter 27, there are ten concentrations of the Buddhas: 1) The Great Concentration of Universal Light includes the following concentrations: a) Ten kinds of Inexhaustible Qualities. b) Ten kinds of boundless will. c) Ten kinds of knowledge of differentiation of entry into concentration. d) Ten kinds of knowledge of skills in entry into great concentration. 2) The Great Concentration of Subtle Light. 3) The Great Concentration of successive journeying to the Buddha-lands. 4) The Great Concentration of the Action of the Pure Profound Mind. 5) The Great Concentration of Knowledge of the stores of Adornments of the Past. 6) The Great Concentration of the Treasury of Light of Knowledge. 7) The great Concentration of Knowledge of the Adornments of the Buddhas. 8) The Great Concentration of Differentiated Bodies of Sentient Beings. 9) The Great Concentration of Freedom in the Elemental Cosmos. 10) The Great Concentration of the Unimpeded Wheel.

Notes:

- (1) Celestial is a term which Eastern Asian peoples used to call "Heaven." Celestial beings or gods, one of the three good modes of existence as a reward for their previous good deeds. Devas allotted a very long, happy life in the Deva although they are still subject to the cycle of rebirth. However, this happiness may constitute a substantial hindrance on their path to liberation for they cannot recognize the truth of suffering. Six Desire Heavens or Heavens of Desires (they are still in the region of sexual desire). The six Desire Heavens are the heavens of the Desire Realm. The Desire Realm, the Form Realm and the Formless Realm are called the Three Realms. In Buddhism, the Transformation of Bliss Heaven is also called the Joy-born heaven (Nirmanarati). Beings in this Heaven can obtain happiness by transformation. When they think about clothing, clothing appears. When they think about food, food appears. Freely performing transformations, they are extremely blissful. The fifth of the six desire-heaven, 640,000 yojanas above Meru; it is next above the Tusita (fourth devaloka). A day there is equal 800 human years; life lasts 8,000 years; its inhabitants are eight yojanas in height, and light-emitting; mutual smiling produces impregnation and children are born on the knees by metamorphosis, at birth equal in development to human children of twelve. In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha said: "Those who are devoid of desire, but who will engage in it for the sake of their partner, even though the flavor of doing so is like the flavor of chewing wax, are born at the end of their lives in a place of transcending transformations. They are among those born in the Heaven of Bliss by Transformation."

Chapter Fourteen

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Diamonds

I. An Overview & Meanings of Mind in Buddhist Teachings:

According to Buddhism, “Mind” is another name for Alaya-vijnana. Unlike the material body, immaterial mind is invisible. We are aware of our thoughts and feelings and so forth by direct sensation, and we infer their existence in others by analogy. The mind is the root of all dharmas. In Contemplation of the Mind Sutra, the Buddha taught: “All my tenets are based on the mind that is the source of all dharmas.” The mind has brought about the Buddhas, the Heaven, or the Hell. It is the main driving force that makes us happy or sorrowful, cheerful or sad, liberated or doomed. A Japanese term “Kokoro” for heart, mind, soul and spirit. Ancient people believed that ‘kokoro’ is in the chest area. In Zen, it means either the mind of a person in the sense of all his powers of consciousness, mind, heart and spirit, or else absolutely reality, the mind beyond the distinction between mind and matter. It is for the sake of giving practitioners an easier understanding of Mind, Buddhist teachers usually divide the mind into aspects or layers, but to Zen, Mind is one great Whole, without parts or divisions. The manifesting, illuminating, and nonsubstantial characteristics of Mind exist simultaneously and constantly, inseparable and indivisible in their totality.

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Diamonds:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the realm of the first jhana (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on ten Diamonds. ***Ten Diamond-like States of Mind (Ten indestructible minds):*** Diamond mind or diamond heart, that of a Bodhisattva, i.e. infrangible, unmoved by illusion. Ten Diamond-like States of Mind or ten indestructible minds or ten characteristics of the “Diamond heart” as developed by a Bodhisattva (ten realizations of a diamond-like mind or ten realizations of an indestructible mind): complete insight into all truth, saving of all creatures, the glorifying of all Buddha-worlds, transference of his good deeds, services of all Buddhas, realization of the truth of all Buddha-laws, manifestation of all patience and endurance,

unflagging devotion to his vocation, perfection of his work, and aiding to all fulfill their vows and accomplish their spiritual ends. These ten minds have direct association with ten kinds of adamant mind of commitment to universal enlightenment in Chapter 38 of the Flower Adornment Sutra. Enlightening Beings who abide by these can attain the indestructible supreme spiritual knowledge of Buddhas. The first adamant mind of commitment to universal enlightenment states that Enlightening Beings think all truths are boundless and inexhaustible. They should realize these truths thoroughly by means of knowledge comprehending past, present and future. The second adamant mind states that there are infinite sentient beings even on a point the size of a hairtip, to say nothing of in all universe. No matter how many sentient beings, they should calm them and liberate them by means of unexcelled nirvana. The third adamant mind states that the worlds of the ten directions are measureless, limitless, inexhaustible; they shall adorn them all with the finest adornments of the Buddha-lands, with all the adornments being truly real. The fourth adamant mind states that sentient beings are measureless, boundless, limitless, inexhaustible; Enlightening Beings should dedicate all roots of goodness to them and illumine them with the light of unexcelled knowledge. The fifth adamant mind states that the Buddhas are infinite, boundless, unlimited, inexhaustible. Enlightening beings should dedicate the roots of goodness, they plant to offer to them. They cause those roots of goodness to reach everywhere, with no lack. After that they will attain unexcelled complete perfect enlightenment. The sixth adamant mind states that seeing all Buddhas and hearing their teachings Enlightening Beings become very joyful, not attach to their own bodies or to the bodies of Buddhas. They understand the body of a Buddha is neither real nor unreal; neither existent nor nonexistent, not of a particular nature, not without nature, not material, not immaterial, not form, not formless, not born, not extinct, really without existence yet not destroying existence, cannot be grasped through any nature or characteristic at all. The seventh adamant mind states that if any one should revile or beat Enlightening Beings, cut off their hands or feet, gouge out their eyes, or even cut off their heads, Enlightening Beings are able to bear it all and never become angry or vicious as a result of this. They cultivate the practices of Enlightening Beings for countless eons, and taking care of sentient beings, never abandoning them. Why? Enlightening Beings have already observed all things to be non-dual, their minds are undisturbed. They can give up their own bodies and endure those pains. The eighth adamant mind states that the ages of the future are infinite, boundless, inexhaustible, limitless. They should travel the path of Enlightening Beings throughout those ages in one world and teaching sentient beings. Do the same in all worlds in the space of the cosmos, without fright or fear. This is the way

the path of Enlightening Beings should be in principle, cultivated for the sake of all sentient beings. The ninth adamantine mind states that unexcelled complete perfect enlightenment is based on the mind. If the mind is pure and clear, one can fulfill all roots of goodness and will surely attain freedom in enlightenment. If they wish to attain supreme consummate enlightenment, they can do so at will. If they wish to annihilate all grasping of objects, they can do that at will. Yet they do not annihilate because they want to reach the ultimate end of enlightenment of the Buddhas. They also do not immediately realize supreme enlightenment, in order to fulfill their original vow to carry out the practice of enlightening beings through all worlds and enlighten sentient beings. The tenth adamantine mind states that Enlightening Beings know Buddha is ungraspable, Enlightenment is ungraspable, Enlightening Beings are ungraspable, all things are ungraspable, sentient beings are ungraspable, the mind is ungraspable, action is ungraspable, the past is ungraspable, the future is ungraspable, the present is ungraspable, all worlds are ungraspable, and the created and uncreated are ungraspable. Knowing this, Enlightening Beings dwell in quiescence, dwell in profundity, dwell in silent extinction, dwell in noncontention, dwell in speechlessness, dwell in nonduality, dwell in incomparability, dwell in essence, dwell in truth, dwell in liberation, dwell in nirvana, and dwell in absolute reality. Yet they do not give up any of their great vows, do not give up the will for omniscience, do not give up the deeds of Enlightening Beings, do not give up teaching sentient beings, do not give up the transcendent ways, do not give up taming sentient beings, do not give up serving Buddhas, do not give up explaining truth, do not give up adorning the world. Why? Because Great Enlightening Beings have made their great vows. Though they comprehend the characteristics of all things, their great kindness and compassion increase. They cultivate measureless virtues. Their minds do not abandon sentient beings, because while things have no absolute existence, ordinary or ignorant beings do not realize this. Enlightening Beings are committed to enlightening them so that they clearly comprehend the nature of things. All Buddhas rest peacefully in quiescence, yet by great compassion they teach in the world ceaselessly. Reflecting on this, Enlightening Beings will not abandon sentient beings, not abandon great compassion. They have already developed great commitment and have vowed to certainly benefit all sentient beings. They accumulate all roots of goodness; persist in appropriate dedication; develop profound wisdom, accommodate all sentient beings, and be impartial toward all sentient beings. They speak truthfully, without falsehood; vow to give all sentient beings the supremely great teaching; vow to perpetuate the lineage of all Buddhas. As long as all sentient beings are not yet liberated, are not yet enlightened, and

have not yet realized Buddhahood, the Enlightening Beings' great undertaking is not completed and they will not give up great compassion.

Notes:

- (1) According to dictionary, "heaven" means the dwelling place of the deity. However, for a Buddhist, both heaven and hell are right here, right in this world. That is to say you can create your own heaven or hell right here in this world. It's ridiculous to create all kinds of unwholesome deeds, then simply with faith or praying you can create a heaven. Buddhist belief in heaven is simple, if you live and act according to moral principles, you can create your own heaven right here in this world. If not, you can also create the hell on this earth itself. According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, in the sets of four things, there are Four Jhanas or four stages of of mystic meditation, whereby the believer's mind is purged from all earthly emotions, and detached as it were from his body, which remains plunged in a profound trance. These are four heavenly regions which practitioners try to reach. Pathamajjhanabhumi or the first stage is the first region or the first jhana, as large as the whole universe. The inhabitants in this region are without gustatory (tasting) or olfactory (smelling) organs, not needing food, but possess the other four of the six organs. Heaven beings in this Heaven are free from all sexual desires; nevertheless, they still have other desires. This is the ground of joy of separation from production. The first dhyana has one world with one moon, one meru, four continents and six devalokas. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, the Buddha told Ananda about the Pathamajjhanabhumi as follows: "Ananda! Those who flow to these three superior levels in the Pathamajjhanabhumi (first dhyana) will not be oppressed by any suffering or affliction. Although they have not developed proper samadhi, their minds are pure to the point that they are not moved by outflows." As mentioned above, here sentient beings, detached from all sense-desires, detached from unwholesome mental states (passionate desires and certain unwholesome thoughts like sensuous lust, ill-will, languor, worry, restlessness, and doubt are discarded), enters and remains in the first jhana, which is with thinking and pondering, born of detachment, filled with delight and joy (seated cross-legged, the practiser concentrates his mind upon a single thought. Gradually his soul becomes filled with a supernatural ecstasy and serenity; however, his mind is still reasoning in this stage). *Sublevels of the First Dhyana Heaven*: First, Brahma-purohita. According to the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, all those in the world who cultivate their minds but do not avail themselves of dhyana and so have no wisdom, can only control their bodies so as to not engage in sexual desire. Whether walking or sitting, or in their thoughts, they are totally devoid of it. Since they do not give rise to defiling love, they do not remain in the realm of desire. These people can, in response to their thought, take on bodies of Brahma beings. They are among those in the Heaven of Multitudes of Brahma. Second, Brahma-parisadya. According to the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those whose hearts of desire have already been cast aside, the mind apart from desire manifests. They have a fond regard for the rules of discipline and delight in being in accord with them. These people can practice the Brahma virtue at all times, and they are among those in the Heaven of the Ministers of Brahma. Third, Mahabrahmana. According to the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those whose bodies and minds are wonderfully perfect, and whose awesome deportment (attitude) is not in the least deficient, are pure in the prohibitive precepts and have a thorough understanding of them as well. At all times these people can govern the Brahma Multitudes as great Brahma Lords, and they are among those in the great Brahma Heaven.

Chapter Fifteen

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Kinds of Endurance in the Realm of the Second Jhana

I. An Overview & Meanings of Endurance in Buddhist Teachings:

Endurance is one of the most important qualities in nowadays society. If we do not have the ability to endure, we cannot cultivate the Way. Sakyamuni Buddha was endowed with all the virtues and became the Buddha through his constant practice. No matter what biography of Sakyamuni Buddha we read or which of the sutras, we find that nowhere is it recorded that the Buddha ever became angry. However severely he was persecuted and however coldly his disciples turned against him and departed from him, he was always sympathetic and compassionate. As Buddhists, we should always remember that: “No action that makes Sakyamuni Buddha more disappointed than when we become angry about something and we reproach others or when we blame others for our own wrongs.” It does not really matter whether you sit in meditation or recite the Buddha’s name or recite the name of Bodhisattva Kuan-Shi-Yin, we need to have patience before we can succeed. If we lack patience, then we will never be able to cultivate any Dharma-door successfully. If we do not have patience we always feel that everything is wrong and bad. Nothing ever suits us. In short, if we are able to practice the “endurance” of the Bodhisattvas, we cease to become angry or reproachful toward others, or toward anything in the universe. We are apt to complain about the weather when it rains or when it shines, and to grumble about the dust when we have a day with fine weather. However, when through “endurance” we attain a calm and untroubled mind, we become thankful for both the rain and the sun. Then our minds become free from changes in our circumstances.

Patience means patiently endure the things that do not turn out the way you wish them to. “Kshanti” generally translated “patience,” or “resignation,” or “humility,” when it is one of the six Paramitas. But

when it occurs in connection with the dharma that is unborn, it would be rather translated “acceptance,” or “recognition,” or “submission.” “Ksanti” is a Sanskrit term for an “attitude of forbearance,” one of the six paramitas. In Mahayana it is the third of the “perfection” that a Bodhisattva cultivates on the path to Buddhahood. Endurance is an especially important quality in Buddhism. Patience is one of the most attributes of a Buddhist practitioner. Patience is inner calm and strength that enables us to act clearly in any difficult situation. The Buddha always teaches his disciples: “If you try to rub two pieces of wood together to get fire, but before fire is produced, you stop to do something else, only to resume later, you would never obtain fire. Likewise, a person who cultivates sporadically, e.g., during retreats or on weekends, but neglects daily practice, can never achieve lasting results. According to the Abhidharmakosa, “Kshanti” is used in a way contrasted to Jnana. Kshanti is not knowledge of certainty which Jnana is, for in Kshanti doubt has not yet been entirely uprooted.

Endurance must be cultivated in all circumstances. First, endurance in adverse circumstances. Patience is of utmost importance. We must endure the things that we ordinarily find unendurable. For instance, maybe we do not want to put up with a scolding, but if someone scold us, we should be happy about it. Perhaps we do not want to be beaten, but if someone beats us, we should be even happier. Perhaps we do not wish to die, because life is very precious. However, if someone wants to kill us, we should think thus: “This death can deliver us from the karmic obstacles of this life. He is truly our wise teacher.” Second, endurance in the religious state. Zen practitioner should sit in meditation until obtaining great samadhi. A person who cultivates the Dharma-door of reciting the Buddha’s name, he should be constantly mindful of the phrase “Namo Amitabha Buddha,” and never stop reciting it. Rain or shine, he should always recite the same phrase. We can only measure our level of attainment and patience of the body and mind when we are contempt, slandered, under calamities, under injustice and all other obstacles. If we want to accomplish the Bodhisattvahood, we should always be forbearing in both the body and the mind. Realization of the Dharma of non-appearance is called “Anutpattikadharmakshanti”. Calm rest, as a Bodhisattva, in the assurance of no rebirth. The stage of endurance, or patient meditation,

that has reached the state where phenomenal illusion ceases to arise, through entry into the realization of the Void, or noumenal of all things. This is the recognition that nothing has been born or created in this world, that when things are seen from the point of view of absolute knowledge, they are Nirvana themselves, are not at all subject to birth and death. When one gains “Anutpattikadharmakshanti”, one has realized the ultimate truth of Buddhism.

In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: “As an elephant in the battlefield endures the arrows shot from a bow, I shall withstand abuse in the same manner. Truly, most common people are undisciplined (who are jealous of the disciplined) (Dharmapada 320). To lead a tamed elephant in battle is good. To tame an elephant for the king to ride it better. He who tames himself to endure harsh words patiently is the best among men (Dharmapada 321).” According to the Sutra In Forty-Two Sections, Chapter 15, a Sramana asked the Buddha: “What is the greatest strength? What is the utmost brilliance?” The Buddha said: “Patience under insult is the greatest strength because those who are patient do not harbor hatred and they are increasingly peaceful and settled. Those who are patient are without evil and will certainly be honored among people. To put an end to the mind’s defilements so that it is pure and untainted is the utmost brilliance. When there is nothing in any of the ten directions throughout existence, from before the formation of heaven and earth, until this very day, that you do not see, know or hear, when all-wisdom is obtained (achieved), that can be called brilliance.”

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Ten Kinds of Endurance in the Realm of the Second Jhana:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the realm of the second jhana (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on ten kinds of acceptance. Enlightening Beings who attain these ten acceptances will manage to arrive at the stage of unhindered acceptance. They are acceptance of the voice of the teaching, conformative acceptance, acceptance of the nonorigination of all things, acceptance of illusoriness, acceptance of being miragelike, acceptance of being dreamlike, acceptance of being echolike, acceptance of being like a reflection, acceptance of being fanthomlike, and acceptance of being spacelike. These ten acceptances

have direct association with ten kinds of pure tolerance of Great Enlightening Beings in Chapter 38 of the Flower Adornment Sutra. Enlightening Beings who abide by these can attain all Buddhas' supreme tolerance of truth, understanding without depending on another. First, pure tolerance calmly enduring slander and vilification, to protect sentient beings. Second, pure tolerance calmly enduring weapons, to protect self and others. Third, pure tolerance not arousing anger and viciousness, the mind being unshakable. Fourth, pure tolerance not attacking the low, being magnanimous when above. Fifth, pure tolerance saving all who come for refuge, giving up one's own life. Sixth, pure tolerance free from conceit, not slighting the uncultivated. Seventh, pure tolerance not becoming angered at injury, because of observation of illusoriness. Eighth, pure tolerance not revenging offenses, because of not seeing self and other. Ninth, pure tolerance not following afflictions, being detached from all objects. Tenth, pure tolerance knowing all things have no origin, in accord with the true knowledge of Enlightening Beings, entering the realm of universal knowledge without depending on the instruction of another.

Notes:

- (1) According to dictionary, "heaven" means the dwelling place of the deity. However, for a Buddhist, both heaven and hell are right here, right in this world. That is to say you can create your own heaven or hell right here in this world. It's ridiculous to create all kinds of unwholesome deeds, then simply with faith or praying you can create a heaven. Buddhist belief in heaven is simple, if you live and act according to moral principles, you can create your own heaven right here in this world. If not, you can also create the hell on this earth itself. According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, in the sets of four things, there are Four Jhanas or four stages of of mystic meditation, whereby the believer's mind is purged from all earthly emotions, and detached as it were from his body, which remains plunged in a profound trance. These are four heavenly regions which practitioners try to reach. **The second stage is the second region or the second jhana**, equal to a small chilio cosmos. The inhabitants in this region have ceased to require the five physical organs, possessing only the organ of mind. This is the ground of joy of production of samadhi. The second dhyana has one thousand times the worlds of the first. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, the Buddha told Ananda about the Dutiyajjhanabhumi as follows: "Ananda! Those who flow to these

three superior levels in the second dhyana will not be oppressed by worries or vexations. Although they have not developed proper samadhi, their minds are pure to the point that they have subdued their coarser outflows." As mentioned above, here a monk, who is subsiding of thinking and pondering, by gaining inner tranquility and oneness of mind, he enters and remains in the second jhana (all intellectual activities are suppressed, tranquility and one-pointedness of mind developed), which is without thinking and pondering, born of concentration, filled with delight and joy (concentrating his mind on the same subject, he frees it from reasoning, the ecstasy and serenity remaining). *Sublevels of the Second Dhyana Heaven*: First, Parittabha or Minor Light Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those beyond the Brahma Heavens gather in and govern the Brahma beings, for their Brahma conduct is perfect and fulfilled. Unmoving and with settled minds, they produce light in profound stillness, and they are among those in the Heaven of Lesser Light. Second, Apramanabha or Infinite Light Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those whose lights illumine each other in an endless dazzling blaze shine throughout the realms of the ten directions so that everything becomes like crystal. They are among those in the Heaven of Limitless Light. Third, Abhasvara or Utmost Light Purity Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those who take in and hold the light to perfection accomplish the substance of the teaching. Crating and transforming the purity into endless responses and functions, they are among those in the Light-Sound Heaven or the Utmost Light Purity Heaven.

Chapter Sixteen

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Bodhisattvas' Ten Resolves in the Realm of the Third Jhana

I. An Overview & Meanings of Resolve in Buddhism:

“Prani (Praniddhana)” is a Sanskrit term for “Aspiration”. In general, this term refers to the fulfillment of religious vows and developing a correct attitude toward religious practice. A bodhisattva vow, which is the first step on the way to enlightenment. A vow to oneself as self-dedication, usually bodhisattva vows above to seek Bodhi and below to save beings or to save all beings before benefiting from his own enlightenment or entering into nirvana. In Mahayana Buddhism, “Praniddhana” is the seventh in the tenfold list of Paramitas that a Bodhisattva cultivates during the path to Buddhahood. Vow is something that comes from the heart and soul, a deep-rooted promise, swearing to be unrelenting in seeking to attain a goal. This is having a certain mind-set or something one wishes to achieve and never give up until the objective is realized. Thus, there should be absolutely no reason whatsoever that should cause one to regress or give up that vow or promise. Sincere Buddhists should vow to follow the teachings to cultivate to become Buddhas, then to use the magnificent Dharma of enlightenment of the Buddhas and vow to give them to all sentient beings to abandon their ignorance to cross over to enlightenment, to abandon delusion to follow truths. According to the Pureland Buddhism, Vow is to wish sincerely, praying to find liberation from the sufferings of this saha World, to gain rebirth to the peaceful Ultimate Bliss World. According to the Pure Land Sect, devout Buddhists should make vow to benefit self and others, and to fulfil the vow so as to be born in the Pure Land of Amitabha Buddha. This is the third of the five doors or ways of entering the Pure Land. Devoted Buddhists should always vow: “Awaken mind with a longing for Bodhicitta, deeply believe in the law of Cause and Effect, recite Mahayana sutras, encourage other cultivators and save other sentient beings.”

The power of vows eradicates heavy karma, wipes away all illnesses of mind and body at their karmic source, subdues demons and

can move gods and humans to respect. Thus, devoted Buddhists should be issued from the realm of the Buddha-teaching, always accomplish the preservation of the Buddha-teaching, vow to sustain the lineage of Buddhas, be oriented toward rebirth in the family of Buddhas, and seek omniscient knowledge. All Buddhists want to cross the sea of sufferings and afflictions while vows are like a boat which can carry them across the sea of birth and death to the other shore of Nirvana. Some Buddhists learn to practice special vows from Avalokitesvara Bodhisattva, Medicine Buddha or Amitabha Buddha, etc. This is good, but these vows are still their special vows. We must make our own vows. When set up our own vows that means we have our own aim to reach in cultivation. Besides, once we have made our vows, even if we want to slack off in our cultivation, we won't dare, because the vows were already sealed in our mind.

According to the Pure Land Sect, there are two main aspects to making the joyous vows of "rescuing oneself and others." The first is that the practitioner should clearly realize the goal of rebirth; and the second is that the practitioner wants to ensure of rebirth in the Pure Land. The goal of our cultivation is to seek escape from suffering for him/herself and all sentient beings. He/She should think thus: 'My own strength is limited, I am still bound by karma; moreover, in this evil, defiled life, the circumstances and conditions leading to afflictions are overpowering. That is why other sentient beings and myself are drowning in the river of delusion, wandering along the evil paths from time immemorial. The wheel of birth and death is spinning without end; how can I find a way to rescue myself and others in a safe, sure manner? There is but one solution, it is to seek rebirth in the Pure Land, draw close to the Buddhas and Bodhisattvas, and relying on the supremely auspicious environment of that realm, engaging in cultivation and attain the Tolerance of Non-Birth. Only then can I enter the evil world to rescue sentient beings. The Treatise on Rebirth states: "To develop the Bodhi-Mind is precisely to seek Buddhahood; to seek Buddhahood is to develop the Mind of rescuing sentient beings; and the Mind of rescuing sentient beings is none other than the Mind that gathers all beings and helps them achieve rebirth in the Pure Land. Moreover, to ensure rebirth, we should perfect two practices; first is abandoning the three things that hinder enlightenment, second is

abiding by the three things that foster enlightenment. How can we abandon the things that hinder enlightenment and abide by the things that foster enlightenment? It is precisely by seeking rebirth in the Western Pure Land, remaining constantly near the Buddhas and cultivating the Dharmas until Tolerance of Non-Birth is reached. At that point, we may sail the boat of great vows at will, enter the sea of Birth and Death and rescue sentient beings with wisdom and compassion 'adapting to conditions but fundamentally unchanging,' free and unimpeded. The practitioner must abandon the three things that hinder enlightenment: the mind of seeking our own peace and happiness, ego-grasping and attachment to our own bodies. The practitioner should follow the path of wisdom and leave all such thoughts far behind; the mind of abandoning and failing to rescue sentient beings from suffering. The practitioner should follow the path of compassion and leave all such thoughts far behind; the mind of exclusively seeking respect and offerings, without seeking ways to benefit sentient beings and bring them peace and happiness. The practitioner should follow the path of expedients and leave all such thoughts far behind. The practitioner must obtain the three things that foster enlightenment: 1) Undefined Pure Mind of not seeking personal happiness, that is enlightenment is the state of undefiled purity. If we seek after personal pleasure, body and Mind are defiled and obstruct the path of enlightenment. Therefore, the undefiled Pure Mind is called consonant with enlightenment. 2) Pure Mind at Peace, or the mind that seeks to rescue all sentient beings from suffering. This is because Bodhi is the undefiled Pure Mind which gives peace and happiness to sentient beings. If we are not rescuing sentient beings and helping them escape the sufferings of Birth and death, we are going to counter to Bodhi path. Therefore, a Mind focussed on saving others, bringing them peace and happiness, is call consonant with enlightenment. 3) A 'Blissful Pure Mind,' or the mind that seeks to help sentient beings achieve Great Nirvana. Because Great Nirvana is the ultimate, eternally blissful realm. If we do not help sentient beings achieve it, we obstruct the Bodhi path. Hence the Mind which seeks to help sentient beings attain eternal bliss is called consonant with enlightenment. The cultivator should contemplate the wholesome characteristics of the Pure Land and auspicious features of Amitabha Buddha: The cultivator

should contemplate the auspicious features of Amitabha Buddha. Amitabha Buddha possesses a resplendent, golden Reward Body, replete with 84,000 major characteristics, each characteristic having 84,000 minor auspicious signs, each sign beaming 84,000 rays of light which illuminate the entire Dharma Realm and gather in those sentient beings who recite the Buddha's name. The Western Pure Land is adorned with seven treasures, as explained in the Pure Land sutras. In addition, when practicing charity, keeping the precepts and performing all kinds of good deeds, Pure Land practitioners should always dedicate the merits toward rebirth in the Pure Land for themselves and all other sentient beings.

Besides, practitioners should also vow to attain bodhi, and save all beings to the other shore. The Bodhisattva pranidhana was inspired by his recognition of the terrible suffering of the world. There are four magnanimous Vows or four all-encompassing vows, while Amitabha Buddha has forty-eight vows. According to Mahayana tradition, there are three great Bodhisattvas: Avalokitesvara, Manjusri, and Samantabhadra who represent respectively the great compassion, wisdom and vows of all Buddhas. In the vows of Bodhisattvas, the compassionate zeal of the ideal Bodhisattva whose only concern in life is to relieve the pains and burdens of all sentient beings, and to bestow upon them true happiness through the achievement of Buddhahood. A Bodhisattva is aspirant of the achievement of perfect wisdom in a gruesome world of beings that know no solution because of the frame of their unrestive mind. The Bodhisattva has perfect insight into the conditioned world. It is because of the luminosity which he bears toward all out of his boundless openness. The "Sundry Practices" is the method in which the cultivator engages in many practices seeking rebirth in the Pure Land. Thus, in the Avatamsaka Sutra, the Bodhisattva Samantabhadra advises and urges the youth Sudhana (Good Wealth) and the Ocean-Wide Great Assembly to seek rebirth through the Ten Great Vows. Each Vow contains the clause: "When the realm of empty space is exhausted, my Vows will be exhausted. But because the realm of empty space is inexhaustible, my Vows will never end. In the same way, when the realm of living beings, the karma of living beings, and the afflictions of living beings are exhausted, my Vows will be exhausted. But the realms of living beings, the karma of living beings, and the afflictions of living beings are inexhaustible. Therefore, my Vows are inexhaustible. They continue in thought after thought without cease. My body, mouth and mind never tire of doing these deeds. At the time of death, when all family and possessions are left behind and all faculties disintegrate, only these great vows will follow close behind, and in an instant, the practitioner will be reborn

in the Pure Land. Besides, practitioners should be filial toward their parents and support them; serve and respect their teachers and elders; be of compassionate heart and abstain from doing harm; and cultivate the ten virtuous actions. They should accept and hold on to their refuge in the Three Jewels; perfectly observe all moral precepts and not lower their dignity nor neglect ceremonial observances. They should awaken in their Minds a longing for Bodhi, deeply believe in the principle of cause and effect, recite Mahayana sutras, persuade and encourage other practitioners. Furthermore, those who perform good deeds, carrying them out to perfection and transferring the merits with a Mind of faith and vows, can all achieve rebirth as well. These meritorious acts include erecting temples, stupas and statues of the Buddhas, worshipping the Buddhas, burning incense, offering flowers, donating pennants and other decorations to Buddhist temples, making offerings of food to the clergy, practicing charity, etc.

According to *The Studies in The Lankavatara Sutra*, written by Zen Master D.T. Suzuki, according to his transcendental insight into the truth of things, the Bodhisattva knows that it is beyond all predicates and not at all subject to any form of description, but his heart full of compassion and love for all beings who are unable to step out of the dualistic whirlpools of “becoming” or not becoming,” he directs his vows towards their salvation and emancipation. His own heart is free from such attachments as are ordinarily cherished by the unemancipated, but that which feels persists, for his insight has not destroyed this, and hence his *Purvapranidhana*, his *Upayakausalya*, his *Nirmanakaya*. Yet all that he does for the maturity of all beings in response to their needs, is like the moon reflection in water, showing himself in all forms and appearances he preaches to them on the Dharma. His activity is what is in Mahayana phraseology called “*Anabhogacarya*,” deeds that are effortless, effectless, and purposeless. When the Bodhisattva enters upon the first stage called Joy or *Pramudita*, in the career of his spiritual discipline, he makes the following solemn vows, ten in number, which, flowing out of his most earnest determined will, are as all-inclusive as the whole universe, extending to the extremity of space itself, reaching the end of time, exhausting all the number of kalpas or ages, and functioning uninterruptedly as long as there is the appearance of a Buddha: to honour and serve all the Buddhas, one and all without a single exception; to work for the preservation and perpetuation of the teaching of all the Buddhas; to be present at the appearance of each Buddha, wherever and whenever it may be; to practice the proper conduct of Bodhisattvahood which is wide and measureless, imperishable and free from impurities, and to extend the Virtues of Perfection (*paramitas*) towards all beings; to induce all beings in the most comprehensive sense of the term to turn to the teaching of the Buddhas so that they may find their final abode of

peace in the wisdom of the all-wise ones; to have an inner perception of the universe, wide and inexhaustible, in all its possible multitudinousness; to realize the most closely interpenetrating relationship of each and all, of all and each, and to make everyland of beings immaculate as a Buddha-land; to be united with all the Bodhisattvas in oneness of intention, to become intimately acquainted with the dignity, understanding, and psychic condition of the Tathagatas, so that the Bodhisattva can enter any society of beings and accomplish the Mahayana which is beyond thought; to evolve the never-receding wheel whereby to carry out his work of universal salvation, by making himself like unto the great lord of medicine or wish-fulfilling gem; and to realize the great supreme enlightenment in all the worlds, by going through the stages of Buddhahood, and fulfilling the wishes of all beings with one voice, and while showing himself to be in Nirvana, not to cease from practicing the objects of Bodhisattvahood.

II. Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Bodhisattvas' Ten Resolves in the Realm of the Third Jhana:

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the realm of the third heaven (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on Bodhisattvas' Ten Resolves. ***Ten Great Vows of Universal Virtue Bodhisattva:*** The Universal Virtue Bodhisattva, one of the five Dhyani-Bodhisattvas or the All-Compassionate One of perfect Activity. "He Who Is All-Pervadingly Good" or "He whose Beneficence Is Everywhere." One of the most important Bodhisattvas of Mahayana Buddhism. He also embodies calm action, compassion, and deep-seated wisdom. He is venerated as the protector of all those who teach the dharma and is regarded as an embodiment of the wisdom of essential sameness and difference. He often appears riding a white six-tusked elephant (the elephant being noted for its tranquility and wisdom) with Manjusri on the (right) side of Sakyamuni. He is also called Universal sagacity, or lord of the fundamental law, the dhyana, and the practice of all Buddhas. He represents the fundamental law, and is the patron of the Lotus Sutra and its devotees, and has close connection with the Hua-Yen Sutra. His region is in the east. According to the Lotus Sutra, Chapter Universal Door, Bodhisattva Samantabhadra's ten vows: *First is to worship and respect all Buddhas:* By the vow to pay reverence to all the Buddhas is meant that a Bodhisattva will pay reverence to an inconceivable number of Buddhas in the past, present and future with his pure body, speech and mind. He will salute every one of them without feeling fatigue until the end of the universe. *Second is to make praise to The Thus Come Ones:* By the vow to praise all the Tathagatas is meant that a Bodhisattva will always praise an innumerable number of Tathagatas in the

past, present and future. A Bodhisattva will present himself before each one of these Buddhas with a deep understanding and a clear perception. The ocean of merits of the Tathagata will then be praised with an exquisite and eloquent tongue, each tongue expressing a sea of inexhaustible voices, and each voice articulating a sea of words in every form possible. A Bodhisattva will go on to praise the Buddhas without feeling fatigue and without cessation until the end of the world. *Third is to practice profoundly (vastly) the giving offerings:* To cultivate the giving of offerings by the vow to make all kinds of offerings to the Buddhas is meant that a Bodhisattva will always make offerings to an inconceivable number of Buddhas in the past, present, and future. The offering consists of flowers, wreaths, music, umbrellas, garments, and all kinds of incense and ointment, and many other things, and all these offerings in such a large quantity as is equal to clouds or to a mountain. A Bodhisattva will also burn before every one of the innumerable Buddhas all sorts of oil in such a measure as compares to an ocean. But of all the offerings one could thus make to a Buddha the best is that of the Dharma, which is to say, disciplining oneself according to the teaching, benefitting all beings, accepting all beings, suffering pains for all beings, maturing every root of goodness, carrying out all the works of a Bodhisattva, and at the same time not keeping himself away from the thought of enlightenment. The material offerings, no matter how big, are not equal even to an infinitesimal fraction of the moral offerings (dharmapuja), because all Buddhas are born of moral offerings, because these are the true offerings, because the practicing of the Dharma means the perfection of an offering one could make to a Buddha. A Bodhisattva will continuously make offerings to every one of the innumerable Buddhas without feeling fatigue. *Fourth is to repent and reform all karmic hindrances (faults):* The vow to repent all one's own sins (committed by oneself) and thereby to get rid of one's karma-hindrance is necessary because whatever sins committed by us are due to our greed, anger, and ignorance done by the body, speech, and mind. Now we make full confession and repent. According to the Buddha, all these sins, if they were really substantial, are thought to have filled the universe to its utmost ends and even over-flowing. Now a Bodhisattva vows to repent without reserve from the depth of his heart, vowing that such sins will never be committed again by him, for from now on, he will always abide in the pure precepts amass every sort of merit. And of this he will never get tired even to the end of the world. *Fifth is to rejoice and follow in merit and virtue:* To compliantly rejoice in merit and virtue by the vow to rejoice and follow the merit and virtue is meant that a Bodhisattva should always be in sympathy with all beings for whatever good things they think, or feel, or do. All the Buddhas had gone through untold hardships before they attained full enlightenment. Since their first awakening of the thought of

enlightenment, they never hesitated to accumulate all the merit that tended towards the attainment of the goal of their life, they never raised a thought of egotism even when they had to sacrifice their life and all that belonged to them. Now a Bodhisattva vows to feel a sympathetic joy for all these doings of the Buddhas. He does this not only with the Buddhas, but for every possible deed of merit, however significant, executed by any being in the path of existence, of any class of truth-seekers. A Bodhisattva with this vow will never be tired of putting it into practice till the end of the world. *Sixth is to request that the Dharma wheel be turned:* To request the turning of the Dharma Wheel by the vow that a Bodhisattva will ask every one of the inconceivable numbers of Buddhas to revolve the Wheel of the Dharma, without feeling tired and without cease until the end of the world. *Seventh is to request that the Buddha remain in the world:* Request the Buddhas dwell in the world, a Bodhisattva vows to ask every one of the inconceivable numbers of Buddhas not to enter into Nirvana if any is so disposed. He will ask this even of any Bodhisattvas, Arhats, Sravakas, or Pratyekabuddhas; for he wishes these superior beings to continue to live in the world and keep on benefitting all beings. He will keep requesting this until the end of the world. *Eighth is to follow the Buddha's teaching always:* To follow the Buddhas in study, a Bodhisattva vows to learn from the life of a Buddha who in this Saha World ever since his awakening of the thought of enlightenment have never ceased from exercising himself ungrudgingly, not even sparing his own life, for the sake of universal salvation. His reverential attitude towards the Dharma had been such as to make paper of his skin, a brush of his bones, and ink of his blood wherewith he copied the Buddhist sutras to the amount of Mount Sumeru. He cared not even for his life, how much less much less for the throne, for the palaces, gardens, villages, and other external things! By practicing every form of mortification, he finally attained supreme enlightenment under the Bodhi-tree. After this, he manifested all kinds of psychical powers, all kinds of transformations, all aspects of the Buddha-body, and placed himself sometimes among Bodhisattvas, sometimes among Sravakas, and Pratyekabuddhas, sometimes among Kshatriyas, among Brahmans, householders, lay-disciples, and sometimes among Devas, Nagas, human beings, and non-human-beings. Whenever he has found, he preached with perfect eloquence, with a voice like thunder, in order to bring all beings into maturity according to their aspirations. Finally, he showed himself as entering into Nirvana. All these phases of the life of a Buddha, the Bodhisattva is determined to learn as models for his own life. A Bodhisattva should always follow the Buddha's teaching without feeling tired, until the end of the world. *Ninth is to constantly accord with all living beings:* To vow to forever accord with living beings. In this universe, life manifests itself in

innumerable forms, each one differing from another in the way of its birth, in form, in the duration of life, in name, in mental disposition, in intelligence, in aspiration, in inclination, in demeanor, in garment, in food, in social life, in the mode of dwelling, etc. However, no matter different they are, the Bodhisattva vows to live in accordance with the laws that govern everyone of these beings in order to serve them, to minister to their needs, to revere them as his parents, as his teachers, or Arahts, or as Tathagatas, making no distinction among them in this respect. If they are sick, he will be a good physician for them; if they go astray, he will show them the right path; if they are sunk in poverty, he will supply them with a treasure; thus uniformly giving benefits to all beings according to their needs, because a Bodhisattva is convinced that by serving all beings, he is serving all the Buddhas, that by revering all beings, by making them glad, he is revering and gladdening all the Buddhas. A great compassion heart is the substance of Tathagatahood and it is because of all beings that this compassionate heart is awakened, and because of this compassionate heart the thought of enlightenment is awakened, and because of this awakening supreme enlightenment is attained. A Bodhisattva vows to forever accord with all beings without feeling tired until the end of the world. *Tenth is to transfer all merit and virtue universally:* To universally transfer all merit and virtue. Whatever merits the Bodhisattva acquires by paying sincere respect to all the Buddhas and also by practicing all kinds of meritorious deeds as above mentioned, they will all be turned over to the benefits of all beings in the entire universe. He will thus turn all his merits towards making beings feel at ease, free from diseases, turn away from evil doings, practice all deeds of goodness, so that every possible evil may be suppressed and the right road to Nirvana be opened for the gods and men. If there be any beings who are suffering the results of their evil karma committed in the past, the Bodhisattva will be ready to sacrifice himself and bear the pains for the miserable creatures in order to release them from karma and finally make them realize supreme enlightenment. A Bodhisattva vows to transfer all merit and virtue universally without feeling tired until the end of the world. Bodhisattva Samantabhadra is an important figure of the Mahayana Buddhism. As a Bodhisattva in early Mahayana texts, he is said to be the protector of those who propagate the Dharma, and he often portrayed with Vairocana. Iconographically, he is often shown riding on a white elephant with six tusks, and he commonly holds a lotus, a wish-fulfilling jewel, or a scroll. In Vajrayana he is often said to be the “primordial buddha” (Adi-Buddha) and the embodiment of the “truth body” (Dharma-kaya). In tantric depictions, he has dark blue skin (symbolic of emptiness) and is commonly shown in sexual embrace with his consort Samantabhadri. In Buddhism, Samantabhadra embodies calm action, compassion, and deep-seated wisdom. He is usually

depicted astride a white elephant (the elephant is being noted for its tranquility and wisdom), sitting in attendance on the right of the Buddha; while Manjusri Bodhisattva, with his delusion-cutting vajra sword in one hand, sits on the back of a lion on the Buddha's left side. Manjusri represents awakening, that is, the sudden realization of the lion's vigor is symbolic. When the knowledge acquired through 'awakening' is employed for the benefit of mankind, Samantabhadra's compassion is manifesting itself. Accordingly, each of the Bodhisattvas is an arm of the Buddha, representing respectively, Oneness or Equality and manyness.

Notes:

- (1) According to dictionary, "heaven" means the dwelling place of the deity. However, for a Buddhist, both heaven and hell are right here, right in this world. That is to say you can create your own heaven or hell right here in this world. It's ridiculous to create all kinds of unwholesome deeds, then simply with faith or praying you can create a heaven. Buddhist belief in heaven is simple, if you live and act according to moral principles, you can create your own heaven right here in this world. If not, you can also create the hell on this earth itself. According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, in the sets of four things, there are Four Jhanas or four stages of of mystic meditation, whereby the believer's mind is purged from all earthly emotions, and detached as it were from his body, which remains plunged in a profound trance. These are four heavenly regions which practitioners try to reach. **The Tatiyajjhanabhumi:** The third stage is the third region or the third jhana, equal to a middling chiliocosmos. The inhabitants in this region still have the organ of mind are receptive of great joy. This is the ground of wonderful bliss and cessation of thought. The third has one thousand times the worlds of the second. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, the Buddha told Ananda about the third dhyana as follows: "Ananda! Those who flow to these three superior levels in the third dhyana will be replete with great compliance. Their bodies and minds are at peace, and they obtain limitless bliss. Although they have not obtained proper samadhi, the joy within the tranquility of their minds is total." As mentioned above, here a monk, with the fading away of delight, remaining imperturbable, mindful and clearly aware, he experiences in himself that joy of which the Noble Ones say: "Happy is he who dwells with equanimity and mindfulness." He enters and remains in the third jhana (in this stage he divests himself of ecstasy). The feeling of joy, which is an active sensation, also disappears, while the disposition of happiness still remains in addition to mindful equanimity. *Sublevels of the Third Dhyana Heaven:* First, Parittasubha or Minor (Lesser) Purity Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, Heavenly beings for whom the perfection of light has become sound and who further open out the sound to disclose its wonder discover a subtler level of practice. They penetrate to the bliss of still extinction and are among those in the Heaven of Lesser Purity. Second, Apramanasubha or Infinite (Limitless) Purity Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those in whom the emptiness of purity manifests are led to discover its boundlessness. Their bodies and minds experience light ease, and they accomplish the bliss of still extinction. They are among those in the Heaven of Limitless Purity. Third, Subhakrtsna or Universal or Pervasive Purity Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those for whom the world, the body, and the mind are all perfectly pure have accomplished the virtue of purity, and a superior level emerges. They return to the bliss of still extinction, and they are among those in the Heaven of Pervasive Purity.

Chapter Seventeen

Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Bodhisattvas’ Dharma Door of Minds-Grounds-Precepts in the Realm of the Fourth Jhana

(A) Summaries of Bodhisattvas’ Dharma Door of Minds-Grounds-Precepts in Buddhist Teachings

According to Buddhist teachings, the dharma door or the dharma gate means the doctrine or wisdom of Buddha regarded as the door (method) to enlightenment. The teaching of the Buddha. The meaning is that the dharma is something like a gate, because through it sentient beings attain the enlightenment. As the living have 84,000 delusions, so the Buddha provides 84,000 methods of dealing with them. Knowing that the spiritual level of sentient beings is totally different from one another, the Buddha had allowed his disciples to choose any suitable Dharma they like to practice. A person can practice one or many dharmas, depending on his physical conditions, his free time, since all the dharmas are closely related. Practicing Buddhist Dharma requires continuity, regularity, faith, purpose and determination. Laziness and hurriedness are signs of failure. There is only one path leading to Enlightenment, but, since people differ greatly in terms of health, material conditions, intelligence, character and faith, the Buddha taught more than one path leading to different stages of attainment such as stage of Hearers, that of Pratyeka-buddhas, that of Bodhisattvas, that of laymen, and that of monks and nuns. All of these ways are ways to the Buddhahood. Nobody can reach final attainment without following a path, and no enlightenment can be reached without studying, understanding and practicing.

According to Buddhist teachings, ‘mind-ground’ is another term for the mind. The Mind from which all things spring. The mind is compared to the ground. According to the Sixth Patriarch Hui-Neng, the mind is the source from which all dharmas spring and also the place to which all dharmas return. Disciplinary code or code of monk’s rules in Pratimoksa sutra is the nucleus of the Vinaya-pitaka. It is the oldest part of the Pali Pitaka. “Pratimoksa” is a Sanskrit term for “Individual liberation.” Called Sutra of emancipation or part of the Vinaya-pitaka that contains precepts for bhiksus and bhiksunis. These precepts are recited in an assembly of the whole Order of monks and/or nuns

at every Uposatha or and this is the opportunity for the monks and nuns confess any violations of these rules. However, the rules required a monk or nun who is guilty of any of these offenses is required to confess the matter and submit to the appropriate discipline or penalty from the Order. Different traditions have different Pratimoksas, and the number of rules for monks and nuns varies between 227 and 348. In Mahayana Buddhism, Bhiksus have 250 rules and Bhiksunis have 348 rules; while in Theravada, Bhiksus have 227 rules and Bhiksunis have 348 rules. While Bodhisattvas' Precepts or the commandments for Bodhisattvas mean the commandments or prohibitions for bodhisattvas and monks, including ten primary and 48 secondary precepts.

In Buddhism, Bodhisattvas' precepts mean the precepts of a Mahayana Bodhisattva. There are ten major and 48 minor. Any people can take the Bodhisattva ordination. This is not only with the determination to be free from cyclic existence, but also with the motivation of attaining enlightenment in order to benefit all beings. The Bodhisattva vows work particularly to subdue the selfish attitude. They deal not only with our physical and verbal actions, but also with our thoughts and attitudes. Thus, they're more difficult to keep than the vows for individual liberation. The Bodhisattva ordination is found only in the Mahayana traditions. It may be taken by lay people, monks, and nuns. Although the essence is the same, the enumeration of the precepts varies in the Tibetan and Chinese versions. When taking these precepts, we determine to keep them until attaining enlightenment. To take Bodhisattva vows is entirely voluntary. To take them, we must first understand the advantages of living ethically. There are innumerable benefits, but they may be subsumed by saying that living ethically leads us to liberation and enlightenment and enables us to make our lives useful for others. Some people hesitate to take Bodhisattva precepts because they feel they can't keep them purely. But we shouldn't expect ourselves to be perfect from the outset. If we could protect our precepts without one blemish, we needn't take them, because we'd already be an arhat or a Buddha. Devout Buddhists should always remember that precepts are taken because we can't keep them perfectly. But through trying to, our actions, speech and attitudes will improve. On the contrary, we should not take precepts if we feel we are not ready or incapable of maintaining them. To keep our precepts, we need to be very conscientious and mindful. Should we transgress them, we can employ the four opponent powers: regret, refuge with the altruistic intention, remedial action and the determination not to repeat the negative action... to purify the imprints left on our mindstreams. To devout Buddhists, precepts should be regarded as the ornaments of a sincere practitioner. The Ten Major Precepts or the ten weighty prohibitions. In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, "If one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice)

them, he is not a bodhisattva, nor he is a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart.”

***(B) Sakyamuni Buddha Lectured on Bodhisattvas’
Dharma Door of Minds-Grounds-Precepts in
the Realm of the Fourth Jhana***

According to Brahma-Net Sutra, in the realm of the fourth heaven, in the palace of the Mahesvara-rajā (1), Sakyamuni Buddha lectured on Bodhisattvas’ Dharma Door of Minds-Grounds-Precepts. We have already talked on the Dharma Door of Minds-Grounds in previous chapters, in the following chapters we will mention about the Dharma Door of precepts of Bodhisattvas in the Brahma-Net Sutra.

I. The Ten Bodhisattvas' Major Precepts:

In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, “There are ten major Bodhisattva precepts or the ten weighty prohibitions: not killing, not stealing, precept on sexual misconduct (not to lust), precept on lying and false speech, precept on drinking or selling alcohol beverages, precept on broadcasting the faults of the assembly (not to discuss the faults of other Buddhists), precept on praising oneself and disparaging others (not to praise oneself and disparage others), precept on stinginess and abuse of others, precept on anger and resentment (not to get angry), and precept on slandering the Triple Jewel (not to insult the Three Treasures). If one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice) them, he or she is not a bodhisattva, nor he or she is a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart.” In Zen training, Zen practitioners see the Ten Cardinal Precepts as koan practice. These Buddhist precepts can be seen from two perspectives. For example, the first precepts, “Do not kill,” gives the impression that it just concerns right behavior or morality. While such teaching is needed, those who continue Zen practice and further clarify their insight into emptiness know that, actually, there is no one to do the killing and no one to be killed. From

the ultimate standpoint, "Do not kill" also warns us not to fall into the dualistic view of killing versus not killing. However, it would be a misinterpretation to use this view of the precepts as a pretext for immoral transgression or excess. In contrast to the conventional habit of viewing things from the standpoint of good and bad, the Buddhist sees the world, with all its good and evil, just as it is. Fundamentally, the world is neither good nor bad. Without genuine insight, so-called moral perfection is uninformed and hollow. True insight not only leads to the realization that there is no killers and no one to be killed, it also results in the realization that one simply cannot "kill." Whereas "do not" is an injunction, which may not necessarily lead to enlightened behavior, the "cannot" realization naturally evolves into the deeply rooted stance of "I won't kill." Yet the line separating "do not" (injunction) and "cannot" (realization) seems to dissolve when we see that we are always killing something. We may decide not to kill animals for food, but what about vegetables? And so on with everything else we destroy and discard. If we obeyed the injunction "do not kill" literally, we could not eat, we would starve to death, thus ending up by taking life anyway. How can we overcome this dilemma? When the need arises to take life or destroy, whether it be animal, vegetable, or inanimate object, one should just dwell on "Mu" with all one's heart. Thus each moment we are taking life from some form of existence can be an occasion to be deeply aware of our oneness with the universe in "Mu." Maintaining this attitude is the key point of the Five, Ten, Two Hundred Fifty or Three hundred forty-eight moral precepts. These precepts are not meant to bind or enslave us. Applied with "Mu" insight, they can be a means to emancipation. The Ten Precepts as koan study are no longer just moral injunctions, but constitute a further step on the road toward the complete realization of oneness in our everyday actions. Such realization does not negate the validity of relative values; it simply does not allow relative values to obscure our original freedom, our Buddha-nature.

In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, "As for the ten major Bodhisattva precepts, if one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice) them, he is not a bodhisattva, nor is he a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart." *First, Major Precept on Killing:* A disciple of the Buddha shall not himself kill, encourage others to kill, kill by expedient means, praise killing, rejoice at witnessing killing, or kill through incantation or deviant mantras. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of killing, and shall not intentionally kill any living creature. As a Buddha's disciple, he ought to nurture a mind of compassion and

filial piety, always devising expedient means to rescue and protect all beings. If instead, he fails to restrain himself and kills sentient beings without mercy, he commits a Parajika offense. *Second, Major Precept on Stealing:* A disciple of the Buddha must not himself steal or encourage others to steal, steal by expedient means, steal by means of incantation or deviant mantras. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of stealing. No valuables or possessions, even those belonging to ghosts and spirits or thieves and robbers, be they as small as a needle or a blade of grass, may be stolen. As a Buddha's disciples, he ought to have a mind of mercy, compassion, and filial piety, always helping other people to earn merits and achieve happiness. If instead, he steals the possessions of others, he commits a Parajika offense. *Third, Major Precept on Sexual Misconduct (not to lust):* A disciple of the Buddha must not engage in licentious acts or encourage others to do so. He (a monk) should not have sexual relations with any female; be she a human, animal, deity or spirit, nor create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of such misconduct. Indeed, he must not engage in improper sexual misconduct with anyone. A Buddha's disciple ought to have a mind of filial piety, rescuing all sentient beings and instructing them in the Dharma of purity and chastity. Sexual misconduct is also one of the five basic precepts for householders. If instead, he lacks compassion and encourages others to engage in sexual relations promiscuously, including with animals and even their mothers, daughters, sisters, or other close relatives, he commits a Parajika offense. *Fourth, Major Precept on Lying and False Speech:* A disciple of the Buddha must not himself use false words and speech, or encourage others to lie or lie by expedient means. He should not involve himself in the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of lying, saying that he has seen what he has not seen or vice-versa, or lying implicitly through physical or mental means. As a Buddha's disciple, he ought to maintain Right Speech and Right Views always, and lead all others to maintain them as well. If instead, he causes wrong speech, wrong views or evil karma in others, he commits a Parajika offense. *Fifth, Major Precept on Drinking or Selling Alcohol Beverages:* A disciple of the Buddha must not drink or trade in alcohol beverages or encourage others to do so. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods or karma of drinking or selling any intoxicant whatsoever, for intoxicants are the causes and conditions of all kinds of offenses. As a Buddha's disciple, he ought to help all sentient beings achieve clear wisdom. If instead, he causes them to have upside-down, topsy-turvy thinking, he commits a Parajika offense. *Sixth, Major Precept on Broadcasting the Faults of the Assembly:* Also called not to discuss the faults of other Buddhists. A disciple of the Buddha must not himself broadcast the misdeeds or infractions of Bodhisattva-clerics or Bodhisattva-laypersons, or of ordinary monks and

nuns, nor encourage others to do so. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of discussing the offenses of the Assembly. As a Buddha's disciple, whenever he hears evil persons, externalists or followers of the Two Vehicles speak of practices contrary to the Dharma or contrary to the precepts within the Buddhist community, he should instruct them with a compassionate mind and lead them to develop wholesome faith in the Mahayana. If instead, he discusses the faults and misdeeds that occur within the assembly, he commits a Parajika offense. *Seventh, Major Precept on Praising Oneself and Disparaging Others:* Also called not to praise oneself and disparage others. A disciple of the Buddha shall not praise himself and speak ill of others, or encourage others to do so. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of praising himself and disparaging others. As a disciple of the Buddha, he should be willing to stand in for all sentient beings and endure humiliation and slander, accepting blame and letting sentient beings have all the glory. He should never display his own virtues and conceal the good points of others, thus causing them suffer slander, he commits a Parajika offense. *Eighth, Major Precept on Stinginess and Abuse of others:* A disciple of the Buddha must not be stingy or encourage others to be stingy. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of stinginess. As a Bodhisattva, whenever a destitute person comes for help, he should try his best to help, not to refuse. Besides, he must try to help others understand and practice Dharma. If instead, out of anger and resentment, he denies all assistance, refusing to help even a penny, a needle, a blade of grass, even a single sentence or verse or a phrase of Dharma, but instead scolds and abuses that person, he commits a Parajika offense. *Ninth, Major Precept on Anger and Resentment:* Also called not to get angry. A disciple of the Buddha shall not harbor anger or encourage others to be angry. He should not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of anger. In the contrary, As a disciple of the Buddha, he ought to be compassionate and filial, helping all sentient beings, or even transformation beings (deities and spirits) be happy at all times. If instead, he insults and abuses sentient beings, or even transformation beings such as dieties and spirits, with harsh words, hitting them with his fists or feet, or attacking them with a knife or club, or harbors grudges even when the victim confesses his mistakes and humbly seeks forgiveness in a soft, conciliatory voice, the disciple commits a Parajika offense. *Tenth, Major Precept on Slandering the Triple Jewel:* Also called not to insult the Three Treasures. A Buddha's disciple shall not himself speak ill of the Triple Jewel or encourage others to do so. He must not create the causes, conditions, methods, or karma of slandering. As a devoted Buddhist, when hearing a single word of slander against the Triple Jewel from externalists or evil beings, he experiences a pain similar to that of hundreds of thousands of

spears piercing his heart. How then could he possibly slander the Triple Jewel himself? As a disciple of the Buddha, we are not only always revere the Triple Jewel ourselves, but we also help others understand and revere the Triple Jewel. On the contrary, if a disciple lacks faith and filial piety towards the Triple Jewel, and even assists evil persons or those of wrong views to slander the Triple Jewel, he commits a Parajika offense.

II. Forty-Eight Secondary or Lighter Precepts:

Forty-eight precepts which the Buddha taught all Bodhisattvas in the Brahma-Net Sutra: respect toward Teachers and Friends, not to Drink Intoxicant Substances, not to Deliberately Eat Meat, not to eat the Five Pungent Herbs (tỏi: garlic, hẹ: chives, kiệu: leeks, hành: onions, hưng cừ: cà ri—asafoetida), not to Be Willing to Teach Repentance, not to Fail to Request the Dharma or Make Offerings, not to Fail to Attend Dharma Lectures, not to Deliberately Turn Away from the Mahayana, failing to Care for the Sick (both physical and mental), not to Store Deadly Weapons, not to Serve as an Emissary, not to Do Unlawful Businesses, not to Slander the Buddha Dharma, not to Start Wildfire, not to Teach Non-Mahayana Dharma, not to Expound External Theories for Own Gaining, not to Rely on Others' Powers such as Officials to raise funds, not to serve as a Dharma Transmission Teacher while not understanding sufficiently the Dharma and the Moral Codes, not to Speak with Double-Tongued Speech, fail to Liberate Sentient Beings, not to Return Anger for Anger, Blow for Blow, being Arrogant (Refuse instructions on the sutras and moral codes from Dharma Master on account of his own intelligence) and Refuse to request the Dharma, not to Arrogantly refuse to Answer Dharma Law to Those Who Seek the meaning of Sutras and Moral Codes, fail to Practice Mahayana Teachings, to Serve as an Unskilled Abbot or Unskilled Leadership of the Assembly, not to Accept Personal Offerings. All offerings should belong to the Sangha or monasteries. Therefore, to accept personal offerings is a form of stealing the possessions of the Sangha, not to Accept any offerings from Personal Invitations because to do so is also to steal the possessions of the Sangha, laypersons not to Issue Discriminatory Invitations, not to Pursue Improper Livelihoods such as engaging in the worldly businesses under any circumstances, not to Handle any Business Affairs for the Laity, when Seeing Evil People Steal and Sell Statues or Paintings of Buddhas, Devoted Buddhist must try to repurchase (Buy Back) Clerics Along with Sacred Objects, not to Harm Sentient Beings (selling knives, clubs, bows, arrows, Abusing governmental position to confiscate people's possessions, raising cats, dogs, or any animals), not to Watch Improper Activities such as fighting, gambling or to listen to sounds of

conch shells, drum, horns, guitars, flutes, songs or other music, etc, it is a Secondary Offense for a Buddhist to Temporary Abandoning of Bodhi Mind, especially monks and nuns, fail to Make Great Vows, fail to Take Solemn Oaths (would rather jump into a raging blaze, wrap self a thousand times with red-hot iron net, swallow red-hot iron pellets and drink molten iron, lie on a bonfire or burning iron, be impaled for eons by hundred of spears, jump into a caudron of boiling oil and roast for hundreds of thousands of eons, be pulverized from head to toe by an iron sledge hammer, have both eyes blinded by hundreds of thousands of swords, etc., should never break the precepts), not to Travel in Dangerous Areas, not to Sit in the Improper Order Within the Assembly, fail to Cultivate Merits and Wisdom, discrimination in Conferring the Precepts, teaching for the Sake of Personal Profits, reciting the Precepts to Evil Persons with a greed of fame, thoughts of Violating the Precepts, fail to Honor the Sutras and Moral Codes, fail to Teach Sentient Beings, preaching in an Inappropriate Manner. A devoted Buddhist, especially monks and nuns, should always have a mind of Great Compassion to teach and transform sentient beings, abuse high official position in the Order to undetermine the moral code of the Buddhas and set Regulations against the Dharma, to destroy the Dharma for Fame or Profit.

Forty Eight Secondary or Lighter Precepts which the Buddha taught all Bodhisattvas in the Brahma-Net Sutra can be summarily explained as follows. *The First Secondary Precept on Disrespect toward Teachers and Friends:* A disciple of the Buddha who is destined to become an emperor, a Wheel-Turning King, or high official should first receive the Bodhisattva precepts. He will then be under the protection of all guardians, dieties and spirits, and the Buddhas will be pleased. Once he has received the precepts, the disciple should develop a mind of filial piety and respect. Whenever he meets an Elder Master, a monk, or a fellow cultivator of like views and like conduct, he should rise and greet him with respect. He must then respectfully make offerings to the guest-monks, in accord with the Dharma. He should be willing to pledge himself, his family, as well as his kingdom, cities, jewels and other possessions. If instead, he should develop conceit or arrogance, delusion or anger, refusing to rise and greet guest-monks and make offerings to them respectfully, in accordance with the Dharma, he commits a secondary offense. *The Second Secondary Precept on Consuming Alcoholic Beverages:* A disciple of the Buddha should not intentionally consume alcoholic beverages, as they are the source of countless offenses. If he but offers a glass of wine to another person, his retribution will be to have no hands for five hundred lifetimes. How could he then consume liquor himself! Indeed, a Bodhisattva should not encourage any person of any other sentient being to consume alcoholic, much less take any alcoholic beverages himself. A disciple should not drink any

alcoholic beverages whatsoever. If instead, he deliberately does so or encourage others to do so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Third Secondary Precept on Eating Meat:* A disciple of the Buddha must not deliberately eat meat. He should not eat the flesh of any sentient being. The meat-eater forfeits the seed of Great Compassion, severs the seed of the Buddha Nature and causes animals and transcendental beings to avoid him. Those who do so are guilty of countless offenses. Therefore, Bodhisattvas should not eat flesh of any sentient beings whatsoever. If instead, he deliberately eats meat, he commits a secondary offense. *The Fourth Secondary Precept on Five Pungent Herbs:* A disciple of the Buddha should not eat the five pungent herbs: garlic, chives, leeks, onions, and asafoetida. This is so even if they are added as flavoring to the main dishes. Hence, if he deliberately does so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Fifth Secondary Precept on Not Teaching Repentance:* Should a disciple of the Buddha see any being violate the Five Precepts, the Eight Precepts, the Ten Precepts, other prohibitions, or commit any of the Seven Cardinal Sins or any offense which leads to the Eight Adversities, any violations of the precepts whatever, he should counsel the offender to repent and reform. Hence, if a Bodhisattva does not do so and furthermore continues to live together in the assembly with the offender, share in the offerings of the laity, participate in the same Uposatha ceremony and recite the precepts, while failing to bring up that person's offense, enjoining himself to repent, the disciple commits a secondary offense. *The Sixth Secondary Precept on Failing to Request the Dharma or Make Offerings:* Should an Elder Master, a Mahayana monk or fellow cultivator of like views and practice, come from far away to the temple, residence, city or village of a disciple of the Buddha, the disciple should respectfully welcome him and see him off. He should minister to his needs at all times, though doing so may cost as much as three ounces of gold! Moreover, the disciple of the Buddha should respectfully request the guest-master to preach the Dharma three times a day by bowing to him without a single thought of resentment or weariness. He should be willing to sacrifice himself for the Dharma and never be lax in requesting it. If he does not act in this manner, he commits a secondary offense. *The Seventh Secondary Precept on Failing to Attend Dharma Lectures:* A disciple of the Buddha, who has just begun Bodhisattva training should take copies of the appropriate sutras or precept codes to any place where such sutras or moral codes are being explained, to listen, study, and inquire about the Dharma. He should go to wherever there is a Dharma Master lecturing, be it in a house, beneath a tree, in a temple, in the forests or mountains, or elsewhere. If he fails to do so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Eighth Secondary Precept on Turning Away from the Mahayana:* If a disciple of the Buddha denies the eternal Mahayana

sutras and moral codes, declaring that they were not actually taught by the Buddha, and instead follows and observes those of the Two Vehicles and deluded externalists, he commits a secondary offense. *The Ninth Secondary Precept on Failure to Care for the Sick:* Should a disciple of the Buddha see anyone who is sick, he is constantly to provide for that person's needs just as he would for a Buddha. Of the eight Fields of Blessings, looking after the sick is the most important. A Buddha's disciple should take care of his father, mother, Dharma teacher or disciple, regardless of whether he or she is disabled or suffering from various kinds of diseases. If instead, he becomes angry and resentful and fails to do so, or refuses to rescue the sick or disabled in the temple, cities and towns, forests and mountains, or along the road, he commits a secondary offense. *The Tenth Secondary Precept on Storing Deathly Weapons:* A disciple of the Buddha should not store weapons such as knives, clubs, bows, arrows, spears, axes or any other weapons, nor may he keep nets, traps or any such devices used in destroying life. As a disciple of the Buddha, he must not even avenge the death of his parents, let alone kill sentient beings! He should not store any weapons or devices that can be used to kill sentient beings. If he deliberately does so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Eleventh Secondary Precept on Serving as an Emissary:* A disciple of the Buddha shall not, out of personal benefit or evil intentions, act as a country emissary to foster military confrontation and war causing the slaughter of countless sentient beings. As a disciple of the Buddha, he should not be involved in military affairs, or serve as a courier between armies, much less act as a willing catalyst for war. If he deliberately does so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twelfth Secondary Precept on Unlawful Business Undertakings:* A disciple of the Buddha must not deliberately trade in slaves or sell anyone into servitude, nor should he trade in domestic animals, coffins or wood for caskets. He cannot engage in these types of business himself much less encourage others to do so. Otherwise, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirteenth Secondary Precept on Slander and Libel:* A disciple of the Buddha must not, without cause and with evil intentions, slander virtuous people, such as Elder Masters, monks or nuns, kings, princes or other upright persons, saying that they have committed the Seven Cardinal Sins or broken the Ten Major Bodhisattva Precepts. He should be compassionate and filial and treat all virtuous people as if they were his father, mother, siblings or other close relatives. If instead, he slanders and harms them, he commits a secondary offense. *The Fourteenth Secondary Precept on Starting Wildfire:* A disciple of the Buddha shall not, out of evil intentions, start wildfires to clear forests and burn vegetation on mountains and plains, during the fourth to the ninth months of the lunar year. Such fires are particularly injurious to animals during that period and may spread to people's homes, towns and villages,

temples and monasteries, fields and groves, as well as the unseen dwellings and possessions of deities and ghosts. He must not intentionally set fire to any place where there is life. If he deliberately does so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Fifteenth Secondary Precept on Teaching Non-Mahayana Dharma:* A disciple of the Buddha must teach one and all, from fellow disciples, relatives and spiritual friends to externalists and evil beings, how to receive and observe the Mahayana sutras and moral codes. He should teach the Mahayana principles to them and then develop the Bodhi Mind, as well as the ten Dwellings, the Ten Practices and the Ten Dedications, explaining the order and function of each of these Thirty Minds or levels. If instead, the disciple, with evil, hateful intentions, perversely teaches them the sutras and moral codes of the Two Vehicle tradition as well as the commentaries of deluded externalists, he thereby commits a secondary offense. *The Sixteenth Secondary Precept on Unsound Explanation of the Dharma:* A Bodhisattva Dharma Master must first, with a wholesome mind, study the rules of deportment, as well as sutras and moral codes of the Mahayana tradition, and understand their meanings in depth. Then, whenever novices come from afar to seek instruction, he should explain, in conformity with the Dharma, all the Bodhisattva renunciation practices, such as burning one's body, arm, or finger as the ultimate act in the quest for Supreme Enlightenment. If a novice is not prepared to follow these practices as an offering to the Buddhas, he is not a Bodhisattva monk. Moreover, a Bodhisattva monk should be willing to sacrifice his body and limbs for starving beasts and hungry ghosts as the ultimate act of compassion in rescuing sentient beings. After these explanations, the Bodhisattva Dharma Master should teach the novices in an orderly way, to awaken their minds. If instead, for personal gain, he refuses to teach or teaches in a confused manner, quoting passages out of order and context, or teaches in a manner that disparages the Triple Jewel, he commits a secondary offense. *The Seventeenth Secondary Precept on Exacting Donations:* A disciple of the Buddha must not, for the sake of food, drink, money, possessions or fame, approach and befriend kings, princes, or high officials and on the strength of such relationships, raise funds, or obtain other advantages. Nor may he encourage others to do so. These actions are called untoward, excessive demands and lack compassion and filial piety. Such a disciple commits a secondary offense. *The Eighteenth Secondary Precept on Serving as an Inadequate Master:* A disciple of the Buddha should study the Twelve Divisions of the Dharma and recite the Bodhisattva Precepts frequently. He should strictly observe these precepts in the Six Periods of the day and night and fully understand their meaning and principles as well as the essence of their Buddha Nature. If instead, the disciple of the Buddha fails to understand even a sentence or a verse of the moral code or the causes and

conditions related to the precepts, but pretends to understand them, he is deceiving both himself and others. A disciple who understands nothing of the Dharma, yet acts as a teacher transmitting the precepts, commits a secondary offense. *The Nineteenth Secondary Precept on Double-Tongue Speech:* A disciple of the Buddha must not, with malicious intent gossip or spread rumors and slander, create discord and disdain for virtuous people. An example is disparaging a monk who observes the Bodhisattva precepts, as he makes offerings to the Buddha by holding an incense burner to his forehead. A disciple of the Buddha who does so commits a secondary offense. *The Twentieth Secondary Precept on Failure to Liberate Sentient Beings:* A disciple of the Buddha should have a mind of compassion and cultivate the practice of liberating sentient beings. He must reflect thus: “Throughout the eons of time, all male sentient beings have been my father, all female sentient beings my mother. I was born of them.” I now slaughter them, I would be slaughtering my parents as well as eating flesh that was once my own. This is so because all elemental earth, water, fire and air, the four constituents of all life, have previously been part of my body, part of my substance. I must therefore always cultivate the practice of liberating sentient beings and enjoin others to do likewise, as sentient beings are forever reborn, again and again, lifetime after lifetime. If a Bodhisattva sees an animal on the verge of being killed, he must devise a way to rescue and protect it, helping it to escape suffering and death. The disciple should always teach the Bodhisattva precepts to rescue and deliver sentient beings. On the day of his father, mother, and siblings die, he should invite Dharma Master to explain the Bodhisattva sutras and precepts. This will generate merits and virtues and help the deceased either to achieve rebirth in the Pure Land and meet the Buddhas or to secure rebirth in the human or celestial realms. If instead, a disciple fails to do so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-first Secondary Precept on Violence and Vengefulness:* A disciple of the Buddha must not return anger for anger, blow for blow. He should not seek revenge, even if his father, mother, siblings, or close relatives are killed, nor should he do so if the ruler or king of his country is murdered. To take the life of one being in order to avenge the killing of another is contrary to filial piety as we are all related through eons of birth and rebirth. Furthermore, he should not keep others in servitude, much less beat or abuse them, creating evil karma of mind, speech and body day after day, particularly the offenses of speech. How much less should he deliberately commit the Seven Cardinal Sins. Therefore, if a Bodhisattva-monk lacks compassion and deliberately seeks revenge, even for an injustice done to his close relatives, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-second Secondary Precept on Arrogance and Failure to Request the Dharma:* A disciple of the Buddha who has only recently become a monk and

is still a novice in the Dharma should not be conceited. He must not refuse instruction on the sutras and moral codes from Dharma Masters on account of his own intelligence, worldly learning, high position, advanced age, noble lineage, vast understanding, great merits, extensive wealth and possessions, etc. Although these Masters may be of humble birth, young in age, poor, or suffering physical disabilities, they may still have genuine virtue and deep understanding of sutras and moral codes. The novice Bodhisattva should not judge Dharma Masters on the basis of their family background and refuse to seek instructions on the Mahayana truths from them. If he does so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-third Secondary Precept on Teaching the Dharma Grudgingly*: After my passing, should a disciple, with a wholesome mind, wish to receive the Bodhisattva precepts, he may make a vow to do so before the images of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas and practice repentance before these images for seven days. If he then experienced a vision, he has received the precepts. If he does not, he should continue doing so for fourteen days, twenty-one days, or even a whole year, seeking to witness an auspicious sign. After witnessing such a sign, he could, in front of images of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas, formally receive the precepts. If he has not witnessed such a sign, although he may have accepted the precepts before the Buddha images, he has not actually received the precepts. However, the witnessing of auspicious signs is not necessary if the disciple receives the precepts directly from a Dharma Master who has himself received the precepts. Why is this so? It is because this is a case of transmission from Master to Master and therefore all that is required is a mind of utter sincerity and respect on the part of the disciple. If, within a radius of some thousand miles, a disciple cannot find a Master capable of conferring the Bodhisattva precepts, he may seek to receive them in front of Buddha or Bodhisattva images. However, he must witness an auspicious sign. If a Dharma Master, on account of his extensive knowledge of sutras and Mahayana moral codes as well as his close relationship with kings, princes, and high officials, refuses to give appropriate answer to student-Bodhisattvas seeking the meaning of sutras and moral codes, or does so grudgingly, with resentment and arrogance, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-fourth Secondary Precept on Failure to Practice Mahayana Teaching*: If a disciple of the Buddha fails to study Mahayana sutras and moral codes assiduously and cultivate correct views, correct nature and correct Dharma Body, it is like abandoning the Seven Precious Jewels for mere stones: worldly texts and the Two Vehicle or externalist commentaries. To do so is to create the causes and conditions that obstruct the Path to Enlightenment and cut himself off from his Buddha Nature. It is a failure to follow the Bodhisattva path. If a disciple intentionally acts in such a manner, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-fifth Secondary Precept on Unskilled*

Leadership of the Assembly: After my passing, should a disciple serve as an abbot, elder Master, Precept Master, Meditation Master, or Guest Prefect, he must develop a compassionate mind and peacefully settle differences within the Assembly, skillfully administering the resources of the Three Jewels, spending frugally and not treating them as his own property. If instead, he were to create disorder, provoke quarrels and disputes or squander the resources of the Assembly, he would commit a secondary offense. *The Twenty-sixth Secondary Precept on Accepting Personal Offerings:* Once a disciple of the Buddha has settled down in a temple, if visiting Bodhisattva Bhikshu should arrive at the temple precincts, the guest quarters established by the king, or even the summer retreat quarters, or the quarters of the Great Assembly, the disciple should welcome the visiting monks and see them off. He should provide them with such essentials as food and drink, a place to live, beds, chairs, and the like. If the host does not have the necessary means, he should be willing to pawn himself or cut off and sell his own flesh. Whenever there are meal offerings and ceremonies at a layman's home, visiting monks should be given a fair share of the offerings. The abbot should send the monks, whether residents or guests, to the donor's place in turn according to their sacerdotal age or merits and virtues. If only resident monks are allowed to accept invitations and not visiting monks, the abbot is committing a grievous offense and is behaving no differently than an animal. He is unworthy of being a monk or a son of the Buddha, and is guilty of a secondary offense. *The Twenty-seventh Secondary Precept on Accepting Discriminatory Invitation:* A disciple of the Buddha must not accept personal invitations nor appropriate the offerings for himself. Such offerings rightly belong to the Sangha, the whole community of monks and nuns of the Ten Directions. To accept personal offerings is to steal the possessions of the Sangha of the Ten Directions. It is tantamount to stealing what belongs to the Eight Fields of Blessings: Buddhas, Sages, Dharma Masters, Precept Masters, Monks/Nuns, mothers, fathers, and the sick. Such a disciple commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-eighth Secondary Precept on Issuing Discriminatory Invitation:* A disciple of the Buddha, be he a Bodhisattva monk, lay Bodhisattva, or other donor, should, when inviting monks or nuns to conduct a prayer session, come to the temple and inform the monk in charge. The monk will then tell him: "Inviting members of the Sangha according to the proper order is tantamount to inviting the arhats of the Ten Directions. To offer a discriminatory special invitation to such a worthy group as five hundred Arhats or Bodhisattva-monks will not generate as much merit as inviting one ordinary monk, if it is his turn. There is no provision in the teachings of the Seven Buddhas for discriminatory invitations. To do so is to follow externalist practices and to contradict filial toward all sentient beings. If a disciple deliberately issues a discriminatory

invitation, he commits a secondary offense. *The Twenty-ninth Secondary Precept on Improper Livelihood:* A disciple of the Buddha should not, for the sake of gain or with evil intentions, engage in the business of prostitution, selling the wiles and charms of men and women. He must also not cook for himself, milling and pounding grain. Neither may he act as a fortune-teller predicting the gender of children, reading dreams and the like. Nor shall he practice sorcery, work as a trainer of falcons or hunting dogs, nor make a living concocting hundreds and thousands of poisons from deadly snakes, insects, or from gold and silver. Such occupations lack mercy, compassion, and filial piety toward sentient beings. Therefore, if a Bodhisattva intentionally engages in these occupations, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirtieth Secondary Precept on Handling Business Affairs for the Laity:* A disciple of the Buddha must not, with evil intentions, slander the Triple Jewel while pretending to be their close adherent, preaching the Truth of Emptiness while his actions are in the realm of Existence. Thus, he must not handle worldly affairs for the laity, acting as a go-between or matchmaker, creating the karma of attachment. Moreover, during the six days of fasting each month and the three months of fasting each year, a disciple should strictly observe all precepts, particularly those against killing, stealing and the rules against breaking the fast. Otherwise, the disciple commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-first Secondary Precept on Rescuing Clerics Along with Sacred Objects:* After my passing, in the evil periods that will follow, there will be externalists, evil persons, thieves and robbers who steal and sell statues and paintings of Buddhas, Bodhisattvas and those to whom respect is due such as their parents. They may even peddle copies of sutras and moral codes, or sell monks, nuns or those who follow the Bodhisattva Path or have developed the Bodhi Mind to serve as retainers or servants to officials and others. A disciple of the Buddha, upon witnessing such pitiful events, must develop a mind of compassion and find ways to rescue and protect all persons and valuables, raising funds wherever he can for this purpose. If a Bodhisattva does not act in this manner, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-second Secondary Precept on Harming Sentient Beings:* A disciple of the Buddha must not sell knives, clubs, bows, arrows, other life-taking devices, nor keep altered scales or measuring devices. He should not abuse his governmental position to confiscate people's possessions, nor should he, with malice at heart, restrain or imprison others or sabotage their success. In addition, he should not raise cats, dogs, foxes, pigs and other such animals. If he intentionally does such things, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-third Secondary Precept on Watching Improper Activities:* A disciple of the Buddha must not, with evil intentions, watch people fighting or battling of armies, rebels, gangs and the like. He should not listen to the sounds of conch shells, drums, horns, guitars,

flutes, songs or other music, nor should he be party to any form of gambling, whether dice, checkers, or the like. Furthermore, he should not practice fortune-telling or divination nor should he be an accomplice to thieves and bandits. He must not participate in any of these activities. If instead, he intentionally does so, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-fourth Secondary Precept on Temporary Abandoning of the Bodhi Mind:* A disciple of the Buddha should observe the Bodhisattva precepts at all times, whether walking, standing, reclining or seated, reading and reciting them day and night. He should be resolute in keeping the precepts, as strong as a diamond, as desperate as a shipwrecked person clinging to a small log while attempting to cross the ocean, or as principled as the Bhiksu bound by reeds. Furthermore, he should always have a wholesome faith in the teachings of the Mahayana. Conscious that sentient beings are Buddhas-to-be while the Buddhas are realized Buddhas, he should develop the Bodhi Mind and maintain it in each and every thought, without retrogression. If a Bodhisattva has but a single thought in the direction of the Two Vehicles or externalist teachings, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-fifth Secondary Precept on Failure to Make Great Vows:* A Bodhisattva must make many great vows, to be filial to his parents and Dharma teachers, to meet good spiritual advisors, friends, and colleagues who will keep teaching him the Mahayana sutras and moral codes as well as the Stages of Bodhisattva Practice, the Ten Dwellings, the Ten Practices, the Ten Dedications, and the Ten Grounds. He should further vow to understand these teachings clearly so that he can practice according to the Dharma while resolutely keeping the precepts of the Buddhas. If necessary, he should lay down his life rather than abandon this resolve. If any Bodhisattva does not make such vows, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-sixth Secondary Precept on Failure to Take Solemn Oaths:* Once a Bodhisattva has made these great vows, he should strictly keep the precepts of the Buddhas and take the following oaths: "I would rather jump into a raging blaze, a deep abyss, or into a mountain of knives, than engage in impure actions with any woman, thus violating the sutras and moral codes of the Buddhas of the Three Periods of Time. I would rather wrap myself a thousand times with a red-hot iron net, than let this body, should it break the precepts, wear clothing provided by the faithful. I would rather swallow red hot iron pellets and drink molten iron for hundreds of thousands of eons, than let this mouth, should it break the precepts, consume food and drink provided by the faithful. I would rather lie on a bonfire or burning iron net than let this body, should it break the precepts, rest on bedding, blankets and mats supplied by the faithful. I would rather be impaled for eons by hundreds of spears, than let this body, should it break the precepts, receive medications from the faithful. I would rather jump into a cauldron of boiling oil and roast for hundreds of

thousands of eons, than let this body, should it break the precepts, receive shelter, groves, gardens, or fields from the faithful.” He should also take the following oaths: “I would rather be pulverized from head to toe by an iron sledge hammer, than let this body, should it break the precepts, accept respect and reverence from the faithful. I would rather have both eyes blinded by hundreds of thousands of swords and spears, than break the precepts by looking at beautiful forms. In the same vein, I shall keep my mind from being sullied by exquisite sounds, fragrances, food and sensations.” He further vows that all sentient beings will achieve Buddhahood. If a disciple of the Buddha does not make the preceding great resolutions, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-seventh Secondary Precept on Traveling in Dangerous Areas*: As a cleric, a disciple of the Buddha should engage in ascetic practices twice each year. He should sit in meditation, winter and summer, and observe the summer retreat. During those periods, he should always carry eighteen essentials such as a willow branch for a toothbrush, ash-water for soap, the traditional three clerical robes, an incense burner, a begging bowl, a sitting mat, a water filter, bedding, copies of sutras and moral codes as well as statues of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. When practicing austerities and when travelling, be it for thirty miles or three hundred miles, a disciple of the Buddha should always have the eighteen essentials with him. The two periods of austerities are from the 15th of the first lunar month to the 15th of the third lunar month, and from the 15th of the eighth lunar month to the 15th of the tenth lunar month. During the periods of austerities, he requires these eighteen essentials just as a bird needs its two wings. Twice each month, the novice Bodhisattva should attend the Upasatha ceremony and recite the Ten Major and Forty-Eight Secondary Precepts. Such recitations should be done before images of the Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. If only one person attends the ceremony, then he should do the reciting. If two, three, or even hundreds of thousands attend the ceremony, still only one person should recite. Everyone else should listen in silence. The one reciting should sit on a higher level than the audience, and everyone should be dressed in clerical robes. During the summer retreat, each and every activity should be managed in accordance with the Dharma. When practicing the austerities, the Buddhist disciple should avoid dangerous areas, unstable kingdoms, countries ruled by evil kings, precipitous terrains, remote wildernesses, regions inhabited by bandits, thieves, or lions, tigers, wolves, poisonous snakes, or areas subject to hurricanes, floods and fires. The disciple should avoid all such dangerous areas when practicing austerities and also when observing the summer retreat. Otherwise, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-eighth Secondary Precept on Order of Seating within the Assembly*: A disciple of the Buddha should sit in the proper order when in the Assembly. Those who received the Bodhisattva precepts first sit first, those who

received the precepts afterwards should sit behind. Whether old or young, a Bhiksu or Bhiksuni, a person of status, a king, a prince, a eunuch, or a servant, etc., each should sit according to the order in which he received the precepts. Disciples of the Buddha should not be like externalists or deluded people who base their order on age or sit without any order at all, in barbarian fashion. In my Dharma, the order of sitting is based on seniority of ordination. Therefore, if a Bodhisattva does not follow the order of sitting according to the Dharma, he commits a secondary offense. *The Thirty-ninth Secondary Precept on Failure to Cultivate Merits and Wisdom:* A disciple of the Buddha should constantly counsel and teach all people to establish monasteries, temples and pagodas in mountains and forests, gardens and fields. He should also construct stupas for the Buddhas and buildings for winter and summer retreats. All facilities required for the practice of the Dharma should be established. Moreover, a disciple of the Buddha should explain Mahayana sutras and the Bodhisattva precepts to all sentient beings. In times of sickness, national calamities, impending warfare or upon the death of one's parents, brothers and sisters, Dharma Masters and Precept Masters, a Bodhisattva should lecture and explain Mahayana sutras and the Bodhisattva precepts weekly for up to seven weeks. The disciple should read, recite, and explain the Mahayana sutras and the Bodhisattva precepts in all prayer gatherings, in his business undertakings and during periods of calamities, fire, floods, storms, ship lost at sea in turbulent waters or stalked by demons, etc. In the same vein, he should do so in order to transcend evil karma, the Three Evil Realms, the Eight Difficulties, the Seven Cardinal Sins, all forms of imprisonment, or excessive sexual desire, anger, delusion, and illness. If a novice Bodhisattva fails to act as indicated, he commits a secondary offense. *The Fortieth Secondary Precept on Discrimination in Conferring the Precepts:* A disciple of the Buddha should not be selective and show preference in conferring the Bodhisattva precepts. Each and every person can receive the precepts, kings, princes, high officials, Bhiksus, Bhiksunis, laymen, laywomen, libertines, prostitutes, the gods in the eighteen Brahma Heavens or the six Desire Heavens, asexual persons, bisexual persons, eunuchs, slaves, or demons and ghosts of all types. Buddhist disciples should be instructed to wear robes and sleep on cloth of a neutral color, formed by blending blue, yellow, red, black and purple dyes all together. The clothing of monks and nuns should, in all countries, be different from those worn by ordinary persons. Before someone is allowed to receive the Bodhisattva precepts, he should be asked: "have you committed any Cardinal Sins?" The Precept Master should not allow those who have committed such sins to receive the precepts. Here are the Seven Cardinal Sins: Shedding the Buddha's blood, murdering a sage, killing one's father, one's mother, murdering a Dharma Teacher, murdering a Precept Master or

disrupting the harmony of the Sangha. Except for those who have committed the Cardinal Sins, everyone can receive the Bodhisattva precepts. The Dharma rules of the Buddhist Order prohibit monks and nuns from bowing down before rulers, parents, relatives, demons and ghosts. Anyone who understands the explanations of the Precept Master can receive the Bodhisattva precepts. Therefore, if a person were to come from thirty to three hundred miles away seeking the Dharma and Precept Master, out of meanness and anger, does not promptly confer these precepts, he commits a secondary offense. *The Forty-first Secondary Precept on Teaching for the Sake of Profit:* If a disciple of the Buddha, when teaching others and developing their faith in the Mahayana, should discover that a particular person wishes to receive the Bodhisattva precepts, he should act as a teaching master and instruct that person to seek out two Masters, a Dharma Master and a Precept Master. These two Masters should ask the Precept candidate whether he has committed any of the Seven Cardinal Sins in this life. If he has, he cannot receive the precepts. If not, he may receive the precepts. If he has broken any of the Ten Major Precepts, he should be instructed to repent before the statues of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. He should do so six times a day and recite the Ten Major and Forty-Eight Minor Precepts, paying respect with utter sincerity to the Buddhas of the Three Periods of Time. He should continue in this manner until he receives an auspicious response, which could occur after seven days, fourteen days, twenty-one days, or even a year. Examples of auspicious signs include: experiencing the Buddhas rub the crown of one's head, or seeing lights, halos, flowers and other such rare phenomena. The witnessing of an auspicious sign indicates that the candidate's karma has been dissipated. Otherwise, although he has repented, it was of no avail. He still has not received the precepts. However, the merits accrued will increase his chances of receiving the precepts in a future lifetime. Unlike the case of a major Bodhisattva precept, if a candidate has violated any of the Forty-Eight Secondary Precepts, he can confess his infraction and sincerely repent before Bodhisattva-monks or nuns. After that, his offense will be eradicated. The officiating Master, however, must fully understand the Mahayana sutras and moral codes, the secondary as well as the major Bodhisattva precepts, what constitutes an offense and what does not, the truth of Primary Meaning, as well as the various Bodhisattva cultivation stages, the Ten Dwellings, the Ten Practices, the Ten Dedications, the Ten Grounds, and Equal and Wonderful Enlightenment. He should also know the type and degree of contemplation required for entering and exiting these stages and be familiar with the Ten Limbs of Enlightenment as well as a variety of other contemplations. If he is not familiar with the above and, out of greed for fame, disciples or offerings, he makes a pretense of understanding the sutras and moral codes, he is

deceiving himself as well as others. Hence, if he intentionally acts as Precept Master, transmitting the precepts to others, he commits a secondary offense.

The Forty-second Secondary Precept on Reciting the Precepts to Evil Persons: A disciple of the Buddha should not, with a greedy motive, expound the great precepts of the Buddhas before those who have not received them, externalists or persons with heterodox views. Except in the case of kings or supreme rulers, he may not expound the precepts before any such persons. Persons who hold heterodox views and do not accept the precepts of the Buddhas are animalistic in nature. They will not, lifetime after lifetime, encounter the Triple Jewel. They are as senseless as trees and stones; they are no different from wooden stumps. Hence, if a disciple of the Buddha expounds the precepts of the Seven Buddhas before such persons, he commits a secondary offense.

The Forty-third Secondary Precept on Thoughts of Violating the Precepts: If a disciple of the Buddha joins the Order out of pure faith, receives the correct precepts of the Buddhas, but then develops thoughts of violating the precepts, he is unworthy of receiving any offerings from the faithful, unworthy of walking on the ground of his motherland, unworthy of drinking its water. Five thousand guardians spirits constantly block his way, calling him "Evil thief!" These spirits always follow him into people's homes, villages and towns, sweeping away his very footprints. Everyone curses such a disciple, calling him a "Thief within the Dharma." All sentient beings avert their eyes, not wishing to see him. A disciple of the Buddha who breaks the precepts is no different from an animal or a wooden stump. Hence, if a disciple intentionally violates the correct precepts, he commits a secondary offense.

The Forty-fourth Secondary Precept on Failure to Honor the Sutras and Moral Codes: A disciple of the Buddha should always singlemindedly receive, observe, read and recite the Mahayana sutras and moral codes. He should copy the sutras and moral codes onto bark, paper, fine cloth, or bamboo clats and not hesitate to use his own skin as paper, draw his own blood for ink and his marrow for ink solvent, or split his bones for use as pens. He should use precious gems, priceless incense and flowers and other precious things to make and adorn covers and cases to store the sutras and codes. Hence, if he does not make offerings to the sutras and moral codes, in accordance with the Dharma, he commits a secondary offense.

The Forty-fifth Secondary Precept on Failure to Teach Sentient Beings: A disciple of the Buddha should develop a mind of Great Compassion. Whenever he enters people's homes, villages, cities or towns, and sees sentient beings, he should say aloud, "You sentient beings should all take the Three Refuges and receive the Ten Major Bodhisattva Precepts." Should he come across cows, pigs, horses, sheep and other kinds of animals, he should concentrate and say aloud "You are now animals; you should develop the Bodhi Mind." A Bodhisattva, wherever he goes, be it climbing a mountain, entering a forest, crossing a river, or walking through a field should help all sentient beings develop the Bodhi Mind. If a disciple of the Buddha does not wholeheartedly teach and rescue sentient beings in such a manner, he commits a secondary offense.

The Forty-sixth Secondary Precept on Preaching in an Inappropriate Manner: A disciple of the Buddha should always have a mind of Great Compassion to teach and transform sentient beings. Whether visiting wealthy and aristocratic donors or addressing Dharma gatherings, he should not remain standing while explaining the Dharma to laymen, but should occupy a raised seat in front of the

lay assembly. A Bhikṣu serving as Dharma instructor must not be standing while lecturing to the Fourfold Assembly. During such lectures, the Dharma Master should sit on a raised seat amidst flowers and incense, while the Fourfold Assembly must listen from lower seats. The Assembly must respect and follow the Master like filial sons following their parents or Brahmins worshipping fire. If a Dharma Master does not follow these rules while preaching the Dharma, he commits a secondary offense. *The Forty-seventh Secondary Precept on Regulations against the Dharma:* A disciple of the Buddha who has accepted the precepts of the Buddhas with a faithful mind, must not use his high official position as a king, prince, official, etc. to undermine the moral code of the Buddhas. He may not establish rules and regulations preventing the four kinds of lay disciples from joining the Order and practicing the Way, nor may he prohibit the making of Buddha or Bodhisattva images, statues and stupas, or the printing and distribution of sutras and codes. Likewise, he must not establish rules and regulations placing controls on the Fourfold Assembly. If highly placed lay disciples engage in actions contrary to the Dharma, they are no different from vassals in the service of illegitimate rulers. A Bodhisattva should rightfully receive respect and offerings from all. If instead, he is forced to defer to officials, this is contrary to the Dharma, contrary to the moral code. Hence, if a king or official has received the Bodhisattva precepts with a wholesome mind, he should avoid offenses that harm the Three Jewels. If instead, he intentionally commits such acts, he is guilty of a secondary offense. *The Forty-eighth Secondary Precept on Destroying the Dharma:* A disciple of the Buddha who becomes a monk with wholesome intentions must not, for fame or profit, explain the precepts to kings or officials in such a way as to cause monks, nuns or laymen who have received the Bodhisattva precepts to be tied up, thrown into prison, conscripted or enslaved. If a Bodhisattva acts in such a manner, he is no different from a worm in a lion's body, eating away at the lion's flesh. This is not something a worm living outside the lion can do. Likewise, only disciples of the Buddhas can bring down the Dharma, no externalist or celestial demon can do so. Those who have received the precepts of the Buddha should protect and observe them just as a mother would care for her only child or a filial son his parents. They must not bring down the Dharma. If a Bodhisattva hears externalists or evil-minded persons speak ill of, or disparage, the precepts of the Buddhas, he should feel as though his heart were pierced by three hundred spears, or his body stabbed with a thousand knives or thrashed with a thousand clubs. He would rather suffer in the hells himself for a hundred eons than hear evil beings disparage the precepts of the Buddha. How much worse it would be if the disciple were to break the precepts himself or incite others to do so! This is indeed an unfilial mind! Hence, if he violates the precepts intentionally, he commits a secondary offense.

Notes:

- (1) According to dictionary, "heaven" means the dwelling place of the deity. However, for a Buddhist, both heaven and hell are right here, right in this world. That is to say you can create your own heaven or hell right here in this world. It's ridiculous to create all kinds of unwholesome deeds, then simply with faith or praying you can create a heaven. Buddhist belief in heaven is simple, if you live and act according to moral principles, you can create

your own heaven right here in this world. If not, you can also create the hell on this earth itself. According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, in the sets of four things, there are Four Jhanas or four stages of of mystic meditation, whereby the believer's mind is purged from all earthly emotions, and detached as it were from his body, which remains plunged in a profound trance. These are four heavenly regions which practitioners try to reach. ***The Catutthajjhanabhumi:*** The palace of the Mahesvara-rajā, or the palace of the king of devas, lord of one great chiliocosm belongs to the fourth jhana, a deity with eight arms, three eyes, riding on a white bull. Hsuan-Tsang says specially worshipped in the Panjab. The fourth stage is the fourth region or the fourth jhana, equal to a great chiliocosmos. The inhabitants in this region still have mind. This is the ground of purity and renunciation of thought. The fourth dhyana has one thousand times those of the third. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, the Buddha told Ananda about the fourth dhyana as follows: "Ananda! Those who flow to these four superior levels in the fourth dhyana will not be moved by any suffering or bliss in any world. Although this is not the unconditioned or the true ground of non-moving, because they still have the thought of obtaining something, their functioning is nonetheless quite advanced." Within a kalpa of destruction, the first is destroyed fifty-six times by fire, the second seven by water, the third once by wind, the fourth corresponding to a state of "absolute indifference" remains "untouched" by all the other evolutions; however, when fate comes to an end, then the fourth dhyana may come to an end too, but not sooner. As mentioned above, here a monk, having given up pleasure and pain, and with the disappearance of former gladness and sadness, he enters and remains in the fourth jhana which is beyond pleasure and pain, and purified by equanimity and mindfulness (in the fourth stage the mind becomes indifferent to all emotions, being exalted above them and purified). All sensations, even of happiness and unhappiness, of joy and sorrow, disappear, only pure equanimity and awareness remaining.

Sublevels of the Fourth Dhyana Heaven: First, Punyaprasava or Felicitous Birth heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, heavenly beings whose bodies and minds are not oppressed, put an end to the cause of suffering, and realize that bliss is not permanent; that sooner or later it will come to an end. Suddenly they simultaneously renounce both thoughts of suffering and thoughts of bliss. Their coarse and heavy thoughts are extinguished, and they give rise to the nature of purity and blessing. They are among those in the Heaven of the Birth of Blessing. Second, Anabhraka or Blessed Love Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, those whose renunciation of these thoughts is in perfect fusion gain a purity of superior understanding. Within these unimpeded blessings they obtain a wonderful compliance that extends to the bounds of the future. They are among those in the Blessed Love Heaven. Third, Brhatphala or Large or Abundant Fruitage Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, from the Blessed Love Heaven there are two ways to go: the first way is the Abundant Fruit Heaven, and the second way is the No Thought Heaven. Those who extend the previous thought into limitless pure light, and who perfect and clarify their blessings and virtue, cultivate and are certified to one of these dwellings. They are among those in the Abundant Fruit Heaven. Fourth, Akanistha or the Heaven Above Thought or No Thought Heaven. In the Surangama Sutra, book Nine, from the Blessed Love Heaven there are two ways to go. Those who extend the previous thought into a dislike of both suffering and bliss, so that the intensity of their thought to renounce them continues without cease, will end up by totally renouncing the way. Their bodies and minds will become extinct; their thoughts will become like dead ashes. For five hundred aeons these beings will perpetuate the cause for production and extinction, being unable to discover the nature which is neither produced nor extinguished. During the first half of these aeons they will undergo extinction; during the second half they will experience production. They are among those in the Heaven of No Thought.

Chapter Eighteen

Three Collections of Pure Precepts

I. Summaries of Characteristics of Buddhist Precepts:

At the time of the Buddha, in the beginning a follower was accepted into the Sangha, the Buddha talked to them with the simple words “Ehi-bhikku” (Come, O monk)! But as numbers grew and the community dispersed, regulations were established by the Buddha. Every Buddhist undertakes the “Five Precepts” in the cultivation of the moral life, and monks and nuns follow five additional precepts, which are elaborated as training rules and referred to collectively as the “Pratimoksa.” The five additional precepts are to abstain from eating after midday, from dancing and singing, from personal adornments, from using high seats or beds, and from handling gold or silver. Later, situations arised so the number of rules in the “Pratimoksa” varies among the different traditions, although there is a common core of approximately 150. Nowadays, in Mahayana and Sangha Bhiksu traditions, there are about 250 rules for monks and 348 for nuns; while in the Theravadin tradition, there are 227 rules for monks and 311 for nuns. In all traditions, both Mahayana, including Sangha Bhiksu and Theravada, every fortnight these rules are recited communally, providing an occasion for the members of the Sangha to confess and breaches.

The worldly way is outgoing exuberant; the way of the devoted Buddhist’s life is restrained and controlled. Constantly work against the grain, against the old habits; eat, speak, and sleep little. If we are lazy, raise energy. If we feel we can not endure, raise patience. If we like the body and feel attached to it, learn to see it as unclean. Virtue or following precepts, and concentration or meditation are aids to the practice. They make the mind calm and restrained. But outward restraint is only a convention, a tool to help gain inner coolness. We may keep our eyes cast down, but still our mind may be distracted by whatever enters our field of vision. Perhaps we feel that this life is too difficult, that we just can not do it. But the more clearly we understand the truth of things, the more incentive we will have. Keep our

mindfulness sharp. In daily activity, the important point is intention. ; know what we are doing and know how we feel about it. Learn to know the mind that clings to ideas of purity and bad karma, burdens itself with doubt and excessive fear of wrongdoing. This, too, is attachment. We must know moderation in our daily needs. Robes need not be of fine material, they are merely to protect the body. Food is merely to sustain us. The Path constantly opposes defilements and habitual desires.

Secondary commandments, deriving from the mandate of Buddha, i.e. against drinking wine, as opposed to a commandment based on the primary laws of human nature, i.e., against murder. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. The Buddha points out to his disciples the ways of overcoming verbal and physical ill behavior. According to the Majjhima Nikaya, the Buddha taught: "Having tamed his tongue, having controlled his bodily actions and made himself pure in the way he earns his living, the disciple establishes himself well in moral habits. Thus he trains himself in the essential precepts of restraint observing them scrupulously and seeing danger in the slightest fault. While thus restraining himself in word and deed he tries to guard the doors of the senses, for if he lacks control over his senses unhealthy thoughts are bound to fill his mind. Seeing a form, hearing a sound, and so on, he is neither attracted nor repelled by such sense objects, but maintains balance, putting away all likes and dislikes."

The code of conduct set forth by the Buddha is not a set of mere negative prohibitions, but an affirmation of doing good, a career paved with good intentions for the welfare of happiness of mankind. These moral principles aim at making society secure by promoting unity, harmony and mutual understanding among people. This code of conduct is the stepping-stone to the Buddhist way of life. It is the basis

for mental development. One who is intent on meditation or concentration of mind should develop a love of virtue that nourishes mental life makes it steady and calm. This searcher of highest purity of mind practises the burning out of the passions. He should always think: "Other may harm, but I will become harmless; others may slay living beings, but I will become a non-slayer; others may wrongly take things, but I will not; others may live unchaste, but I will live pure; other may slander, talk harshly, indulge in gossip, but I will talk only words that promote concord, harmless words, agreeable to the ear, full of love, heart pleasing, courteous, worthy of being borne in mind, timely, fit to the point; other may be covetous, but I will not covet; others may mentally lay hold of things awry, but I will lay mental hold of things fully aright." In fact, observation of morality also means cultivation or exercise of right thoughts of altruism, loving-kindness and harmlessness; observation of morality also means cultivation of the right speech because that enables one to control one's mischievous tongue; right action by refraining from killing sentient beings, and from sexual misconduct; and right livelihood which should be free from exploitation misappropriation or any illegal means of acquiring wealth or property.

According to The Connected Discourses of the Buddha, Chapter Ambapali, there are two starting points of wholesome states. First, virtue that is well purified which includes basing upon virtue and establishing upon virtue. Second, view that is straight. According to The Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are three good (wholesome) roots. For Monks and Nuns, there are the wholesome roots of non-greed, non-hatred, and non-delusion (no selfish desire, no ire, no stupidity); the wholesome roots of almsgiving, kindness, and wisdom; and the wholesome roots of good deeds, good words, good thoughts. Three good roots for all moral development: the wholesome root of no lust or selfish desire, the wholesome root of no ire or no hatred, and the wholesome root of no stupidity. For Ordinary People, there are three wholesome roots: the wholesome root of almsgiving; the wholesome root of mercy; and the wholesome root of wisdom. There are also three good upward directions or states of existence. The first path is the wholesome path. This is the highest class of goodness rewarded with the deva life. The second path is the path of human beings. The middle

class of goddness with a return to human life. The third path is the path of asuras. The inferior class of goodness with the asura state. According to The Long Discourses of the Buddha, Sangiti Sutra, there are three kinds of wholesome element. First, the wholesome element of renunciation. Second, the wholesome element of non-enmity. Third, the wholesome element of non-cruelty. According to the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are three kinds of right conduct: right conduct in body, right conduct in speech, and right conduct in thought. Three good deeds (the foundation of all development) include no lust (no selfish desire), no anger, and no stupidity (no ignorance). According to the Abhidharma, there are three doors of wholesome kamma pertaining to the sense-sphere. First, bodily action pertaining to the door of the body: not to kill, not to steal, and not to commit sexual misconduct. Second, verbal action pertaining to the door of speech: not to have false speech, not to slander, not to speak harsh speech, and not to speak frivolous talk. Third, mental action pertaining to the door of the mind: not to have Covetousness, not to have Ill-will, and not to have wrong views. According to The Long Discourses of the Buddha, Sangiti Sutra, there are three kinds of wholesome investigation. First, the wholesome investigation of renunciation. Second, the wholesome investigation of non-enmity. Third, the wholesome investigation of non-cruelty. According to The Long Discourses of the Buddha, Sangiti Sutra, there are three kinds of wholesome perception. First, the wholesome perception of renunciation. Second, the wholesome perception of non-enmity. Third, the wholesome perception of non-cruelty.

According to the Mahayana, there are four good roots, or sources from which spring good fruit or development: Sravakas, Pratyekabuddhas, Bodhisattvas, and Buddhas. According to the Kosa Sect, there are four good roots, or sources from which spring good fruit or development: the level of heat, the level of the summit, the level of patience, and the level of being first in the world. According to the Surangama Sutra, book Eight, There are four good roots, or sources from which spring good fruit or development. The Buddha reminded Ananda as follows: “Ananda! When these good men have completely purified these forty-one minds, they further accomplish four kinds of wonderfully perfect additional practices.” The first root is the level of

heat. When the enlightenment of a Buddha is just about to become a function of his own mind, it is on the verge of emerging but has not yet emerged, and so it can be compared to the point just before wood ignites when it is drilled to produce fire. Therefore, it is called ‘the level of heat.’ The second root is the level of the summit. He continues on with his mind, treading where the Buddhas tread, as if relying and yet not. It is as if he were climbing a lofty mountain, to the point where his body is in space but there remains a slight obstruction beneath him. Therefore, it is called ‘the level of the summit.’ The third root is the level of patience. When the mind and the Buddha are two and yet the same, he has well obtained the middle way. He is like someone who endures something when it seems impossible to either hold it in or let it out. Therefore, it is called ‘the level of patience.’ The fourth root is the level of being first in the world. When numbers are destroyed, there are no such designations as the middle way or as confusion and enlightenment; this is called the ‘level of being first in the world.’ According to the Long Discourses of the Buddha, Sangiti Sutra, there are eight right factors: Right views, Right thinking, Right speech, Right action, Right livelihood, Right effort, Right mindfulness, and Right concentration.

In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: “As a flower that is colorful and beautiful, but without scent, even so fruitless is the well-spoken words of one who does not practice it (Dharmapada 51). As the flower that is colorful, beautiful, and full of scent, even so fruitful is the well-spoken words of one who practices it (Dharmapada 52). As from a heap of flowers many a garland is made, even so many good deeds should be done by one born to the mortal lot (Dharmapada 53). If a person does a meritorious deed, he should do it habitually, he should find pleasures therein, happiness is the outcome of merit (Dharmapada 118). Even a good person sees evil as long as his good deed has not yet ripened; but when his good deed has ripened, then he sees the good results (Dharmapada 120). Do not disregard small good, saying, “it will not matter to me.” Even by the falling of drop by drop, a water-jar is filled; likewise, the wise man, gathers his merit little by little (Dharmapada 122).” In the Forty-Two Sections Sutra, chapter 14, the Buddha taught: “A Sramana asked the Buddha: “What is goodness? What is the foremost greatness?” The Buddha replied: “To practice the

Way and to protect the Truth is goodness. To unite your will with the Way is greatness.”

II. Summaries of Three Collections of Pure Precepts:

Three collections of pure precepts, or three accumulations of pure precepts of the Bodhisattvas. Those cultivating Hinayana’s Sravaka Way do not have these three accumulations of purity precepts. Only Mahayana Bodhisattvas practice them. These three accumulations of pure precepts encompass the “Four Propagation Vows” which include: i) Vow to save all living beings without limits: Sentient beings are numberless (countless), I vow to save them all. ii) Vow to put an end to all passions and delusions, though innumerable: Afflictions (annoyances) are inexhaustible (endless), I vow to end (cut) them all. iii) Vow to study and learn all methods and means without end: Schools and traditions are manifold, I vow to study them all. The teachings of Dharma are boundless, I vow to learn them all. iv) Vow to become perfect in the supreme Buddha-law: The Buddha-Way (Truth) is supreme (unsurpassed), I vow to complete (realize) it.

In Buddhism, there is no so-called cultivation without discipline, and also there is no Dharma without discipline. ***First, the pure precepts which include all rules and observances, or to avoid evil by keeping the discipline:*** Which means to gather all precepts such as five precepts, eight precepts, ten precepts of Sramanera, 250 precepts of Bhiksus, 348 precepts of Bhiksunis, 10 major and 48 minor precepts of Bodhisattvas, and maintain them purely without violating a single precept. To abide by the Sila or Pratimoksa means to abide by the commandments, especially the Vinaya as containing in the laws and regulations of Buddhism. To abide by Patimokkha Sila or the fundamental moral code, various rules which a monk is expected to observe. Abiding by the commandments includes indriyasamvara or guarding of the sense organ, a meditation technique that leads to pure and objective observation and is intended to prevent emotions such as joy, sadness, love, jealousy, sympathy, antipathy, desire, hatred, ect.

Second, the pure precepts which include all wholesome dharmas: Accumulating wholesome precepts means Bodhisattvas who must learn all the wholesome dharmas that the Buddha taught in various sutras, so they will know all the clear paths and means necessary to “lead and

guide sentient beings” to liberation and enlightenment. Thus, no matter how insignificant a dharma teaching may seem, they are not to abandon any dharma door. This vow is made by all Mahayana practicing Buddhists that “Innumerable Dharma Door, I vow to master.” Abiding by Kusala-dharma-samgrahaka-sila or receiving wholesome dharma methods of cultivation. In Buddhist teachings, “Kusala” means volitional action that is done in accordance with the Aryan Eightfold Noble Path. So, Kusala is not only in accordance with the right action, but it is also always in accordance with the right view, right understanding, right speech, right livelihood, right energy, right concentration and right samadhi. According to the Dharmapada Sutra, verse 183, the Buddha taught: Not to do evil, to do good, to purify one’s mind, this is the teaching of the Buddhas.” Kusala karmas or good deeds will help a person control a lot of troubles arising from his mind. Inversely, if a person does evil deeds he will receive bad results in this life and the next existence which are suffering. Thus, wholesome deeds clean our mind and give happiness to oneself and others. Kusala means good, right, wholesome. It is contrary to the unwholesome. Kusala karmas or good deeds will help a person control a lot of troubles arising from his mind. Inversely, if a person does evil deeds he will receive bad results in this life and the next existence which are suffering. An honest man, especially one who believes in Buddhist ideas of causality and lives a good life. There are two classes of people in this life, those who are inclined to quarrel and addicted to dispute, and those who are bent to living in harmony and happy in friendliness. The first class can be classified wicked, ignorant and heedless folk. The second class comprised of good, wise and heedful people. The Buddha has made a clear distinction between wickedness and goodness and advises all his disciples not to do evil actions, to perform good ones and to purify their own heart. He knows that it is easy to do evil action. To perform meritorious one far more difficult. But His disciples should know how to select in between evil and good, because wicked people will go to hell and undergo untold suffering, while good ones will go to Heaven and enjoy peaceful bliss. Moreover, Good one even from afar shrine like the mountain of snow with their meritorious actions, while bad ones are enveloped in darkness like an arrow shot in the night.”

To Receive Wholesome Dharma or to Prevent Breaking Precepts Through Restraint of the Six Faculties: To receive wholesome dharma or to prevent breaking precepts in methods of cultivation through restraint of the six faculties. Practitioners should always contemplate on the six faculties are the main reasons that cause human beings to fall into hells, to be reborn in the realm of the hungry ghosts, or animals, asuras, devas, or human beings, etc. It is agreeable that the six faculties that help us maintain our daily activities, but they are also the main factors that bring sufferings and afflictions to our body and mind. They are the main agents that cause us to create unwholesome karma, and eventually we will fall into evil ways because of them. Do not think that the eyes are that great, just because they help us see things. It is exactly because of their help that we give rise to all kinds of sufferings and afflictions. For instance, when we see an attractive person of the opposite sex, we become greedy for sex. If we do not get what we want, we will be afflicted; and if we get what we want, we will also be afflicted. The other faculties, ear, nose, tongue, body and mind are the same way. They make one give rise to many sufferings and afflictions. Therefore, the Buddha advised his disciples thus: “You should cultivate until you are unaware of heaven above, people in between, and earth below.” If we cultivate until the time heaven, earth, people, east, west, south, north, etc., can no longer impact our six faculties, then at that point we are liberated from all hindrances. The six sense-organs can be entrances to the hells; at the same time, they can be some of the most important entrances to the great enlightenment; for with them, we create karmas and sins, but also with them, we can practise the right way. According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are six roots or faculties (indriyani): *Eye* is one of the six senses on which one relies or from which knowledge is received. *Ear* is one of the six unions of the six sense organs with the six objects of the senses, the ears is in union with sound heard. *Nose* is in union with the smell smelt, this is one of the six unions of the six sense organs with the six objects of the senses. *Tongue* is in union with the taste tasted, this is one of the six unions of the six sense organs with the six objects of the senses. *Body* is in union with the thing touched, this is one of the six unions of the six sense organs with the six objects of the senses. And the *Mind* is in union with

the dharma thought about. The Buddha said: “Karma that you have made for yourself can only disappear if you want it to. No one can make you want it to disappear. I have many kinds of medicine, but I can’t take it for you.” Therefore, we should be mindful of it throughout the day. But do not overdo it. Walk, eat, and act naturally, and then develop natural mindfulness of what is going on within ourselves. To force our meditation or force ourselves into awkward patterns is another form of craving. Patience and endurance are necessary. If we act naturally and are mindful, wisdom will come naturally. It is obvious that during meditation, the six organs are closed and purified in order to develop their unlimited power and interchange (in the case of Buddha). This full development enables the eye to see everything in a great chiliocosm from its highest heaven down to its lowest hells and all the beings past, present, and future with all the karma of each.

In the six sense-organs, thought, the mind-sense, the sixth of the senses, the perception of thinking or faculty of thinking or the thinking mind. According to Most Venerable Piyadassi in “The Buddha’s Ancient Path,” faculty of mind recognizes mental objects, we know, is not something tangible and perceptible like the other five faculties, which recognizes the external world. The eye cognizes the world of colors (vanna) or visible objects, the ear audible sounds, and so forth. The mind, however, cognizes the world of ideas and thoughts. Faculty of mind literally means “chief” or “lord”. Forms can only be seen by the faculty of the eye and not by the ear, hearing by the faculty of the ear, and so on. When it comes to the world of thoughts and ideas the faculty of the mind lord over the mental realm. The eye can not think thoughts, and collect ideas, but it is instrumental in seeing visible forms, the world of colors. Practitioners’s sense restraint is proper practice. We should be mindful of it throughout the day. But do not overdo it. Walk, eat, and act naturally, and then develop natural mindfulness of what is going on within ourselves. To force our meditation or force ourselves into awkward patterns is another form of craving. Patience and endurance are necessary. If we act naturally and are mindful, wisdom will come naturally. Besides, practicing meditation can lead to pure and objective observation and is intended to prevent emotions such as joy, sadness, love, jealousy, sympathy, antipathy, desire, hatred, etc. Practitioners always consider the six senses are objects of meditation practices. According to Bikkhu Piyananda in *The Gems of Buddhism Wisdom*, you must always be aware of the sense organs such as eye, ear, nose, tongue

and body and the contact they are having with the outside world. You must be aware of the feelings that are arising as a result of this contact. Eye is now in contact with forms (rupa). Ear is now in contact with sound. Nose is now in contact with smell. Tongue is now in contact with taste. Body is now in contact with touching. Mind is now in contact with all things (dharma). According to the Samannaphala Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, the Buddha taught about “a guardian of the sense-door.” How does a monk become a guardian of the sense-door? Here a monk, on seeing a visible object with the eye, does not grasp at its major signs or secondary characteristics. Because greed and sorrow, evil unskilled states, would overwhelm him if he dwelt leaving this eye-faculty unguarded, so he practises guarding it, he protects the eye-faculty, develops restraint of the eye-faculty. On hearing a sound with the ear...; on smelling an odour with the nose...; on tasting a flavour with the tongue...; on feeling an object with the body...; on thinking a thought with the mind, he does not grasp at its major signs or secondary characteristics, he develops restraint of the mind-faculty. He experiences within himself the blameless bliss that comes from maintaining this Ariyan guarding of the faculties. In short, those who try to restrain the six senses are trying not to break the rules, not to commit offenses and not to create karmas. They are not only advancing on the path to Buddhahood, but they also have peace, mindfulness and happiness in their daily life.

Third, the pure precepts which include all living beings: This means to develop the compassionate nature to want to benefit and aid all sentient beings, and this is the vow “Infinite sentient beings, I vow to take across.” Vow to save all living beings without limits. Sentient beings are numberless (countless), I vow to save them all. According to the Sixth Patriarch Hui-Neng Sutra, good knowing advisors, did all of you not just say, “I vow to take across the limitless beings? What does it mean? You should remember that it is not Hui-Neng who takes them across. Good Knowing Advisors, the ‘living beings’ within your mind are deviant and confused thoughts, deceitful and false thoughts, unwholesome thoughts, jealous thoughts, vicious thoughts: and these thoughts are ‘living beings’. The self-nature of each one of them must take itself across. That is true crossing over. What is meant by ‘the self-nature taking across?’ It is to take across by means of right views the living beings of deviant views, affliction, and delusion within your own mind. Once you have right views, use Prajna Wisdom to destroy the living beings of delusion, confusion, and falsehood. Each one takes itself across. Enlightenment takes confusion across, wisdom takes delusion across, goodness takes evil across. Such crossing over is a true crossing.

Chapter Nineteen

Lay & Monastic Bodhisattvas In the Brahmajala Sutra

(A) Summaries of Bodhisattvas In Buddhist Teachings

I. An Overview of Bodhisattvas in Buddhist Teachings:

In Buddhist teachings, a Bodhisattva is one whose beings or essence is bodhi whose wisdom is resulting from direct perception of Truth with the compassion awakened thereby. Enlightened being who is on the path to awakening, who vows to forego complete enlightenment until he or she helps other beings attain enlightenment. Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings,; and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemma, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. The Bodhisattva Way teaches the observance of the six paramitas the perfecting of the self and the benefits of others. The objective is the salvation of all beings and attaining of Buddhahood. The aim of Bodhisattvayana is the attainment of Supreme Buddhahood. In other words, the aim of a Bodhisattva is to benefit self and benefit others, leading to Buddhahood; and above to seek bodhi, below to transform all beings.

According to Buddhism, a Bodhisattva is a being who resolves to become a fully enlightened Buddha and who dedicates his efforts to helping other sentient beings to attain salvation. These compassionate beings figure predominantly in the Mahayana tradition; indeed, the most distinguishing feature of Mahayana Buddhism may be its advocacy of the Bodhisattva as the vehicle to liberation. The Bodhisattva follows a long and arduous path, often described as having

ten stages and spanning many lives at the end of which he attains complete Buddhahood. Bodhisattvas should never be considered as heavenly gods or devas, or permanent entities for worship. Talking about the idea of Bodhisattva, Buddhists should always remember that the idea of Bodhisattva is only a symbolic method of Buddha-dhamma created by intellectual patriarchs after the Buddha's parinirvana only to satisfy the religious need of followers and to adjust Buddhism in some special circumstances. The concept of Bodhisattvahood appears in both Theravada and Mahayana Buddhism. So the idea of Bodhisattva in Mahayana Buddhism is in no way a strange idea to the Theravada Buddhism. Bodhisattvas always cultivate "the mind to bodhi (bodhicitta)," "the six Paramitas," "the four all-embracing virtues," and "the Four Immeasurables." Especially, "the Four Immeasurables" for these four characteristics cannot be viewed in discreteness or in isolation. Among them, "Compassionate" is the most essential, for "Karuna" or "Compassionate" is the basis of "Maitri" or "Loving-kindness" which stands for "love, respect and care for all living beings."

For all Buddhists, each Buddha had been, for a long period before his enlightenment, vowed to be a Bodhisattva. But why does a Bodhisattva have such a vow? Why does he want to undertake such infinite labor? For the good of others, because they want to become capable of pulling others out of this great flood of sufferings and afflictions. But what personal benefit does he find in the benefit of others? To a Bodhisattva, the benefit of others is his own benefit, because he desires it that way. Who could believe that? It is true that people devoid of pity and who think only of themselves, find it hard to believe in the altruism of the Bodhisattva. But compassionate people can easily do so. In short, a Bodhisattva is an enlightener of sentient beings. He usually vows to take the enlightenment that he has been certified as having attained and the wisdom that he has uncovered to enlighten all other sentient beings. A Bodhisattva's job is not easy at all. Though his appearance is not rare as that of a Buddha, but it is extremely difficult for a Bodhisattva to appear, and it is also extremely difficult for ordinary people to encounter a real Bodhisattva.

This little book titled "Lay & Monastic Bodhisattvas" is not a profound study of Buddhist teachings, but a book that simply points out

Bodhisattvas' practices, vows and paths of cultivation for us, two classes of disciples of lay and monastic Buddhists, to follow. Devout Buddhists should always remember that entering the state of mind of a Nirvana as the Buddha taught does not mean to renounce the world and to enter into a temple as a monk or nun, but it means to enter into practicing well-being exercises that are linked to established daily life patterns, makes our lives more peaceful. Devout Buddhists should always remember the goal of any Buddhist cultivator is to achieve self-enlightening, that is examining with one's own intelligence, and not depending upon another; enlightening or awakening of others, then achieve the final accomplishment, to go beyond the cycle of births and deaths, that is to reach the state of mind of a Nirvana right in this very life. The journey from man to Buddha still demands continuous efforts with right understanding and practice. Presently even with so many books available on Buddhism, I venture to compose this booklet titled "Lay & Monastic Bodhisattvas" in Vietnamese and English to spread basic things in Buddhism to all Vietnamese Buddhist followers, especially Buddhist beginners, hoping this little contribution will help Buddhists in different levels to understand on how to achieve and lead a life of peace, mindfulness and happiness.

II. The Origination of the Bodhisattva Ideal:

Buddhism never separates itself from the secular life. On the contrary, the Buddha always reminded his followers, monks, nuns, upasakas and upasikas, to live the best and highest life and to get the most out of life. However, the best joy in life according to Buddhism are not the pleasures and materials, but the light-hearted and joyful happiness at all time in mind. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that it is true that we must study the Buddha's teachings, but the main thing is to live them in our daily life. If we can do this, we are truly Buddhists of a living Buddhism. If not, we are only embracing the corpse of a dead Buddhism. According to the Avatamsaka Sutra, there are two aspects of the Buddhist life. Everyone has hopes that his wishes will be fulfilled someday. Hope itself is not wrong, for hope will help people try to reach to better situations. To a Buddhist, a worthwhile life, according to Mahayana Buddhist point of view, does not consist in merely spending one's life in peace and quiet but in

creating something good for other beings. When one tries to become a better person through his practice, this endeavor is the creation of good. When he does something for the benefit of other people, this is the creation of a still higher standard of good. The various arts are the creation of beauty, and all honest professions are the creation of various kinds of energy that are beneficial to society. Creation is bound to bring with it pain and hardship. However, one finds life worth living when one makes a strenuous effort for the sake of something good. He endeavors to become a little better a person and to do just a little more for the good of other people, through such positive endeavor we are enabled to feel deep joy in our human lives.

Thus, around some 200 or 300 years after the Buddha's death, a new variation of the Buddhist ideal began to emerge. Dissatisfied with the seemingly limited goal of the arhat, this new vision emphasized the Bodhisattva as the highest aspiration for all. A Bodhisattva is a being who resolves to become a fully enlightened Buddha and who dedicates his efforts to helping other sentient beings to attain salvation. These compassionate beings figure predominantly in the Mahayana tradition; indeed, the most distinguishing feature of Mahayana Buddhism may be its advocacy of the Bodhisattva as the vehicle to liberation. The Bodhisattva follows a long and arduous path, often described as having ten stages and spanning many lives at the end of which he attains complete Buddhahood. The Mahayana is thus able to consider a host of Bodhisattvas, at different stages along the path, as intervening in the lives of sentient beings. An advanced Bodhisattva, for example, can create "Buddha-Fields," to which humans can aspire to be reborn by devotion and righteousness. The notion of the Bodhisattva is at times combined with the doctrine of the "Three Bodies" of the Buddha. This theory maintains that the ultimate form of Buddhahood and the true nature of things is the "Body of Dharma" itself (Dharmakaya). The Body of Dharma is revealed progressively by two other bodies: the "Enjoyment Body" (Sambhogakaya), a subtle form perceptible only to those advanced in the path, and the "Transformation Body" (Nirmanakaya), a physical form apparent to all. According to this scheme, Gautama was merely a Transformation Body, an apparition of ultimate Buddhahood. Other Bodhisattvas, who are Enjoyment Bodies, can also teach and intervene through transformation and apparition.

Important Mahayana Bodhisattvas include Avalokitesvara; Manjusri, who personifies great wisdom and is often represented holding a sword, which he uses to cut through the veil of ignorance; and Maitreya, “The Kindly One,” who will be the next Buddha and who, after attaining Buddhahood, will send the next Transformation Body to teach on earth. Other great Buddhist teachers are sometimes associated with Bodhisattvas, and are even seen as their incarnations. One of these is Nagarjuna, who was an abbot at the Buddhist university of Nalanda in the second century A.D. Nagarjuna is considered the founder of the Madhyamaka, a school of Buddhist philosophy that was active in Buddhist India. Madhyamaka greatly influenced certain forms of Chinese and Japanese Buddhism, such as Zen, and still flourishes today in Tibet.

In Tibetan, Bodhisattva is translated as “Heroic Being.” The heroic quality of the Bodhisattva is brought out by the Prajnaparamita: “Suppose a hero, endowed with great accomplishments, had gone out with his mother, father, sons, and daughters. By some set of circumstances, they would get into a huge wild forest. The foolish among them would be greatly frightened. The hero would, however, fearlessly say to them ‘Do not be afraid! I will speedily take you out of this great and terrible jungle, and bring you to safety.’ Since he is fearless, vigorous, exceedingly tender, compassionate, courageous and resourceful, it does not occur to him to take himself alone out of the jungle, leaving his relatives behind. Against the Arhat, Mahayana Buddhism claimed that we must take the whole of the creation with us to enlightenment, that we cannot just abandon any beings, as all beings are as near to us as our relatives are. What a man should do is to make no discrimination between himself and others, and to wait until he had helped everybody into Nirvana before losing himself into it. The Mahayanists thus claimed that the Arhat had not aimed high enough. According to the Mahayana Buddhism, the ideal man, the aim of the Buddhist effort, was not the rather self-centered, cold and narrow-minded Arhat, but the all-compassionate Bodhisattva, who abandoned the world, but not the beings in it. Wisdom had been taught as the highest quality for an Arhat, and compassion as a subsidiary virtue; but to a Bodhisattva, compassion came to rank as equal with wisdom. While the wisdom of an Arhat had been fruitful in setting free in

himself. What there was to be set free, it was rather sterile in ways and means of helping ordinary people. The Bodhisattva would be a man who does not only set himself free, but who is also skilful in devising means for bringing out and maturing the latent seeds of enlightenment in others. According to the Prajna-paramita-sutra, the Buddha taught: “Doers of what is hard are the Bodhisattvas, the great beings who have set out to win supreme enlightenment. They do not wish to attain their own private Nirvana. On the contrary, they have survey the highly painful world of being, but they do not tremble at birth-and-death. They have set out for the benefit of the world, for the peace and happiness of the world. They have resolved, and yet desirous to win supreme enlightenment, they do not tremble at birth and death. They have set out for the benefit of the world, for the ease of the world, out of pity for the world. They have resolved: ‘We will become a shelter for the world, a refuge for all beings, the world’s place of rest, the final belief of all beings, islands of the world, lights of the world, leaders of the world, the world’s means of salvation.

According to the Mahayana Buddhism, the ideal of the Bodhisattva was partly due to social pressure on the Order, but to a great extent it was inherent in the practice of the ‘Unlimited,’ which had trained the monks not to discriminate between themselves and others. As we saw, Buddhism has at its disposal two methods by which it reduces the sense of separateness on the part of individuals. The one is the culture of the social emotions, or sentiments, such as loving-kindness (friendliness) and compassion. The other consists in acquiring the habit of regarding whatever one thinks, feels or does as an interplay of impersonal forces, called ‘Dharmas,’ weaning oneself slowly from such ideas as ‘I’ or ‘mine’ or ‘self.’ There is a logical contradiction between the method of wisdom, which sees no persons at all, but only Dharmas, and the method of the ‘Unlimited’ which cultivates relations to people as persons. The meditation on Dharmas dissolves other people, as well as oneself, into a conglomeration of impersonal and instantaneous dharmas. It reduces our manhood into 5 heaps, or pieces, plus a label. If there is nothing in the world except bundles of Dharmas, as cold and as impersonal as atoms, instantaneously perishing all the time, there is nothing which friendliness and compassion could work on. One cannot wish well to a Dharma which is gone by the time one has come to wish

it well, nor can one pity a Dharma, say a 'mind-object,' or a 'sight-organ,' or a 'sound-consciousness.' In those Buddhist circles where the method of Dharmas was practiced to a greater extent than the 'Unlimited,' it led to a certain dryness of mind, to aloofness, and to lack of human warmth. The true task of the Buddhist is to carry on with both contradictory methods at the same time. As the method of Dharmas leads to boundless expansion of the self, because one identifies oneself with more and more living beings. As the method of wisdom explodes the idea that there are any persons at all in the world, so the method of the 'Unlimited' increases the awareness of the personal problems of more and more persons. How then does the Mahayana resolve this contradiction? The Buddhist philosophers differ from philosophers bred in the Aristotelean tradition in that they are not frightened but delighted by a contradiction. They deal with this, as with other contradictions, by merely stating it in an uncompromising form, and then they leave it at that. According to the Diamond Sutra: "Here, oh! Subhuti! A Bodhisattva should think thus 'As many beings as there are in the universe of beings, be they being egg-born, or from a womb, or moisture-born, or miraculously born; be they with form, or without; be they with perception, without perception, or with neither perception nor no-perception, as far as any conceivable universe of beings is conceived; all these should be led by me into Nirvana, into that realm of Nirvana which leaves nothing behind. And yet, although innumerable beings have thus been led to Nirvana, no being at all has been led to Nirvana. And why? If in a Bodhisattva the perception of a 'being' should take place, he would not be called an 'enlightenment-being' or a Bodhisattva."

In short, the Bodhisattva ideal originated from Mahayana Buddhism, but the term Bodhisattva is not confined solely to Mahayana Buddhism. In Theravada, Sakyamuni Buddha is referred to as "Bodhisatta" (Bodhisattva) in the past lives described in the Jatakas, during which he is said to have gradually perfected the good qualities of a Buddha. In the Mahayana sense, however, the Bodhisattva concept is an explicit rejection of Nikaya Buddhism's ideal religious paradigm, the Arhat. In Mahayana the Arhat is characterized as limited and selfish, concerned only with personal salvation, in contrast to the Bodhisattva, who works very hard for all sentient beings. The

beginning of the bodhisattva's career is marked by the dawning of the "mind of awakening" (Bodhi-citta), which is the resolve to become a Buddha in order to benefit others. So, Bodhisattva is considered as a human being with his own karmas at his very birth as all other creatures, but he can be able to get rid of all his inner conflicts, including bad karmas and sufferings, and external crises, including environments, calamities and other dilemma, can change this unfortunate situation and can make a peaceful, prosperous and happy world for all to live in together by using his effort and determination in cultivating a realistic and practical way without depending on external powers. In Mahayana literature, this is commonly followed by a public ceremony of a vow to attain Buddhahood (Pranidhana) in order to benefit other sentient beings. That is to say: "Above to seek bodhi, below to save (transform) beings." This is one of the great vows of a Bodhisattva. After that point the bodhisattva pursues the goal of Buddhahood by progressively cultivating the six, sometimes ten, "perfections" (Paramita): generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom. The two primary qualities in which the Bodhisattva trains are compassion and wisdom, and when the perfections are fully cultivated and compassion and wisdom developed to their highest level, the Bodhisattva becomes a Buddha.

III. Bodhisattva-Vehicle:

The term Vehicle or "yana" was developed in Hinayana Buddhism. Yana means a vehicle in which the practitioner travels on the way to enlightenment. According to the Lotus Sutra, there are three Vehicles, or conveyances, or three divisions of Buddha's Teachings, which carry living beings across samsara or mortality (births-and-deaths). They are Hearer-Yana, Pratyeka-Buddha-Yana, and Bodhisattva-Yana. The word "Vehicle" symbolizes carrying and transporting sentient beings to enlightenment. Three Yanas are only expedient means that Buddha had taught based on the capacity of his disciples or hearers. In Buddhism, there are also five vehicles conveying to the karma-reward which differs according to the vehicle. They are summed up as: According to the Mahayana: Narayana, Devayana, Arava-kayanam, Pratyeka-Buddhayanam, and Bodhisattva-yanam. According to the Hinayana: Buddha, Sravakas, Pratyeka-buddhas, the gods of the

brahma-heavens, and those of desire realm. According to the Esoteric cult: men, corresponding with earth; devas, corresponding with water, sravakas, corresponding with fire; pratyeka-buddhas, corresponding with wind; and Bodhisattvas, corresponding with the “void.” Bodhisattvayana or Bodhisattva Vehicle or Bodhisattva way is one of the five vehicles which teaches the observance of the six paramitas the perfecting of the self and the benefits of others. The objective is the salvation of all beings and attaining of Buddhahood. The aim of Bodhisattvayana is the attainment of Supreme Buddhahood. Therefore, it is also called the Buddhayana or Tathagatayana.

(B) Lay Bodhisattvas

I. An Overview of Lay Bodhisattvas:

Buddhism never separates itself from the secular life. On the contrary, the Buddha always reminded his followers, monks, nuns, upasakas and upasikas, to live the best and highest life and to get the most out of life. However, the best joy in life according to Buddhism are not the pleasures and materials, but the light-hearted and joyful happiness at all time in mind. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that it is true that we must study the Buddha’s teachings, but the main thing is to live them in our daily life. If we can do this, we are truly Buddhists of a living Buddhism. If not, we are only embracing the corpse of a dead Buddhism. According to the Avatamsaka Sutra, there are two aspects of the Buddhist life. Everyone has hopes that his wishes will be fulfilled someday. Hope itself is not wrong, for hope will help people try to reach to better situations. However, when a person begins to expect things have to happen the way he or she wishes, he or she begins to have trouble with disappointment. Thus, the Buddha taught: “Suffering of frustrated desire,” or unfulfilled wishes cause suffering (suffering due to unfulfilled wishes), or cannot get what one wants causes suffering. The pain which results from not receiving what one seeks, from disappointed hope or unrewarded effort, one of the eight sorrows. And therefore, the Buddha advised his disciples “content with few desires.” “Content with few desires” means having few desires; “knowing how to feel satisfied” means being content. Knowing

how to feel satisfied with few possessions means being content with material conditions that allow us to be healthy and strong enough to practice the Way. “Knowing how to feel satisfied and being content with material conditions” is an effective way to cut through the net of passions and desires, attain a peaceful state of body and mind and accomplish our supreme goal of cultivation. There are some people who regard this life as a life of suffering or pessimists may be tolerated as long as they are simply feeling dissatisfied with this life, but when they begin to give up this life as hopeless and try to escape to a better life by practicing austerities or self-mortifications, then they are to be abhorred. Some people believe that Buddhism is pessimistic because its significant viewpoint on the idea that there is nothing but hardship in this world, even pleasures end in hardship. It is totally wrong thinking that way. Buddhism believes that in this present life, there are both pleasures and hardships. He who regards life as entirely pleasure will suffer when the so-called “happiness” ceases to exist. The Buddha believes that happiness and sufferings intertwine in our daily life. If one is ignorant of the fact that pleasures can cause hardships, one will be disappointed when that fact presents itself. Thus, the Buddha teaches that one should regard hardship as hardship, accepting it as a fact and finding way to oppose it. Hence his emphasis on perseverance, fortitude, and forbearance, the latter being one of the six Perfections. In short, according to the Buddhist view, there are both pleasures and hardships in life, but one must not be discouraged when hardship comes, or lose oneself in rapture of joy when pleasure comes. Both pleasures and hardships must be taken alike with caution for we know that pleasures end in hardship. From this understanding, sincere Buddhists will be determined to cultivate diligently to turn both worldly pleasures and hardships to an eternally transcendental joy. It is to say that we are not bound to both worldly pleasures and hardships at all times. They come and go naturally. We are always live a life without worries, without afflictions because we know for sure that everything will pass. The Buddhist point of view on both optimism and pessimism is very clear: Buddhism is not optimistic nor pessimistic on human life. Two extremes of both optimism and pessimism are prevented by the moderate doctrine of Buddhism. To a Buddhist, a worthwhile life, according to Mahayana Buddhist point of view, does not consist in

merely spending one's life in peace and quiet but in creating something good for other beings. When one tries to become a better person through his practice, this endeavor is the creation of good. When he does something for the benefit of other people, this is the creation of a still higher standard of good. The various arts are the creation of beauty, and all honest professions are the creation of various kinds of energy that are beneficial to society. Creation is bound to bring with it pain and hardship. However, one finds life worth living when one makes a strenuous effort for the sake of something good. He endeavors to become a little better a person and to do just a little more for the good of other people, through such positive endeavor we are enabled to feel deep joy in our human lives.

Even lay practitioners who want to follow in the footsteps of Bodhisattvas, we should try to cultivate some typical methods of Bodhisattvas' ways of cultivation. The Lay Bodhisattvas are devout Buddhists who follow Bodhisattva-yana which teaches the observance of the six paramitas the perfecting of the self and the benefits of others. The objective is the salvation of all beings and attaining of Buddhahood. The aim of Bodhisattvayana is the attainment of Supreme Buddhahood. Therefore, it is also called the Buddhayana or Tathagatayana. Though still a lay Bodhisattvas, he or she should have a profound understanding; they should have the insight that the four noble truths to understand the true aspects of reality. Bodhisattvas use the one truth to understand the true aspects of reality. The wisdom of the Bodhisattva is always acute, so they often have a broad compassionate mind. According to the tradition of Northern Buddhism, a Bodhisattva wants to practice Bodhisattva's practising must first vow to devote the mind to bodhi (bodhicita). He or she must have loving-kindness to all living beings. He or she must always practise the six Paramitas. Finally, he or she must practise the four all-embracing virtues. Besides, a lay Bodhisattva should also learn Bodhisattva's four kinds of fearlessness. First, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of memory and ability to preach without fear. Second, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of moral diagnosis and application of the remedy. Third, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of ratiocination. Fourth, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of solving doubts. The Lay Bodhisattvas are devout Buddhists

who already took refuge in the Triple Gem. Besides keeping the five basic precepts, they also keep the six grave sins and the twenty-eight faults.

II. Lay Bodhisattvas' Precepts:

An Overview of Bodhisattvas' Precepts for Lay People: Buddhism never separates itself from the secular life. On the contrary, the Buddha always reminded his followers, monks, nuns, upasakas and upasikas, to live the best and highest life and to get the most out of life. However, the best joy in life according to Buddhism are not the pleasures and materials, but the light-hearted and joyful happiness at all time in mind. Sincere Buddhists should always remember that it is true that we must study the Buddha's teachings, but the main thing is to live them in our daily life. If we can do this, we are truly Buddhists of a living Buddhism. If not, we are only embracing the corpse of a dead Buddhism. According to the Avatamsaka Sutra, there are two aspects of the Buddhist life. Everyone has hopes that his wishes will be fulfilled someday. Hope itself is not wrong, for hope will help people try to reach to better situations. However, when a person begins to expect things have to happen the way he or she wishes, he or she begins to have trouble with disappointment. Thus, the Buddha taught: "Suffering of frustrated desire," or unfulfilled wishes cause suffering (suffering due to unfulfilled wishes), or cannot get what one wants causes suffering. The pain which results from not receiving what one seeks, from disappointed hope or unrewarded effort, one of the eight sorrows. And therefore, the Buddha advised his disciples "content with few desires." "Content with few desires" means having few desires; "knowing how to feel satisfied" means being content. Knowing how to feel satisfied with few possessions means being content with material conditions that allow us to be healthy and strong enough to practice the Way. "Knowing how to feel satisfied and being content with material conditions" is an effective way to cut through the net of passions and desires, attain a peaceful state of body and mind and accomplish our supreme goal of cultivation. There are some people who regard this life as a life of suffering or pessimists may be tolerated as long as they are simply feeling dissatisfied with this life, but when they begin to give up this life as hopeless and try to escape to a better life by practicing austerities or self-mortifications, then they are to be abhorred. Some people believe that Buddhism is pessimistic because its significant viewpoint on the idea that there is nothing but hardship in this world, even pleasures end in hardship. It is totally wrong thinking that way. Buddhism believes that in this present life, there are both pleasures and hardships. He who regards life as entirely pleasure will suffer when the so-

called “happiness” ceases to exist. The Buddha believes that happiness and sufferings intertwine in our daily life. If one is ignorant of the fact that pleasures can cause hardships, one will be disappointed when that fact presents itself. Thus the Buddha teaches that one should regard hardship as hardship, accepting it as a fact and finding way to oppose it. Hence his emphasis on perserverance, fortitude, and forbearance, the latter being one of the six Perfections. In short, according to the Buddhist view, there are both pleasures and hardships in life, but one must not be discouraged when hardship comes, or lose oneself in rapture of joy when pleasure comes. Both pleasures and hardships must be taken alike with caution for we know that pleasures end in hardship. From this understanding, sincere Buddhists will be determined to cultivate diligently to turn both worldly pleasures and hardships to an eternally transcendental joy. It is to say that we are not bound to both worldly pleasures and hardships at all times. They come and go naturally. We are always live a life without worries, without afflictions because we know for sure that everything will pass. The Buddhist point of view on both optimism and pessimism is very clear: Buddhism is not optimistic nor pessimistic on human life. Two extremes of both optimism and pessimism are prevented by the moderate doctrine of Buddhism. To a Buddhist, a worthwhile life, according to Mahayana Buddhist point of view, does not consist in merely spending one’s life in peace and quiet but in creating something good for other beings. When one tries to become a better person through his practice, this endeavor is the creation of good. When he does something for the benefit of other people, this is the creation of a still higher standard of good. The various arts are the creation of beauty, and all honest professions are the creation of various kinds of energy that are beneficial to society. Creation is bound to bring with it pain and hardship. However, one finds life worth living when one makes a strenuous effort for the sake of something good. He endeavors to become a little better a person and to do just a little more for the good of other people, through such positive endeavor we are enabled to feel deep joy in our human lives.

Even lay practitioners who want to follow in the footsteps of Bodhisattvas, we should try to cultivate some typical methods of Bodhisattvas' ways of cultivation. So, the Lay Bodhisattvas are devout Buddhists who take refuge in the Triple Gem and follow Bodhisattva-yana which teaches the observance of the six paramitas the perfecting of the self and the benefits of others. The objective is the salvation of all beings and attaining of Buddhahood. The aim of Bodhisattvayana is the attainment of Supreme Buddhahood. Therefore, it is also called the Buddhayana or Tathagatayana. Though still a lay Bodhisattvas, he or she should have a profound understanding; they should have the insight that the four noble truths to understand the true aspects of reality. Bodhisattvas

use the one truth to understand the true aspects of reality. The wisdom of the Bodhisattva is always acute, so they often have a broad compassionate mind. According to the tradition of Northern Buddhism, a Bodhisattva wants to practice Bodhisattva's practising must first vow to devote the mind to bodhi (bodhicita). He or she must have loving-kindness to all living beings. He or she must always practise the six Paramitas. Finally, he or she must practise the four all-embracing virtues. Besides, a lay Bodhisattva should also learn Bodhisattva's four kinds of fearlessness. First, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of memory and ability to preach without fear. Second, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of moral diagnosis and application of the remedy. Third, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of ratiocination. Fourth, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of solving doubts. The Upasaka Sutra contains Buddha's teachings for Sujata, mentioned precepts observed by a layman. The Sujata-Sutra is also called Good Birth Sutra or Good Life Sutra and was translated into Chinese by T'an-Wu-Ch'an. As mentioned above, besides keeping the five basic precepts, lay people who cultivate on the Bodhisattvas' Path should always keep six grave sins and the twenty-eight faults in the Sujata-Sutra.

Six Major Precepts: The six grave sins are extremely important for lay Bodhisattvas, for keeping these precepts will help them attain the Holy fruitions. *The First Major Precept Is the Precept of Killing:* Followers of the Buddha! After an upasaka or an upasika takes the precepts, even if he or she has to sacrifice his or her life, he or she should not kill any being, even if it is an ant. After taking the precepts, if he or she instructs others to kill or if he or she, himself or herself kills, he or she loses the upasaka or upasika precepts. This person cannot attain even the state of warmth, let alone the fruition of a stream-enterer or a non-returner. He or she is called a precept-breaking upasaka or upasika, a stinking upasaka or upasika, an outcast upasaka or upasika, a defiled upasaka or upasika, and an afflicted upasaka or upasika. *The Second Major Precept Is the Precept of Stealing:* Followers of the Buddha! After an upasaka or an upasika takes the precepts, even if he or she has to sacrifice his or her life, he or she should not steal, even as little as a penny. After taking the precepts, if he or she breaks the precept, he or she loses the upasaka or upasika precepts. This person cannot attain even the state of warmth, let alone the fruition of a stream-enterer or a nonreturner. He or she is called a precept-breaking upasaka or upasika, a stinking upasaka or upasika, an outcast upasaka or upasika, a defiled upasaka or upasika, and an afflicted upasaka or upasika. *The Third Major Precept Is the Precept of Lying:* Followers of the Buddha! After an upasaka or an upasika takes the precepts, even if he or she has to sacrifice his or her life, he or she should not lie that he or she has mastered the contemplation of impurity or attained the fruition of a

non-returner. After taking the precepts, if he or she breaks the precept, he or she loses the upasaka or upasika precepts. This person cannot attain even the state of warmth, let alone the fruition of a stream-enterer or a nonreturner. He or she is called a precept-breaking upasak or upasika, a stinking upasaka or upasika, an outcast upasaka or upasika, a defiled Upasaka or upasika, and an afflicted upasaka or upasika. *The Fourth Major Precept Is the Precept of Sexual Misconduct:* Followers of the Buddha! After an upasaka or an upasika takes the precepts, even if he or she has to sacrifice his or her life, he or she should not engage in any sexual misconduct. After taking the precepts, if he or she breaks this precept, he or she loses the upasaka or upasika precepts. This person cannot attain even the state of warmth, let alone the fruition of a stream-enterer or a nonreturner. He or she is called a precept-breaking upasak or upasika, a stinking upasaka or upasika, an outcast upasaka or upasika, a defiled upasaka or upasika, and an afflicted upasaka or upasika. *The Fifth Major Precept Is the Precept of Talking About the Wrong Deeds of the Four Categories of Buddha's Disciples:* Followers of the Buddha! After an upasaka or an upasika takes the precepts, even if he or she has to sacrifice his or her life, he or she should not speak of the faults of the bhikkhus, bhikkhunis, upasakas, and upasikas. After taking the precepts, if he or she breaks this precept, he or she loses the upasaka or upasika precepts. This person cannot attain even the state of warmth, let alone the fruition of a stream-enterer or a nonreturner. He or she is called a precept-breaking upasak or upasika, a stinking upasaka or upasika, an outcast upasaka or upasika, a defiled upasaka or upasika, and an afflicted upasaka or upasika. *The Sixth Major Precept Is the Precept of Selling Alcohol:* Followers of the Buddha! After an upasaka or an upasika takes the precepts, even if he or she has to sacrifice his or her life, he or she should not sell intoxicants. After taking the precepts, if he or she breaks this precept, he or she loses the upasaka or upasika precepts. This person cannot attain even the state of warmth, let alone the fruition of a stream-enterer or a nonreturner. He or she is called a precept-breaking upasak or upasika, a stinking upasaka or upasika, an outcast upasaka or upasika, a defiled upasaka or upasika, and an afflicted upasaka or upasika.

Twenty-Eight Secondary Precepts: Besides the six major precepts, there are also twenty-eight secondary precepts or faults. These precepts help Lay Bodhisattvas nurture their morality on their daily cultivation. *The First Secondary Precept* is the precept of not making offering to one's parents and teachers. Followers of the Buddha! As the Buddha has said, If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not make offerings to his or her parents and teachers, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to

create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Second Secondary Precept* is the precept of indulging in intoxicants. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, indulges in intoxicants, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Third Secondary Precept* is the precept of not visiting and looking after the sick. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not look after those who are sick, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Fourth Secondary Precept* is the precept of ignoring one's begging. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, upon seeing supplicants, does not give away whatever he or she can, but rather send them away empty-handed, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Fifth Secondary Precept* is the precept of not paying respect to the elderly among the four categories of Buddha's disciples. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, upon seeing bhikkhus, bhikkhunis, elder upasakas or elder upasikas, does not get up to greet and bow to them, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Sixth Secondary Precept* is the precept of pride when seeing the four categories of Buddha's disciples break the precepts. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, arouses this arrogant thought upon seeing bhikkhus, bhikkhunis, upasakas, and upasikas who violate the precepts, "I am superior to them, for they are not as good as I," he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Seventh Secondary Precept* is the precept of not fulfilling the precept of not eating after midday during the six days of a month. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not keep the eight precepts and makes offerings to the Triple Gem for six days each month, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in

taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Eighth Secondary Precept* is the precept of not listening to the Dharma. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not attend the Dharma lectures held within 12 kilometers, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Ninth Secondary Precept* is the precept of using the Sangha's furniture and utensils. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, makes use of the Sangha's beds, chairs and utensils, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Tenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of drinking water that contains insects. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, suspects that there are living organisms in the water and drink it anyway, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Eleventh Secondary Precept* is the precept of walking alone in dangerous places. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, travels alone in places that are considered dangerous, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twelfth Secondary Precept* is the precept of staying alone in the bhikkhu's or bhikkhuni's vihara. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, stays overnight alone in a bhikkhu's or bhikkhuni's vihara, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Thirteenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of fighting for the sake of wealth. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, for the sake of wealth, beats and scolds his or her slaves, servants or other people, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will

continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Fourteenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of giving leftover food to the four categories of Buddha's disciples. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, offers leftover food to bhikkhus, bhikkhunis, upasakas, upasikas, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Fifteenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of keeping cats or foxes. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, raises cats or foxes, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Sixteenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of rearing animals and not giving them away to those who have not taken the precepts. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, raises elephants, horses, cows, goats, camels, donkeys, or any other animals, and does not give them to those who have not taken the precepts, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Seventeenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of not keeping the three outfits, bowls and walking sticks. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not keep the sanghati clothes, bowls, and walking sticks (the daily necessities of the Sangha), he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Eighteenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of not ensuring that the irrigation water of rice farm is insect free, and to carry out farming on land. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, needs to farm for a living, but does not ensure that the irrigation water of rice farm is insect free, and to carries out farming on land, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Nineteenth Secondary Precept* is the precept of using an unjust scale in business. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, engages in business for a living, that uses a balance or scale to sell goods, then after

having made a deal, he or she should not call off a previous deal for a more profitable one. When buying from others, he or she should advise the seller if he or she is trying to be dishonest in using his or her balance or scale. If an upasaka or upasika does not do so, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twentieth Secondary Precept* is the precept of having sexual encounter at the wrong time and place. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, has sexual intercourse in improper places and improper times, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-First Secondary Precept* is the precept of evading government taxes while doing business. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, evades government taxes while doing business or reports dishonestly, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Second Secondary Precept* is the precept of not obeying the country's law. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not obey the country's law, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Third Secondary Precept* is the precept of not making offering to the Triple Gem when obtaining new food. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, does not offer the newly harvested grain, fruits, and vegetables first to the Triple Gem, but consumes them first himself or herself, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Fourth Secondary Precept* is the precept of not giving dharma lectures without the Sangha's permission. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, gives Dharma talks without the Sangha's permission, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to

transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Fifth Secondary Precept* is the precept of walking in front of the five categories of Buddha's disciples. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, walks in front of a bhikkhu, bhikkhuni, siksamana, sramanera, sramaneri, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Sixth Secondary Precept* is the precept of not distributing the Sangha food equally. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept of distributing the Sangha food equally, but does not distribute equally, meanwhile offering better food in excessive amount to his or her own master, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Seventh Secondary Precept* is the precept of rearing silk worms. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, raise silk worms, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death. *The Twenty-Eighth Secondary Precept* is the precept of ignoring the sick on the road. If an upasaka or upasika, after taking the precept, come across a sick person on the road, if this upasaka or upasika does not look after and arrange a place for this sick person, but rather deserts him or her, he or she commits the fault of not being mindful and losing the initial intention in taking the precept. If he or she does not have the mind of repentance, he or she will deteriorate. He or she is impure and will continue to create defiled karma that leads to transmigration in the cycle of birth and death.

(C) Monastic Bodhisattvas

I. An Overview of Monastic Bodhisattvas:

Great Compassion is the life calling of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas. Thus, those who have developed the Bodhi Mind, wishing to rescue and ferry other sentient beings across, should simply vow to be reborn in the Triple Realm, among the five turbidities and the three evil paths. If we abandon sentient beings to lead a selfish life of tranquility, we lack compassion. A

preoccupation with egoistic needs contrary to the path of enlightenment. *According to Masters Chih-I and T'ien-Ju in The Pure Land Buddhism, there are two types of Bodhisattvas: First*, those who have followed the Bodhisattva path for a long time and attained the Tolerance of Non-Birth or insight into the non-origination of phenomena. These Bodhisattvas can vow to be reborn in this evil realm to rescue sentient beings without fear of being drown in the sea of Birth and Death with sentient beings. The Perfection of Wisdom Treatise states: "Take the case of the person who watches a relative drowning in the river, a person, more intelligent and resourceful, hurries off to fetch a boat and sails to rescue his relative. Thus both persons escape drowning. This is similar to the case of a Bodhisattva who has attained Tolerance of Non-Birth, has adequate skills and means to save sentient beings." *Second*, Bodhisattvas who have not attained the Tolerance of Non-Birth, as well as ordinary people who have just developed the Bodhi Mind. If these Bodhisattvas aspire to perfect that Tolerance and enter the evil life of the Triple Realm to save sentient beings, they should always remain close to the Buddhas and Good Advisors. The Perfection of Wisdom Treatise states: "It is unwise for human beings who are still bound by all kinds of afflictions, even if they possess a great compassionate Mind, to seek a premature rebirth in this evil realm to rescue sentient beings. Why is this so? It is because this evil, defiled world, afflictions are powerful and widespread. Those who lack the power of Tolerance of Non-Birth are bound to be swayed by external circumstances. They then become slaves to form and sound, fame and fortune, with the resulting karma of greed, anger and delusion. Once this occurs, they cannot even save themselves, how can they save others?" If, for example, they are born in the human realm, in this evil environment full of non-believers and externalists, it is difficult to encounter genuine sages. Therefore, it is not easy to hear the Buddha Dharma nor achieve the goals of the sages. Of those who planted the seeds of generosity, morality and blessings in previous lives and are thus now enjoying power and fame, how many are not infatuated with a life of wealth and honor, allowing in endless greed and lust? Therefore, even when they are counselled by enlightened teachers, they do not believe them nor act accordingly. Moreover, to satisfy their passions, they take advantage of their existing power and influence, creating a great deal of bad karma. Thus, when their present life comes to an end, they descend upon the three evil paths for countless eons. After that, they are reborn as humans of low social and economic status. If they do not then meet good spiritual advisors, they will continue to be deluded, creating more bad karma and descending once again into the lower more realms. From time immemorial, sentient beings caught in the cycles of Birth and Death have been in this predicament. The Vimalakirti Sutra also states: "If you cannot even cure your own illness, how can you cure

the illnesses of others?” The Perfection of Wisdom Treatise further states: “Take the case of two persons, each of whom watches a relative drowning in the river. The first person, acting on impulse, hastily jumps into the water. However, because he lacks capabilities and the necessary means, in the end, both of them drown.” Thus, newly aspiring Bodhisattvas are like the first individual, who still lacks the power of Tolerance of Non-Birth and cannot save sentient beings. The Perfection of Wisdom Treatise further teaches: “This is not unlike a young child he should not leave his mother, lest he fall into a well, drown in the river or die of starvation; or a young bird whose wings are not fully developed. It must bide its time, hopping from branch to branch, until it can fly afar, leisurely and unimpeded. In the same manner, ordinary people who lack the Tolerance of Non-Birth should limit themselves to Buddha Recitation, to achieve one-pointedness of Mind. Once that goal is reached, at the time of death, they will certainly be reborn in the Pure Land. Having seen Amitabha Buddha and reached the Tolerance of Non-Birth, they can steer the boat of that Tolerance into the sea of Birth and Death, to ferry sentient beings across and accomplish countless Buddha deeds at will.”

All monastic Bodhisattvas have four fearlessnesses: *First*, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of memory and ability to preach without fear. *Second*, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of moral diagnosis and application of the remedy. *Third*, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of ratiocination. *Fourth*, Bodhisattva-fearlessness arises from powers of solving doubts. Besides, there are five advantages for those who attain the Bodhisattvahood. “Bodhisattva” means an enlightened being (bodhi-being), or a Buddha-to-be, or a being who desires to attain enlightenment, or a being who seeks enlightenment, including Buddhas, Pratyeka-buddhas, or any disciples of the Buddhas. *According to Sarvastivadis, there are five advantages for those who attain the Bodhisattvahood:* *First*, they are not born in woeful states, but only among gods and men. *Second*, they are no more reborn in a poor or a low-class family. *Third*, they are, by virtue, a man and not a woman. *Fourth*, they are born in perfection free from physical defects. *Fifth*, they can remember the previous lives of their own and never forget them.

II. A Summary of Monastic Bodhisattva Precepts:

An Overview of Monastic Bodhisattva Precepts: The precepts of a Mahayana Bodhisattva. There are ten major and 48 minor. Any people can take the Bodhisattva ordination. This is not only with the determination to be free from cyclic existence, but also with the motivation of attaining enlightenment in order to benefit all beings. The Bodhisattva vows work

particularly to subdue the selfish attitude. They deal not only with our physical and verbal actions, but also with our thoughts and attitudes. Thus, they're more difficult to keep than the vows for individual liberation. The Bodhisattva ordination is found only in the Mahayana traditions. It may be taken by lay people, monks, and nuns. Although the essence is the same, the enumeration of the precepts varies in the Tibetan and Chinese versions. When taking these precepts, we determine to keep them until attaining enlightenment. To take Bodhisattva vows is entirely voluntary. To take them, we must first understand the advantages of living ethically. There are innumerable benefits, but they may be subsumed by saying that living ethically leads us to liberation and enlightenment and enables us to make our lives useful for others. Some people hesitate to take Bodhisattva precepts because they feel they can't keep them purely. But we shouldn't expect ourselves to be perfect from the outset. If we could protect our precepts without one blemish, we needn't take them, because we'd already be an arhat or a Buddha. Devout Buddhists should always remember that precepts are taken because we can't keep them perfectly. But through trying to, our actions, speech and attitudes will improve. On the contrary, we should not take precepts if we feel we are not ready or incapable of maintaining them. To keep our precepts, we need to be very conscientious and mindful. Should we transgress them, we can employ the four opponent powers: regret, refuge with the altruistic intention, remedial action and the determination not to repeat the negative action... to purify the imprints left on our mindstreams. To devout Buddhists, precepts should be regarded as the ornaments of a sincere practitioner. The Ten Major Precepts or the ten weighty prohibitions. In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, "If one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice) them, he is not a bodhisattva, nor he is a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart."

Ten Monastic Bodhisattvas' Major Precepts: The Brahma-Net Sutra, or Indra's Net Sutra, Sutra of Net of Indra, also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumrajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains ten rules of Mahayana for every follower. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva. There are two main divisions of moral code

(ten major precepts and forty-eight minor precepts). ***The Followings Are Ten Monastic Bodhisattvas' Major Precepts:*** In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, "There are ten major Bodhisattva precepts or the ten weighty prohibitions: not killing, not stealing, precept on sexual misconduct (not to lust), precept on lying and false speech, precept on drinking or selling alcohol beverages, precept on broadcasting the faults of the assembly (not to discuss the faults of other Buddhists), precept on prasing oneself and disparaging others (not to praise oneself and disparage others), precept on stinginess and abuse of others, precept on anger and resentment (not to get angry), and precept on slandering the Triple Jewel (not to insult the Three Treasures). If one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice) them, he or she is not a bodhisattva, nor he or she is a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart." In cultivation, practitioners see the Ten Cardinal Precepts as koan practice. These Buddhist precepts can be seen from two perspectives. For example, the first precepts, "Do not kill," gives the impression that it just concerns right behavior or morality. While such teaching is needed, those who continue practice and further clarify their insight into emptiness knows that, actually, there is no one to do the killing and no one to be killed. From the ultimate standpoint, "Do not kill" also warns us not to fall into the dualistic view of killing versus not killing. However, it would be a misinterpretation to use this view of the precepts as a pretext for immoral transgression or excess. In contrast to the conventional habit of viewing things from the standpoint of good and bad, the Buddhist sees the world, with all its good and evil, just as it is. Fundamentally, the world is neither good nor bad. Without genuine insight, so-called moral perfection is uninformed and hollow. True insight not only leads to the realization that there is no killers and no one to be killed, it also results in the realization that one simply cannot "kill." Whereas "do not" is an injunction, which may not necessarily lead to enlightened behavior, the "cannot" realization naturally evolves into the deeply rooted stance of "I won't kill." Yet the line separating "do not" (injunction) and "cannot" (realization) seems to dissolve when we see that we are always killing something. We may decide not to kill animals for food, but what about vegetables? And so on with everything else we destroy and discard. If we obeyed the injunction "do not kill" literally, we could not eat, we would starve to death, thus ending up by taking life anyway. How can we overcome this dilemma? When the need arises to take life or destroy, whether it be animal, vegetable, or inanimate object, one should just dwell on "Mu" with all one's heart. Thus, each moment we are taking life from some form of

existence can be an occasion to be deeply aware of our oneness with the universe in "Mu." Maintaining this attitude is the key point of the Five, Ten, Two Hundred Fifty or Three hundred forty-eight moral precepts. These precepts are not meant to bind or enslave us. Applied with "Mu" insight, they can be a means to emancipation. The Ten Precepts as koan study are no longer just moral injunctions, but constitute a further step on the road toward the complete realization of oneness in our everyday actions. Such realization does not negate the validity of relative values; it simply does not allow relative values to obscure our original freedom, our Buddha-nature.

In the Brahma-Net Sutra, the Buddha said to his disciples, "As for the ten major Bodhisattva precepts, if one receives the precepts but fails to keep (observe/practice) them, he is not a bodhisattva, nor is he a seed of Buddhahood. I, too, recite these precepts. All Bodhisattvas have studied them in the past, will study in the future, and are studying them now. I have explained the main characteristics of the Bodhisattva precepts. You should study and observe them with all your heart." (For more information, please see Chapter 17 B-I).

Forty-Eight Secondary or Lighter Precepts for Monastic Bodhisattvas: As mentioned above, the Brahma-Net Sutra, or Indra's Net Sutra, Sutra of Net of Indra, also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains ten rules of Mahayana for every follower. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva. There are two main divisions of moral code (ten major precepts and forty-eight minor precepts). ***The Followings Are Forty-Eight Secondary or Lighter Precepts for Monastic Bodhisattvas:*** Forty-eight precepts which the Buddha taught all Bodhisattvas in the Brahma-Net Sutra: respect toward Teachers and Friends, not to Drink Intoxicant Substances, not to Deliberately Eat Meat, not to eat the Five Pungent Herbs (garlic, chives, leeks, onions, asafoetida or cury), not to Be Willing to Teach Repentance, not to Fail to Request the Dharma or Make Offerings, not to Fail to Attend Dharma Lectures, not to Deliberately Turn Away from the Mahayana, failing to Care for the Sick (both physical and mental), not to Store Deadly Weapons, not to Serve as an Emissary, not to Do Unlawful Businesses, not to Slander the Buddha Dharma, not to Start Wildfire, not to Teach Non-Mahayana Dharma, not to Expound External Theories for Own Gaining, not to Rely on Others' Powers such as Officials to raise funds, not to serve as a Dharma Transmission Teacher while

not understanding sufficiently the Dharma and the Moral Codes, not to Speak with Double-Tongued Speech, fail to Liberate Sentient Beings, not to Return Anger for Anger, Blow for Blow, being Arrogant (Refuse instructions on the sutras and moral codes from Dharma Master on account of his own intelligence) and Refuse to request the Dharma, not to Arrogantly refuse to Answer Dharma Law to Those Who Seek the meaning of Sutras and Moral Codes, fail to Practice Mahayana Teachings, to Serve as an Unskilled Abbot or Unskilled Leadership of the Assembly, not to Accept Personal Offerings. All offerings should belong to the Sangha or monasteries. Therefore, to accept personal offerings is a form of stealing the possessions of the Sangha, not to Accept any offerings from Personal Invitations because to do so is also to steal the possessions of the Sangha, laypersons not to Issue Discriminatory Invitations, not to Pursue Improper Livelihoods such as engaging in the worldly businesses under any circumstances, not to Handle any Business Affairs for the Laity, when Seeing Evil People Steal and Sell Statues or Paintings of Buddhas, Devoted Buddhist must try to repurchase (Buy Back) Clerics Along with Sacred Objects, not to Harm Sentient Beings (selling knives, clubs, bows, arrows, Abusing governmental position to confiscate people's possessions, raising cats, dogs, or any animals), not to Watch Improper Activities such as fighting, gambling or to listen to sounds of conch shells, drum, horns, guitars, flutes, songs or other music, etc, it is a Secondary Offense for a Buddhist to Temporary Abandoning of Bodhi Mind, especially monks and nuns, fail to Make Great Vows, fail to Take Solemn Oaths (would rather jump into a raging blaze, wrap self a thousand times with red-hot iron net, swallow red-hot iron pellets and drink molten iron, lie on a bonfire or burning iron, be impaled for eons by hundred of spears, jump into a caudron of boiling oil and roast for hundreds of thousands of eons, be pulverized from head to toe by an iron sledge hammer, have both eyes blinded by hundreds of thousands of swords, etc., should never break the precepts), not to Travel in Dangerous Areas, not to Sit in the Improper Order Within the Assembly, fail to Cultivate Merits and Wisdom, discrimination in Conferring the Precepts, teaching for the Sake of Personal Profits, reciting the Precepts to Evil Persons with a greed of fame, thoughts of Violating the Precepts, fail to Honor the Sutras and Moral Codes, fail to Teach Sentient Beings, preaching in an Inappropriate Manner. A devoted Buddhist, especially monks and nuns, should always have a mind of Great Compassion to teach and transform sentient beings, abuse high official position in the Order to undermine the moral code of the Buddhas and set Regulations against the Dharma, to destroy the Dharma for Fame or or profit (For more information, please see Chapter 17 B-II).

Chapter Twenty

The Fragrance of Meditation In the Brahmajala Sutra

Indra's Net Sutra, Sutra of Net of Indra, also called the Brahmajala-sutra, translated into Chinese by Kumarajiva around 406 A.D., the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indra's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. There are many treatises on it. The Brahmajala-sutra, the infinitude of worlds being as the eyes or holes in Indriya's net, which is all-embracing, like the Buddha's teaching. Sutra of the Net of Brahman Sutra of Mahayana Buddhism that contains the basic teaching on discipline and morality. It contains the Moral Code of the Bodhisattva. The ultimate goal of Zen is to attain Enlightenment. However, Zen practitioners should always remember that observing moral precepts develops concentration. Concentration leads to understanding. Continuous understanding means wisdom that enables us to eliminate greed, anger, and ignorance and to advance and obtain liberation, peace and joy. The code of conduct set forth by the Buddha is not a set of mere negative prohibitions, but an affirmation of doing good things, a career paved with good intentions for the welfare of happiness of mankind. These moral principles aim at making society secure by promoting unity, harmony and mutual understanding among people. This code of conduct is the stepping-stone to the Buddhist way of life. It is the basis for mental development. **One who is intent on meditation or concentration of mind should develop a love of virtue that nourishes mental life makes it steady and calm.** This searcher of highest purity of mind practises the burning out of the passions. He should always think: "Other may harm, but I will become harmless; others may slay living beings, but I will become a non-slayer; others may wrongly take things, but I will not; others may live unchaste, but I will live pure; other may slander, talk harshly, indulge in gossip, but I will talk only words that promote concord, harmless words, agreeable to the ear, full of love, heart pleasing, courteous, worthy of being borne in mind, timely, fit to the point; other may be covetous, but I will not covet; others may

mentally lay hold of things awry, but I will lay mental hold of things fully aright." And the content of this Enlightenment was explained by the Buddha as the enlightenment on all Dharmas. Buddhist practitioners must directly perceive all dharmas; and this enlightenment must be beyond the limits of time, personally understood and experienced, and altogether persuasive. This meant that the Dharma was to be intuited and not to be analytically reached by concepts. The reason why the Buddha so frequently refused to answer metaphysical problems was partly due to his conviction that the ultimate truth was to be realized in oneself through one's own efforts; for all that could be gained through discursive understanding was the surface of things and not things themselves, conceptual knowledge never gave full satisfaction to one's religious yearning. The attainment of the Bodhi could not be the accumulation of dialectical subtleties. And this is the key position taken up by Zen Buddhism as regards what it considers a final reality. Zen in this respect faithfully follows the injunction of the Buddha. The Buddha had an insight of higher order into the nature of things than that which could be obtained through ordinary logical reasoning is evidenced everywhere even in the so-called Theravada literature. Examples in the Brahmajala Sutra clearly show us the relationship between Zen and this sutra as regard to Enlightenment. The Buddha has to deal with all the heretical schools that were in existence in his days. He invariably makes reference after refuting them to the Tathagata's deeper understanding which goes beyond all their speculations. In fact, what they discuss just for the sake of discussion and to show the keenness of their analytical faculty about the soul, future life, eternity, and other important spiritual subjects, is not productive of any actual benefits for our inner welfare. The Buddha knew well where these reasonings would finally lead to and how trivial and unwholesome they were after all. **Thus, the Buddha taught in the Brahmajala Sutra, "Of these, monks, the Tathagata knows that these speculations thus arrived at, thus insisted on, will have such and such a result, such and such an effect on the future condition of those who trust in them. That does he know, and he knows also other things far beyond, far better than those speculations: and having that knowledge he is not puffed up, and thus untarnished he has in his own heart realized the way of escape from them, has understood,**

as they really are, the rising up and passing away of sensations, their sweet taste, their danger, how they cannot be relied on; and not grasping after any of those things men are eager for, he, the Tathagata, is quite set free."

Part Three
Appendices
(Phần Ba: Phụ Lục)

Buddhist Precepts At A Glance

(A) A Summary of Buddhist Precepts

I. An Overview & Meanings of Vinaya in Buddhism:

At the time of the Buddha, in the beginning a follower was accepted into the Sangha, the Buddha talked to them with the simple words “Ehi-bhikkhu” (Come, O monk)! But as numbers grew and the community dispersed, regulations were established by the Buddha. Every Buddhist undertakes the “Five Precepts” in the cultivation of the moral life, and monks and nuns follow five additional precepts, which are elaborated as training rules and referred to collectively as the “Pratimoksa.” The five additional precepts are to abstain from eating after midday, from dancing and singing, from personal adornments, from using high seats or beds, and from handling gold or silver. Later, situations arised so the number of rules in the “Pratimoksa” varies among the different traditions, although there is a common core of approximately 150. Nowadays, in Mahayana and Sangha Bhiksu traditions, there are about 250 rules for monks and 348 for nuns; while in the Theravadin tradition, there are 227 rules for monks and 311 for nuns. In all traditions, both Mahayana, including Sangha Bhiksu and Theravada, every fortnight these rules are recited communally, providing an occasion for the members of the Sangha to confess and breaches.

The worldly way is outgoing exuberant; the way of the devoted Buddhist’s life is restrained and controlled. Constantly work against the grain, against the old habits; eat, speak, and sleep little. If we are lazy, raise energy. If we feel we can not endure, raise patience. If we like the body and feel attached to it, learn to see it as unclean. Virtue or following precepts, and concentration or meditation are aids to the practice. They make the mind calm and restrained. But outward restraint is only a convention, a tool to help gain inner coolness. We may keep our eyes cast down, but still our mind may be distracted by whatever enters our field of vision. Perhaps we feel that this life is too difficult, that we just can not do it. But the more clearly we understand the truth of things, the more incentive we will have. Keep our mindfulness sharp. In daily activity, the important point is intention. ; know what we are doing and know how we feel about it. Learn to know the mind that clings to ideas of purity and bad karma, burdens itself with doubt and excessive fear of wrongdoing. This, too, is attachment. We must know moderation in our daily needs. Robes need not be of fine material, they are merely to protect the

body. Food is merely to sustain us. The Path constantly opposes defilements and habitual desires.

Basic precepts, commandments, discipline, prohibition, morality, or rules in Buddhism. Precepts are designed by the Buddha to help Buddhists guard against transgressions and stop evil. Transgressions spring from the three karmas of body, speech and mind. Observe moral precepts develops concentration. Concentration leads to understanding. Continuous Understanding means wisdom that enables us to eliminate greed, anger, and ignorance and to obtain liberation, peace and joy. Rules and ceremonies, an intuitive apprehension of which, both written and unwritten, enables devotees to practice and act properly under all circumstances. Precepts mean vows of moral conduct taken by lay and ordained Buddhists. There are five vows for lay people, 250 for fully ordained monks, 348 for fully ordained nuns, 58 for Bodhisattvas (48 minor and 10 major). The Buddha emphasized the importance of morals as a means to achieve the end of real freedom for observing moral precepts develops concentration. Concentration leads to understanding. Continuous understanding means wisdom that enables us to eliminate greed, anger, and ignorance and to advance and obtain liberation, peace and joy.

Secondary commandments, deriving from the mandate of Buddha, i.e. against drinking wine, as opposed to a commandment based on the primary laws of human nature, i.e., against murder. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. The Buddha points out to his disciples the ways of overcoming verbal and physical ill behavior. According to the Majjhima Nikaya, the Buddha taught: "Having tamed his tongue, having controlled his bodily actions and made himself pure in the way he earns his living, the disciple establishes himself well in moral habits. Thus he trains himself in the essential precepts of restraint observing them scrupulously and seeing danger in the slightest fault. While thus restraining himself in word and deed he tries to guard the doors of the senses, for if he lacks control over his senses unhealthy thoughts are bound to fill his mind. Seeing a form, hearing a sound, and so on, he is neither attracted nor repelled by such sense objects, but maintains balance, putting away all likes and dislikes."

The code of conduct set forth by the Buddha is not a set of mere negative prohibitions, but an affirmation of doing good, a career paved with good intentions for the welfare of happiness of mankind. These moral principles aim at making society secure by promoting unity, harmony and mutual understanding among people. This code of conduct is the stepping-stone to the Buddhist way of life. It is the basis for mental development. One who is intent on meditation or concentration of mind should develop a love of virtue that nourishes mental life makes it steady and calm. This searcher of highest purity of mind practises the burning out of the passions. He should always think: "Other may harm, but I will become harmless; others may slay living beings, but I will become a non-slayer; others may wrongly take things, but I will not; others may live unchaste, but I will live pure; other may slander, talk harshly, indulge in gossip, but I will talk only words that promote concord, harmless words, agreeable to the ear, full of love, heart pleasing, courteous, worthy of being borne in mind, timely, fit to the point; other may be covetous, but I will not covet; others may mentally lay hold of things awry, but I will lay mental hold of things fully aright." In fact, observation of morality also means cultivation or exercise of right thoughts of altruism, loving-kindness and harmlessness; observation of morality also means cultivation of the right speech because that enables one to control one's mischievous tongue; right action by refraining from killing sentient beings, and from sexual misconduct; and right livelihood which should be free from exploitation misappropriation or any illegal means of acquiring wealth or property.

According to the Mahaparinibbana Sutta and the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are five dangers to the immoral through lapsing from morality (bad morality or failure in morality): First, precept breaker suffers great loss of property through neglecting his affairs. Second, precept breaker gets bad reputation for immorality and misconduct. Third, whatever assembly the precept breaker approaches, whether of Khattiyas, Bramins, Ascetics, or Householders, he does so differently and shyly. Fourth, at the end of his life, he dies confused. Fifth, after death, at the breaking up of the body, he arises in an evil state, a bad fate, in suffering and hell. Also according to the Mahaparinibbana Sutta and the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are five advantages to one of good morality and of success in morality: First, through careful attention to his affairs, he gains much wealth. Second, precept keeper gets a good reputation for morality and good conduct. Third, whatever assembly he approaches, whether of Khattiyas, Brahmins, Ascetics, or Householders, he does so with confidence and assurance. Fourth, at the end of his life, he dies unconfused. Fifth, after death, at breaking up of the body, he arises in a good place, a heavenly world. According to the Uttarasanghati Sutra, there are five benefits for the virtuous

in the perfecting of virtue: First, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, comes into a large fortune as consequence of diligence. *Second*, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, a fair name is spread abroad. *Third*, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, enters an assembly of Khattiyas, Brahmins, householders or ascetics without fear or hesitation. *Fourth*, one who is virtuous, dies unconfused. *Fifth*, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, on the break up of the body after death, reappears in a happy destiny or in the heavenly world. *In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught*: “The scent of flowers does not blow against the wind, nor does the fragrance of sandalwood and jasmine, but the fragrance of the virtuous blows against the wind; the virtuous man pervades every direction (Dharmapada 54). Of little account is the fragrance of sandal-wood, lotus, jasmine; above all these kinds of fragrance, the fragrance of virtue is by far the best (Dharmapada 55). Of little account is the fragrance of sandal; the fragrance of the virtuous rises up to the gods as the highest (Dharmapada 56). Mara never finds the path of those who are virtuous, careful in living and freed by right knowledge (Dharmapada 57). To be virtuous until old age is pleasant; to have steadfast faith is pleasant; to attain wisdom is pleasant; not to do evil is pleasant (Dharmapada 333).

In Buddhism, there is no so-called cultivation without discipline, and also there is no Dharma without discipline. Precepts are rules which keep us from committing offenses. Precepts are considered as cages to capture the thieves of greed, anger, stupidity, pride, doubt, wrong views, killing, stealing, lust, and lying. Although there are various kinds of precepts, i.e., the five precepts, the ten precepts, the Bodhisattva precepts, etc, the five precepts are the most basic. Learning by commandments is one of the three important practices of all Buddhists. The other two are meditation and wisdom. Learning by the commandments or prohibitions, so as to guard against the evil consequences of error by mouth, body or mind. According to Bhikkhu Piyadassi Mahathera in *The Spectrum of Buddhism*, it is essential for us to discipline ourselves in speech and action before we undertake the arduous task of training our mind through meditation. The aim of Buddhism morality is the control of our verbal and physical action, in other words, purity of speech and action. This is called training in virtue. Three factors of the Noble Eightfold Path form the Buddhist code of conduct. They are right speech, right action, and right livelihood. If you wish to be successful in meditation practice, you should try to observe at least the five basic precepts of morality, abstinence from killing, stealing, illicit sexual indulgence, speaking falsehood and from taking any liquor, including narcotic drugs that cause intoxication and heedlessness. According to the Potaliya Sutta in the Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha, there are eight things in the Noble One’s Discipline that lead to the cutting off of affairs: “With the support of the non-killing of living beings, the killing of living

beings is to be abandoned.” So, it was said. And with reference to what was this said? Here a noble disciple considers thus: ‘I am practicing the way to abandoning and cutting off of those fetters because of which I might kill living beings. If I were to kill living beings, I would blame myself for doing so; the wise, having investigated, would censure me for doing so; and on the dissolution of the body, after death, because of killing living beings an unhappy destination would be expected. But this killing of living beings is itself a fetter and a hindrance. And while taints, vexation, and fever might arise through the killing of living beings, there are no taints, vexation, and fever in one who abstains from killing living beings.’ So, it is with reference to this that it was said: “With the support of the non-killing of living beings, the killing of living beings is to be abandoned.”: “Y cứ không sát sanh, sát sanh cần phải từ bỏ”. “With the support of taking only what is given, the taking of what is not given is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as in the above). “With the support of truthful speech, false speech is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as the above). “With the support unmalicious speech, malicious speech is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as the above). “With the support of refraining from rapacious greed, rapacious greed is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as the above). “With the support of refraining from spiteful scolding, spiteful scolding is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as the above). “With the support of refraining from angry despair, angry despair is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as the above). “With the support of non-arrogance, arrogance is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as the above).

II. Characteristics of Precepts in Buddhism:

At the time of the Buddha, in the beginning a follower was accepted into the Sangha, the Buddha talked to them with the simple words “Ehi-bhikku” (Come, O monk)! But as numbers grew and the community dispersed, regulations were established by the Buddha. Every Buddhist undertakes the “Five Precepts” in the cultivation of the moral life, and monks and nuns follow five additional precepts, which are elaborated as training rules and referred to collectively as the “Pratimoksa.” The five additional precepts are to abstain from eating after midday, from dancing and singing, from personal adornments, from using high seats or beds, and from handling gold or silver. Later, situations arised so the number of rules in the “Pratimoksa” varies among the different traditions, although there is a common core of approximately 150. Nowadays, in Mahayana and Sangha Bhiksu traditions, there are about 250 rules for monks and 348 for nuns; while in the Theravadin tradition, there are 227 rules for monks and 311 for nuns. In all traditions, both

Mahayana, including Sangha Bhiksu and Theravada, every fortnight these rules are recited communally, providing an occasion for the members of the Sangha to confess and breaches.

The worldly way is outgoing exuberant; the way of the devoted Buddhist's life is restrained and controlled. Constantly work against the grain, against the old habits; eat, speak, and sleep little. If we are lazy, raise energy. If we feel we can not endure, raise patience. If we like the body and feel attached to it, learn to see it as unclean. Virtue or following precepts, and concentration or meditation are aids to the practice. They make the mind calm and restrained. But outward restraint is only a convention, a tool to help gain inner coolness. We may keep our eyes cast down, but still our mind may be distracted by whatever enters our field of vision. Perhaps we feel that this life is too difficult, that we just can not do it. But the more clearly we understand the truth of things, the more incentive we will have. Keep our mindfulness sharp. In daily activity, the important point is intention. ; know what we are doing and know how we feel about it. Learn to know the mind that clings to ideas of purity and bad karma, burdens itself with doubt and excessive fear of wrongdoing. This, too, is attachment. We must know moderation in our daily needs. Robes need not be of fine material, they are merely to protect the body. Food is merely to sustain us. The Path constantly opposes defilements and habitual desires.

Secondary commandments, deriving from the mandate of Buddha, i.e. against drinking wine, as opposed to a commandment based on the primary laws of human nature, i.e., against murder. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. The Buddha points out to his disciples the ways of overcoming verbal and physical ill behavior. According to the Majjhima Nikaya, the Buddha taught: "Having tamed his tongue, having controlled his bodily actions and made himself pure in the way he earns his living, the disciple establishes himself well in moral habits. Thus he trains himself in the essential precepts of restraint observing them scrupulously and seeing danger in the slightest fault. While thus restraining himself in word and deed he tries to guard the doors of the senses, for if he lacks control over his senses unhealthy thoughts are bound to fill his mind. Seeing a form, hearing a

sound, and so on, he is neither attracted nor repelled by such sense objects, but maintains balance, putting away all likes and dislikes.”

The code of conduct set forth by the Buddha is not a set of mere negative prohibitions, but an affirmation of doing good, a career paved with good intentions for the welfare of happiness of mankind. These moral principles aim at making society secure by promoting unity, harmony and mutual understanding among people. This code of conduct is the stepping-stone to the Buddhist way of life. It is the basis for mental development. One who is intent on meditation or concentration of mind should develop a love of virtue that nourishes mental life makes it steady and calm. This searcher of highest purity of mind practises the burning out of the passions. He should always think: “Other may harm, but I will become harmless; others may slay living beings, but I will become a non-slayer; others may wrongly take things, but I will not; others may live unchaste, but I will live pure; other may slander, talk harshly, indulge in gossip, but I will talk only words that promote concord, harmless words, agreeable to the ear, full of love, heart pleasing, courteous, worthy of being borne in mind, timely, fit to the point; other may be covetous, but I will not covet; others may mentally lay hold of things awry, but I will lay mental hold of things fully aright.” In fact, observation of morality also means cultivation or exercise of right thoughts of altruism, loving-kindness and harmlessness; observation of morality also means cultivation of the right speech because that enables one to control one’s mischievous tongue; right action by refraining from killing sentient beings, and from sexual misconduct; and right livelihood which should be free from exploitation misappropriation or any illegal means of acquiring wealth or property.

In Buddhism, there is no so-called cultivation without discipline, and also there is no Dharma without discipline. Precepts are rules which keep us from committing offenses. Precepts are considered as cages to capture the thieves of greed, anger, stupidity, pride, doubt, wrong views, killing, stealing, lust, and lying. Although there are various kinds of precepts, i.e., the five precepts, the ten precepts, the Bodhisattva precepts, etc, the five precepts are the most basic. Learning by commandments is one of the three important practices of all Buddhists. The other two are meditation and wisdom. Learning by the commandments or prohibitions, so as to guard against the evil consequences of error by mouth, body or mind. According to Bhikkhu Piyadassi Mahathera in *The Spectrum of Buddhism*, it is essential for us to discipline ourselves in speech and action before we undertake the arduous task of training our mind through meditation. The aim of Buddhism morality is the control of our verbal and physical action, in other words, purity of speech and action. This is called training in virtue. Three factors of the Noble Eightfold Path form the Buddhist code of conduct. They are right speech, right action, and right livelihood. If

you wish to be successful in meditation practice, you should try to observe at least the five basic precepts of morality, abstinence from killing, stealing, illicit sexual indulgence, speaking falsehood and from taking any liquor, including narcotic drugs that cause intoxication and heedlessness.

According to the Potaliya Sutta in the Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha, there are eight things in the Noble One's Discipline that lead to the cutting off of affairs: "With the support of the non-killing of living beings, the killing of living beings is to be abandoned." So it was said. And with reference to what was this said? Here a noble disciple considers thus: 'I am practicing the way to abandoning and cutting off of those fetters because of which I might kill living beings. If I were to kill living beings, I would blame myself for doing so; the wise, having investigated, would censure me for doing so; and on the dissolution of the body, after death, because of killing living beings an unhappy destination would be expected. But this killing of living beings is itself a fetter and a hindrance. And while taints, vexation, and fever might arise through the killing of living beings, there are no taints, vexation, and fever in one who abstains from killing living beings.' So it is with reference to this that it was said: "With the support of the non-killing of living beings, the killing of living beings is to be abandoned.": "Y cứ không sát sanh, sát sanh cần phải từ bỏ". "With the support of taking only what is given, the taking of what is not given is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as in the above). "With the support of truthful speech, false speech is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as the above). "With the support unmalicious speech, malicious speech is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as the above). "With the support of refraining from rapacious greed, rapacious greed is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as the above). "With the support of refraining from spiteful scolding, spiteful scolding is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as the above). "With the support of refraining from angry despair, angry despair is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as the above). "With the support of non-arrogance, arrogance is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as the above).

III. Categories of Precepts in Buddhism:

As mentioned in the above-mentioned chapters, the code of conduct is the stepping-stone to the Buddhist way of life. It is the basis for mental development. One who is intent on meditation or concentration of mind should develop a love of virtue that nourishes mental life makes it steady and calm. This searcher of highest purity of mind practises the burning out of the passions. He should always think: "Other may harm, but I will become harmless; others may slay living beings, but I will become a non-slayer; others

may wrongly take things, but I will not; others may live unchaste, but I will live pure; other may slander, talk harshly, indulge in gossip, but I will talk only words that promote concord, harmless words, agreeable to the ear, full of love, heart pleasing, courteous, worthy of being borne in mind, timely, fit to the point; other may be covetous, but I will not covet; others may mentally lay hold of things awry, but I will lay mental hold of things fully aright.” The code of conduct set forth by the Buddha is not a set of mere negative prohibitions, but an affirmation of doing good, a career paved with good intentions for the welfare of happiness of mankind. These moral principles aim at making society secure by promoting unity, harmony and mutual understanding among people. Observe moral precepts develops concentration. Concentration leads to understanding. Continuous understanding means wisdom that enables us to eliminate greed, anger, and ignorance and to advance and obtain liberation, peace and joy.

According to Bhadantacariya Buddhaghosa in The Path of Purification, sila is classified on its own characteristic of composing. ***There are two kinds of precepts as keeping and avoiding:*** 1) Keeping: Something should be done. 2) Avoiding: Something should not be done. ***There are also two kinds of precepts as that of good behavior and that of the beginning of the life of purity:*** 1) Good behavior: Good behavior is what the Buddha announced for the sake of good behavior, is the best kind of behavior. This is the term for Virtue other than these eight precepts (Killing, Stealing, and Sexual misconduct in the body; Lying, Malicious speech, Harsh speech, and Gossip in Mouth; and Right Livelihood). 2) Beginning of the life of purity by keeping (observing) the above mentioned eight precepts. ***There are two kinds of precepts as The virtues of Abstinence and Non-Abstinence:*** 1) Abstinence: Abstinence from evil deeds such as abstinence from killing living beings, etc. 2) Non-Abstinence: Non-Abstinence consisting in Volition in the twelve links. ***There are two kinds of precepts: Dependence and Independence:*** 1) Dependence: There are two kinds: a) Dependence through Craving. b) Dependence through false views. 2) Independence: The supramundane and the mundane that is pre-requisite for the aforesaid supramundane. ***There are also two kinds of precepts as Temporary and Lifelong:*** 1) Temporary: Virtue that is undertaken after deciding on a time limit. 2) Lifelong: Lifelong virtue is that practised in the same way as the temporary virtue, but undertaking it for as long as life lasts. ***There are two kinds of precepts as Limited and Unlimited:*** 1) Limited Virtue: The limited virtue is that seen to be limited by gain, fame, relatives, limbs or life. 2) Unlimited Virtue: Virtue that is not limited to gain, fame, relatives or life is called Patisambhida or Unlimited Virtue. ***There are two kinds of precepts as Mundane and Supramundane Virtue:*** 1) Mundane Virtue: The mundane virtue brings about improvement in future becoming. 2)

Supramundane Virtue: The supramundane virtue brings about the escaping from Becoming or escaping from the cycle of births and deaths.

There are three kinds of precepts as Inferior, Medium and Superior: 1) The Inferior: a) The inferior is produced by inferior zeal, purity of consciousness, energy or inquiry. b) To undertake precepts out of fame. c) Only I am possessed of virtue, other people are ill-conducted and ill-natured. d) The purpose of keeping precepts is to enjoy continued existence. 2) The Medium: a) The medium is produced by medium zeal, energy or inquiry. b) To undertake precepts out of desire for the fruits of merit. c) Undeveloped mundane virtue. d) The purpose of practice is for one's own deliverance. 3) The Superior: a) The superior is produced by superior zeal, energy and inquiry. b) To undertake precepts for the sake of the noble states. c) Supramundane virtue. d) The virtue of the perfections practised for the deliverance of all sentient beings. ***There are three kinds of precepts of Giving Precedence to Self, Giving Precedence to the World, Giving Precedence to the Dharma:*** 1) Virtue giving precedence to self: To undertake precepts out of self-regard by one who regards self and desires to abandon what is unbecoming to self. 2) Virtue giving precedence to the world: To undertake precepts out of regard for the world and out of desire to ward off the censure of the world. 3) Virtue giving precedence to the Dharma: To undertake precepts out of regard for the Dharma and out of desire to honor the majesty of the Dharma. ***There are three kinds of precepts of Adhered to, Not adhered to, and Tranquilized:*** 1) Adhered to through craving and false views. 2) Not adhered to: a) Practised by magnanimous ordinary people as the prerequisite of the path. b) Precepts that associated with the path in trainers. 3) Tranquilized precepts: Precepts that associated with trainers' and nontrainers' fruition is tranquilized. ***There are three kinds of precepts of Pure, Impure and Dubious:*** 1) Pure Precepts: Precepts fulfilled by one who has committed no offence or has committed offence, but already made a repentance after committing one. 2) Impure Precepts: One who breaks precepts but has not made a repentance. 3) Dubious: a) Virtue in one who is dubious about whether a thing constitutes an offence. b) Whether he has committed an offence is dubious. ***There are three kinds of precepts of Virtue of the Trainer, Virtue of the Nontrainer, and that of the neither-trainer-nor-nontrainer:*** 1) Virtue of the Trainer: Virtue associated with the four paths and with the first three fruitions of the four holy fruits. 2) Virtue of the non-trainer: Virtue that associated with the fruition of Arahanship. 3) Virtue of neither trainer nor non-trainer: The remaining kinds of virtues.

There are four kinds of precepts of Partaking of diminution, Stagnation, Distinction, and Penetration: 1) Partaking of diminution: a) Cultivate with the unvirtuous. b) Not to visit the virtuous. c) Not to see ignorance. d) No fault in a

transgression. e) Mind is full with wrong thoughts. f) Not to guard one's own faculties. 2) Partaking of Stagnation: a) One whose mind is satisfied with virtue that has been achieved. b) Contented with mere virtuousness, not striving for higher meditations. 3) Partaking of Distinction: One who abide by virtues, but always strives with concentration for his aim. 4) Partaking of Penetration: One who realizes that to see Virtues is not enough, he aims his dispassion through keeping precepts. ***There are also four other kinds of precepts of Virtue of Bhikkhus, of Bhikkhunis, of Not-Fully-Admitted, of the Laity:*** 1) The virtue of Bhikkhus: There are precepts for Bhikkhus to keep. 2) The virtue of Bhikkhunis: There are precepts for Bhikkhunis to keep. 3) The virtue of the not-fully-admitted. 4) The virtue of the Laity: Five or ten precepts, as permanent undertaking, eight precepts as the factors of the Uposatha Day for male and female lay followers. ***There are four more kinds of precepts of Natural, Customary, Necessary, Due to Previous Causes:*** 1) Natural virtue: The non-transgression on the part of Uttarakuru human beings. 2) Customary virtue: Each locality's or sect's own rules of conduct. 3) Necessary virtue: No thought of men that is connected with the cords of sense desire. 4) Virtues Due to Previous Causes: The virtue of pure beings or of Bodhisattva in his various births. ***There are four kinds of precepts of Virtue of Patimokkha Restraint, Virtue of Restraint of Sense Faculties, Virtue of Purification of Livelihood, and Virtue Concerning Requisites:*** 1) Virtue of Patimokkha: The virtue described by the Blessed One Thus, "Here a Bhikkhu dwells restrained with the Patimokkha restraint, possessed of the proper conduct and resort, and seeing fear in the slightest fault, he trains himself by undertaking the precepts of training. 2) Virtue of restraint of the sense faculties: a) On seeing a visible object with eye, he apprehends neither the signs nor the particulars. b) When he left the eye faculty unguarded, evil and unprofitable states of covetousness and grief may invade him; he immediately realizes them and turns back to guard the eye faculty, undertakes the restraint of the eye faculty. c) On hearing a sound with ear, smelling an odour with the nose, tasting a flavor with the tongue, touching a tangible object with the body, cognizing a mental object with the mind, he apprehends neither the signs nor the particulars; if he left the mind faculty unguarded, evil and unprofitable states of covetousness and grief might invade him, he immediately realizes this and goes back to enter upon the way of its restraint, he guard the mind faculty, undertakes the restraint of the mind faculty. 3) Virtue of Livelihood Purification: Abstinence from such wrong livelihood as entails transgression of the six training precepts announced to respect to livelihood and entails the evil states beginning with 'scheming, talking, hinting, belittling, pursuing gain with gain. 4) Virtue concerning Requisites: Use of the four requisites that is

purified by the reflection stated in the way beginning ‘Reflecting wisely, he uses the robe only for protection from cold.

IV. Roles of Precepts in Buddhist Cultivation:

Summaries of Roles of Precepts in Buddhist Cultivation: In Buddhism, there is no so-called cultivation without discipline, and also there is no Dharma without discipline. Precepts are rules which keep us from committing offenses. For Buddhist practitioners, precepts are considered as cages to capture the thieves of greed, anger, stupidity, pride, doubt, wrong views, killing, stealing, lust, and lying. Although there are the Five Precepts, the Ten Precepts, the Bodhisattva Precepts, and so on, the Five Precepts are the most fundamental. They are: do not kill, do not steal, do not engage in sexual misconduct, do not engage in false speech, and do not consume intoxicants. If one can hold the precepts, one will not make transgressions. Learning by commandments is one of the three important practices of all Buddhists. The other two are meditation and wisdom. Learning by the commandments or prohibitions, so as to guard against the evil consequences of error by mouth, body or mind. Morality is one of the most important factors in meditation. Especially for Buddhist practitioners, virtues also include compassion, loving-kindness, modest, patience, tolerance, courage, and gratitude, and so on. A good Buddhist practitioner is needed to be a good virtue one, and cultivation progress is valued from the cultivator’s behavior toward people around. Buddhist practitioners always live peacefully and tolerantly with people, not retreat in deep jungle to be away from people. Therefore, in order to cultivate, first of all, we must be able to live together with everyone before turning into solitude life for deep meditation. While living in the community, we have chances and conditions to improve our morality. Beside the times of practicing, we use the rest of our time to live nicely and kindly to people. According to Bhikkhu Piyadassi Mahathera in *The Spectrum of Buddhism*, it is essential for us to discipline ourselves in speech and action before we undertake the arduous task of training our mind through meditation. The aim of Buddhism morality is the control of our verbal and physical action, in other words, purity of speech and action. This is called training in virtue. Three factors of the Noble Eightfold Path form the Buddhist code of conduct. They are right speech, right action, and right livelihood. If you wish to be successful in meditation practice, you should try to observe at least the five basic precepts of morality, abstinence from killing, stealing, illicit sexual indulgence, speaking falsehood and from taking any liquor, including narcotic drugs that cause intoxication and heedlessness.

Buddhist practitioners should always remember that sila plays an extremely important role in cultivation. The good root of keeping the commandments, from which springs the power for one who keeps the five to be reborn as a man; or for one who keeps the ten to be reborn in the heaven, or as a king. As a matter of fact, sila or morality forms the foundation of further progress on the right path. The contents of morality in Buddhism compose of right speech, right action, and right livelihood. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. Dainin Katagiri wrote in *Returning to Silence*: "The Triple Treasure in Buddhism, 'I take refuge in the Buddha, I take refuge in the Dharma, I take refuge in the Sangha,' is the foundation of the precepts. The precepts in Buddhism are not a moral code that someone or something outside ourselves demands that we follow. The precepts are the Buddha-nature, the spirit of the universe. To receive the precepts is to transmit something significant beyond the understanding of our sense, such as the spirit of the universe or what we call Buddha-nature. What we have awakened to, deeply, through our body and mind, is transmitted from generation to generation, beyond our control. Having experienced this awakening, we can appreciate how sublime human life is. Whether we know it or not, or whether we like it or not, the spirit of the universe is transmitted. So, we all can learn what the real spirit of a human being is... Buddha is the universe and Dharma is the teaching from the universe, and Sangha is the group of people who make the universe and its teaching alive in their lives. In our everyday life we must be mindful of the Buddha, Dharma and Sangha whether we understand this or not."

Roles of Precepts in Meditation Practice: Buddhists practise meditation for mind-training and self-discipline by looking within ourselves. To meditate is also to try to understand the nature of the mind and to use it effectively in daily life. The mind is the key to happiness, and also the key to sufferings. To practice meditation and meditation daily will help free the mind from bondage to any thought-fetters, defilements, as well as distractions in daily life. Practicing meditation and contemplation is the most direct way to reach enlightenment. The main purpose of practicing meditation and contemplation is to gain a mind without thoughts, but with awaking on everything. However, it is not easy to achieve a thoughtless mind because of long lasting thoughts

that always occupy our minds. Thus, if we are not patient enough, we might give up any time. Luckily, in Buddhism we have the three studies of Precept-Concentration-Wisdom. Basic precepts, commandments, discipline, prohibition, morality, or rules in Buddhism. Precepts are designed by the Buddha to help Buddhists guard against transgressions and stop evil. Transgressions spring from the three karmas of body, speech and mind. Observe moral precepts develops concentration. Concentration leads to understanding. Continuous Understanding means wisdom that enables us to eliminate greed, anger, and ignorance and to obtain liberation, peace and joy. In Buddhism, disciplines are rules and ceremonies, an intuitive apprehension of which, both written and unwritten, enables devotees to practice and act properly under all circumstances. Precepts mean vows of moral conduct taken by lay and ordained Buddhists. There are five vows for lay people, 250 for fully ordained monks, 348 for fully ordained nuns, 58 for Bodhisattvas (48 minor and 10 major). The Buddha emphasized the importance of morals as a means to achieve the end of real freedom for observing moral precepts develops concentration. Concentration leads to understanding. Continuous understanding means wisdom that enables us to eliminate greed, anger, and ignorance and to advance and obtain liberation, peace and joy. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. The Buddha points out to his disciples the ways of overcoming verbal and physical ill behavior. According to the Majjhima Nikaya, the Buddha taught: "Having tamed his tongue, having controlled his bodily actions and made himself pure in the way he earns his living, the disciple establishes himself well in moral habits. Thus, he trains himself in the essential precepts of restraint observing them scrupulously and seeing danger in the slightest fault. While thus restraining himself in word and deed he tries to guard the doors of the senses, for if he lacks control over his senses unhealthy thoughts are bound to fill his mind. Seeing a form, hearing a sound, and so on, he is neither attracted nor repelled by such sense objects, but maintains balance, putting away all likes and dislikes." The code of conduct set forth by the Buddha is not a set of mere negative prohibitions, but an affirmation of doing good things, a career paved with good intentions for the welfare of happiness of mankind. These moral principles aim at making society secure by

promoting unity, harmony and mutual understanding among people. This code of conduct is the stepping-stone to the Buddhist way of life. It is the basis for mental development. One who is intent on meditation or concentration of mind should develop a love of virtue that nourishes mental life makes it steady and calm. This searcher of highest purity of mind practises the burning out of the passions. He should always think: "Other may harm, but I will become harmless; others may slay living beings, but I will become a non-slayer; others may wrongly take things, but I will not; others may live unchaste, but I will live pure; other may slander, talk harshly, indulge in gossip, but I will talk only words that promote concord, harmless words, agreeable to the ear, full of love, heart pleasing, courteous, worthy of being borne in mind, timely, fit to the point; other may be covetous, but I will not covet; others may mentally lay hold of things awry, but I will lay mental hold of things fully aright." In fact, observation of morality also means cultivation or exercise of right thoughts of altruism, loving-kindness and harmlessness; observation of morality also means cultivation of the right speech because that enables one to control one's mischievous tongue; right action by refraining from killing sentient beings, and from sexual misconduct; and right livelihood which should be free from exploitation misappropriation or any illegal means of acquiring wealth or property.

V. Pure Precepts:

An Overview of Purifying Morality: Morality is one of the most important factors in meditation, so, a devout zen practitioner must be a good virtue one. One's meditation progress is valued from his or her behavior toward people around. Through the purification of morality and behavior, zen practitioners always live peacefully and tolerantly with people, not necessarily retreat in deep jungle to be away from people. In fact, while living in the community, we have chances and conditions to improve our morality. Therefore, a zen beginner must be able to live together with everyone before turning into solitude life for deep meditation. That is to say, beside practicing meditation, we use the rest of our time to live nicely and kindly to people. Some people say that they do not need to do good deeds, nor do they need to prevent unwholesome deeds. Those who dare to say so, they are really not devout Buddhists. In the contrary, there are a lot of small virtues need be prepared before and during we practice meditation. The so-called 'small virtues' are, in fact, play a big role on our way of cultivation. We would be happy with other's success and sympathy with other's miseries. We will keep ourselves modest when achieving success.

Four Pure Precepts in the Surangama Sutra: In the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha gave four clear instructions on Purity as follows: “Any Buddhist practitioner must put an end to one’s lust, killing, stealing and lying.” In fact, these four are four of the five basic precepts for lay Buddhists, but any Buddhists who can keep these four precepts can be called “Sincere Buddhists”. However, the offences may be considered serious for monks and nuns. The worst offences grouped under the heading “Parajika,” which entailed the expulsion of the guilty from the community of monks and nuns. The word Parajika is derived from the Sanskrit root Para and Jika which means that makes DEFEAT. Four parajikas mean four causes of falling from grace and final excommunication or expulsion of a monk or nun. According to the monastic point of view, these offences are regarded as very serious in nature. Any monks, regardless of their ranks and years in the Order, violate any one of these offences, are subject to expulsion from the Order. Once they are expelled, they are never allowed to join the Order again. They are defeated forever. Therefore, the Buddha cautioned all monks and nuns not to indulge in any one of them. These four precepts are closely related. If you break the precept against the lust, it is easy to break the precept against killing, stealing and lying as well. In the same manner, if you break the precept against stealing, it is easy to break the precept against lying, etc. Therefore, the Buddha reminded Buddhists to cut off these four “Killing-Stealing-Lust-Lying”. *First, Cutting off Killing:* If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of killing, they would not have to follow a continual succession of births and deaths. According to the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha reminded Ananda about “cutting off killing”, one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: “Ananda! If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of killing, they would not have to follow a continual succession of births and deaths. Ananda! Your basic purpose in cultivating samadhi is to transcend the wearisome defilements. But if you do not remove your thoughts of killing, you will not be able to get out of the dust. Ananda! Even though one may have some wisdom and the manifestation of Zen Samadhi, one is certain to enter the path of spirits if one does not cease killing. At best, a person will become a mighty ghost; on the average, one will become a flying yaksha, a ghost leader, or the like; at the lowest level, one will become an earth-bound rakshasa. These ghosts and spirits have their groups of disciples. Each says of himself that he has accomplished the unsurpassed way. After my extinction, in the Dharma-Ending Age, these hordes of ghosts and spirits will abound, spreading like wildfire as they argue that eating meat will bring one to the Bodhi Way. Ananda! I permit the Bhikshus to eat five kinds of pure meat. This meat is actually a transformation brought into being by my spiritual powers. It

basically has no life-force. You Brahmans live in a climate so hot and humid, and on such sandy and rocky land, that vegetables will not grow. Therefore, I have had to assist you with spiritual powers and compassion. Because of the magnitude of this kindness and compassion, what you eat that tastes like meat is merely said to be meat; in fact, however, it is not. After my extinction, how can those who eat the flesh of living beings be called the disciples of Sakya? You should know that these people who eat meat may gain some awareness and may seem to be in samadhi, but they are all great rakshasas. When their retribution ends, they are bound to sink into the bitter sea of birth and death. They are not disciples of the Buddha. Such people as they kill and eat one another in a never-ending cycle. How can such people transcend the triple realm? Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must also cut off killing. This is the second clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come Ones and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, if cultivators of Zen Samadhi do not cut off killing, they are like one who stops up his ears and calls out in a loud voice, expecting no one to hear him. It is to wish to hide what is completely evident. Bhikshus and Bodhisattvas who practice purity will not even step on grass in the pathway; even less will they pull it up with their hand. How can one with great compassion pick up the flesh and blood of living beings and proceed to eat his fill? Bhikshus who do not wear silk, leather boots, furs, or down from this country or consume milk, cream, or butter can truly transcend this world. When they have paid back their past debts, they will not have to re-enter the triple realm. Why? It is because when one wears something taken from a living creature, one creates conditions with it, just as when people eat the hundred grains, their feet cannot leave the earth. Both physically and mentally one must avoid the bodies and the by-products of living beings, by neither wearing them nor eating them. I say that such people have true liberation. What I have said here is the Buddha's teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan. *First, Cutting off Stealing:* According to the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha reminded Ananda about "cutting off stealing", one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: "Ananda! If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of stealing, they would not have to follow a continuous succession of births and deaths. Ananda! Your basic purpose in cultivating samadhi is to transcend the wearisome defilements. But if you do not renounce your thoughts of stealing, you will not be able to get out of the dust. Ananda! Even though one may have some wisdom and the manifestation of Zen Samadhi, one is certain to enter a devious path if one does not cease stealing. At best, one will be an apparition; on the average, one will become a phantom; at the lowest level, one will be a devious person who is possessed by

a Mei-Ghost. These devious hordes have their groups of disciples. Each says of himself that he has accomplished the unsurpassed way. After my extinction, in the Dharma-Ending Age, these phantoms and apparitions will abound, spreading like wildfire as they surreptitiously cheat others. Calling themselves good knowing advisors, they will each say that they have attained the superhuman dharmas. Enticing and deceiving the ignorant, or frightening them out of their wits, they disrupt and lay waste to households wherever they go. I teach the Bhikshus to beg for their food in an assigned place, in order to help them renounce greed and accomplish the Bodhi Way. The Bhikshus do not prepare their own food, so that, at the end of this life of transitory existence in the triple realm, they can show themselves to be once-returners who go and do not come back. How can thieves who put on my robes and sell the Thus Come One's dharmas, saying that all manner of karma one creates is just the Buddhadharma? They slander those who have left the home-life and regard Bhikshus who have taken complete precepts as belonging to the path of the small vehicle. Because of such doubts and misjudgments, limitless living beings fall into the Unintermittent Hell. I say that Bhikshus who after my extinction have decisive resolve to cultivate samadhi, and who before the images of Thus Come Ones can burn a candle on their bodies, or burn off a finger, or burn even one incense stick on their bodies, will in that moment, repay their debts from beginningless time past. They can depart from the world and forever be free of outflows. Though they may not have instantly understood the unsurpassed enlightenment, they will already have firmly set their mind on it. If one does not practice any of these token renunciations of the body on the causal level, then even if one realizes the unconditioned, one will still have to come back as a person to repay one's past debts exactly as I had to undergo the retribution of having to eat the grain meant for horses. Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must also cease stealing. This is the third clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come One and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, if cultivators of Zen Samadhi do not cease stealing, they are like someone who pours water into a leaking cup and hopes to fill it. He may continue for as many eons as there are fine motes of dust, but it still will not be full in the end. If Bhikshus do not store away anything but their robes and bowls; if they give what is left over from their food-offerings to hungry living beings; if they put their palms together and make obeisance to the entire great assembly; if when people scold them, they can treat it as praise; if they can sacrifice their very bodies and minds, giving their flesh, bones, and blood to living creatures. If they do not repeat the non-ultimate teachings of the Thus Come One as though they were their own explanations, misrepresenting them to those who have just begun to study, then the Buddha

gives them his seal as having attained true samadhi. What I have said here is the Buddha's teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan. *Third, Cutting off Lust:* If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of lust, they would not have to follow a continual succession of births and deaths. According to the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha reminded Ananda about "cutting off lust", one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: "Ananda! Your basic purpose in cultivating is to transcend the wearisome defilements. But if you don't renounce your lustful thoughts, you will not be able to get out of the dust. Even though one may have some wisdom and the manifestation of Zen Samadhi, one is certain to enter demonic paths if one does not cut off lust. At best, one will be a demon king; on the average, one will be in the retinue of demons; at the lowest level, one will be a female demon. These demons have their groups of disciples. Each says of himself he has accomplished the unsurpassed way. After my extinction, in the Dharma-Ending Age, these hordes of demons will abound, spreading like wildfire as they openly practice greed and lust. Calming to be good knowing advisors, they will cause living beings to fall into the pit of love and views and lose the way to Bodhi. Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must first of all sever the mind of lust. This is the first clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come Ones and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, if cultivators of Zen Samadhi do not cut off lust, they will be like someone who cooks sand in the hope of getting rice, after hundreds of thousands of eons, it will still be just hot sand. Why? It wasn't rice to begin with; it was only sand. Ananda! If you seek the Buddha's wonderful fruition and still have physical lust, then even if you attain a wonderful awakening, it will be based in lust. With lust at the source, you will revolve in the three paths and not be able to get out. Which road will you take to cultivate and be certified to the Thus Come One's Nirvana? You must cut off the lust which is intrinsic in both body and mind. Then get rid of even the aspect of cutting it off. At that point you have some hope of attaining the Buddha's Bodhi. What I have said here is the Buddha's teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan. *Fourth, Cutting off False Speech:* According to the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha reminded Ananda about "cutting off false speech", one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: "Ananda! Though living beings in the six paths of any mundane world may not kill, steal, or lust either physically or mentally, these three aspects of their conducts thus being perfect, yet if they tell lies, the samadhi they attain will not be pure. They will become demons of love and views and will lose the seed of the Thus Come One. They say that they have attained what they have not attained, and what they have been certified when

they have not been certified, perhaps they seek to be foremost in the world, the most vererated and superior person. To their audiences they say that they have attained the fruition of a Shrotaapanna, the fruition of a Sakridagamin, the fruition of an Anagamin, the fruition of an Arhat, the Pratyeka Buddha vehicle, or the various levels of Bodhisattvahood up to and including the ten grounds, in order to be revered by others and because they are greedy for offerings. These Icchantikas destroy the seeds of Buddhahood just as surely as a Tala tree is destroyed. The Buddha predicts that such people sever (cut off) their good roots forever and lose their knowledge and vision. Immersed in the sea of the three sufferings, they cannot attain samadhi. I command the Bodhisattvas and Arhats to appear after my extinction in response-bodies in the Dharma-Ending Age, and to take various forms in order to rescue those in the cycle of rebirth. They should either become Shramanas, elite-robed lay people, kings, ministers or officials, virgin youths or maidens, and so forth, even prostitutes, widows, profligates, thieves, butchers, or dealers in contraband, doing the same things as these kinds of people while they praise the Buddha Vehicle and cause them to enter samadhi in body and mind. But they should never say of themselves, 'I am truly a Bodhisattva;' or 'I am truly an Arhat,' or let the Buddha's secret cause leak out by speaking casually to those who have not yet studied. How can people who make such claims, other than at the end of their lives and then only to those who inherit the Teaching, be doing anything but deluding and confusing living beings and indulging in a gross false claim? Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must also cease all lying. This is the fourth clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come Ones and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, one who does not cut off lying is like a person who carves a piece of human excrement to look like Chandana, hoping to make it fragrant. He is attempting the impossible. I teach the Bhikshus that the straight mind is the Bodhimanda and that they should practice the four awesome deportments in all their activities. Since they should be devoid of all falseness, how can they claim to have themselves attained the dharmas of a superior person? That would be like a poor person falsely calling himself an emperor; for that, he would be taken and executed. Much less should one attempt to usurp the title of dharma king. When the cause-ground is not true, the effects will be distorted. One who seeks the Buddha's Bodhi in this way is like a person who tries to bite his own navel. Who could possibly succeed? If Bhikshus' minds are as straight as lute strings, true and real in everything they do, then they can enter samadhi and never be involved in the deeds of demons. I certify that such people will accomplish the Bodhisattvas' unsurpassed knowledge and enlightenment.

What I have said here is the Buddha's teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan."

Buddhist Practitioners and the Four Rules of Purification of the Body and Mind: Before entering Nirvana, the Buddha emphasized in front of his disciples that Buddhists must definitely build up their foundation of knowledge in cultivation in which we cannot lack understanding of Keeping Rules of Purification of the Body and Mind. As a matter of fact, practitioners should always be careful with the four rules of purification of the body and mind, which include the Patimokkha Restraint, virtue of Restraint of Sense Faculties, virtue of Purification of Livelihood, and virtue Concerning Requisites. *First, the Virtue of Patimokkha:* The Patimokkha is the virtue that described by the Blessed One Thus: "Here a Bhikkhu dwells restrained with the Patimokkha restraint, possessed of the proper conduct and resort, and seeing fear in the slightest fault, he trains himself by undertaking the precepts of training. *Second, the Virtue of Restraint of the Sense Faculties:* On seeing a visible object with eye, he apprehends neither the signs nor the particulars. When he left the eye faculty unguarded, evil and unprofitable states of covetousness and grief may invade him; he immediately realizes them and turns back to guard the eye faculty, undertakes the restraint of the eye faculty. On hearing a sound with ear, smelling an odour with the nose, tasting a flavor with the tongue, touching a tangible object with the body, cognizing a mental object with the mind, he apprehends neither the signs nor the particulars; if he left the mind faculty unguarded, evil and unprofitable states of covetousness and grief might invade him, he immediately realizes this and goes back to enter upon the way of its restraint, he guard the mind faculty, undertakes the restraint of the mind faculty. *Third, the Virtue of Livelihood Purification:* The abstinence from such wrong livelihood as entails transgression of the six training precepts announced to respect to livelihood and entails the evil states beginning with 'scheming, talking, hinting, belittling, pursuing gain with gain. *Fourth, the Virtue Concerning Requisites:* The use of the four requisites that is purified by the reflection stated in the way beginning 'Reflecting wisely, he uses the robe only for protection from cold.

Besides, meditation practice also contributes considerably in purification of the body and mind. Perhaps when some people see us sitting in meditation, they ask us why we are wasting our time. To them meditation is meaningless; but to us who practice meditation, it is an essential and very meaningful part of our lives. All day long, every day of the week, every week of the month, and every month of the year, we are so busy with our business or occupation. According to Buddhism, our mind behaves like a monkey, restless and always jumping; it is therefore called a 'monkey-mind'. These are reasons why we have to meditate. To give balance to our lives it is necessary to sit quietly, to

learn to accept and experience rather than to look outward for forms, we look within in order to understand ourselves better. Through meditation we try to keep that monkey-mind still, to keep it calm, quiet and pure. When our mind is still, we will realize that the Buddha is inside us, that the whole universe is inside us and that our true nature is one with the Buddha nature. So the most important task is to keep our minds quiet, a task which may be simple to understand but is not simple to practice at all. Yet practice is all important; knowing by itself has no value at all if we do not put our knowledge into practice. The method of Zen is the scientific method, that is to say we learn by doing, by our own experience. Another reason to cause us to practice meditation and contemplation is that meditation is a 'peak' of practice in Buddhism. Through meditation, we can not only purify our body and mind, but also attain wisdom of emancipation. Furthermore, through meditation we can see things as they really are, and we can generate inside ourselves compassion, modest, patient, tolerance, courage, and gratitude, and so on.

VI. Always Try to Purify Morality:

Advantages & Disadvantages of Heedlessness & Heedfulness In Purifying Morality: Before entering Nirvana, the Buddha emphasized in front of his disciples that Buddhists must definitely build up their foundation of knowledge in cultivation in which we cannot lack understanding of the Advantages & Disadvantages of Heedlessness & Heedfulness. In Buddhism, to give rein to one's emotion means to surrender one's heedlessnesses. According to Buddhism, this is one of the big demonic obstructions for Buddhists on their paths of cultivation. In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: "Craving grows like a creeper which creeps from tree to tree just like the ignorant man wanders from life to life like a fruit-loving monkey in the forest (Dharmapada 334). Self-conquest is, indeed, better than the conquest of all other people. To conquer oneself, one must be always self-controlled and disciplined one's action. By sustained effort, earnestness, temperance and self-control, the wise man may make for himself an island which no flood can overwhelm (Dharmapada 25)." The Buddha knows very well the mind of human beings. He knows that the foolish indulge in heedlessness, while the wise protect heedfulness. So he advises the wise with right effort, heedfulness and discipline to build up an island which no flood can overflow. Who is heedless before but afterwards heedless no more, will outshine this world, like a moon free from clouds. To the Buddhas, a person who has conquered thousands of thousands of people in the battlefield cannot be compared with a person who is victorious over himself because he is truly a supreme winner. A person who controls himself will always behave in a self-tamed way. And a

self well-tamed and restrained becomes a worthy and reliable refuge, very difficult to obtain. A person who knows how to sit alone, to sleep alone, to walk alone, to subdue oneself alone will take delight in living in deep forests. Such a person is a trustworthy teacher because being well tamed himself, he then instructs others accordingly. So, the Buddha advises the well-tamed people to control themselves. Only the well tamed people, the heedful people, know the way to stop contentions, quarrels and disputes and how to live in harmony, in friendliness and in peace.

In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught about Heedlessness: One who conquers himself is greater than one who is able to conquer a thousand men in the battlefield. Oneself is indeed one's own saviour, who else could be the saviour? With self-control and cultivation, one can obtain a wonderful saviour. Whoever was formerly heedless and afterwards overcomes his sloth; such a person illuminates this world just like the moon when freed from clouds. Before teaching others, one should act himself as what he teaches. It is easy to subdue others, but to subdue oneself seems very difficult. He who sits alone, sleeps alone, walks and stands alone, unwearied; he controls himself, will find joy in the forest. You are your own protector. You are your own refuge. Try to control yourself as a merchant controls a noble steed.

Also, in the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught about Heedlessness: Heedfulness or watchfulness is the path of immortality. Heedlessness is the path of death. Those who are heedful do not die; those who are heedless are as if already dead (Dharmapada 21). Those who have distinctly understood this, advance and rejoice on heedfulness, delight in the Nirvana (Dharmapada 22). If a man is earnest, energetic, mindful; his deeds are pure; his acts are considerate and restraint; lives according to the Law, then his glory will increase (Dharmapada 24). The ignorant and foolish fall into sloth. The wise man guards earnestness as his greatest treasure (Dharmapada 26). Do not indulge in heedlessness, nor sink into the enjoyment of love and lust. He who is earnest and meditative obtains great joy (Dharmapada 27). When the learned man drives away heedlessness by heedfulness, he is as the wise who, climbing the terraced heights of wisdom, looks down upon the fools, free from sorrow he looks upon sorrowing crowd, as a wise on a mountain-peak surveys the ignorant far down on the ground (Dharmapada 28). Heedful among the heedless, awake among the sleepers, the wise man advances as does a swift racehorse outrun a weak jade (Dharmapada 29). It was through earnestness that Maghavan rised to the lordship of the gods. Earnestness is ever praised; negligence is always despised (blamed) (Dharmapada 30). A mendicant who delights in earnestness, who looks with fear on thoughtlessness, cannot fall away, advances like a fire, burning all his fetters both great and small (Dharmapada 31). A mendicant who delights in earnestness, who looks with

fear on thoughtlessness, cannot fall away, he is in the presence of Nirvana (Dharmapada 32). Mara never finds the path of those who are virtuous, careful in living and freed by right knowledge (Dharmapada 57). Do not follow the evil law, do not live in heedlessness. Do not embrace false views, do not be a world-upholder (Dharmapada 167). Eagerly try not to be heedless, follow the path of righteousness. He who observes this practice lives happily both in this world and in the next (Dharmapada 168).

Always Try to Purify Morality: Virtue of morality or the power of the discipline. Morality is one of the most important factors in meditation, so, a devout practitioner must be a good virtue one. One's cultivation progress is valued from his or her behavior toward people around. Through the purification of morality and behavior, practitioners always live peacefully and tolerantly with people, not necessarily retreat in deep jungle to be away from people. In fact, while living in the community, we have chances and conditions to improve our morality. Therefore, a beginner must be able to live together with everyone before turning into solitude life for profound cultivation. That is to say, besides practicing in cultivation, we use the rest of our time to live nicely and kindly to people. Some people say that they do not need to do good deeds, nor do they need to prevent unwholesome deeds. Those who dare to say so, they are really not devout Buddhists. In the contrary, there are a lot of small virtues need be prepared before and during we practice meditation. The so-called 'small virtues' are, in fact, play a big role on our way of cultivation. We would be happy with other's success and sympathy with other's miseries. We will keep ourselves modest when achieving success. For these above-mentioned reasons, after arriving in Kusinagara, at his death approached, the Buddha asked the assembly of monks if they had any questions. The gathering remained silent. The Buddha took a quick look at all of his disciples before summarized his Last Teachings which include some of his reminders on the previously preached teachings. The Buddha emphasized in front of his disciples that Buddhists must definitely build up their foundation of knowledge in cultivation in which we cannot lack understanding of the advantages of Purification of Morality.

Pure precepts (impeccable observation of the precepts) mean pure commandments that help keep practitioners in purity. According to Buddhism, there are three collections of pure precept or three accumulations of pure precepts of the Bodhisattvas. Those cultivating Hinayana's Sravaka Way do not have these three accumulations of purity precepts. Only Mahayana Bodhisattvas practice them. Bodhisattvas always maintain the Buddha's pure precepts, and their thoughts, words, and deeds are faultless, but because they want to edify immoral sentient beings, they appear to perform the acts of ordinary ignorant people; though they are already filled with pure virtues and

abide in the course of Enlightening Beings, yet they appear to live in such realms as hells, animality, ghosthood, and in difficulty and poverty, in order to enable the beings therein to gain liberation; really the Enlightening Beings are not born in those states. These three accumulations of pure precepts encompass the “Four Propagation Vows.” *First, the Pure Precepts Which Include All Rules and Observances, or to Avoid Evil by Keeping the Discipline:* Which means to gather all precepts such as five precepts, eight precepts, ten precepts of Sramanera, 250 precepts of Bhiksus, 348 precepts of Bhiksunis, 10 major and 48 minor precepts of Bodhisattvas, and maintain them purely without violating a single precept. *Second, the Pure Precepts Which Include All Wholesome Dharmas:* Accumulating wholesome precepts means Bodhisattvas who must learn all the wholesome dharmas that the Buddha taught in various sutras, so they will know all the clear paths and means necessary to “lead and guide sentient beings” to liberation and enlightenment. Thus, no matter how insignificant a dharma teaching may seem, they are not to abandon any dharma door. This vow is made by all Mahayana practicing Buddhists that “Innumerable Dharma Door, I vow to master.” *Third, the Pure Precepts Which Include All Living Beings:* This means to develop the compassionate nature to want to benefit and aid all sentient beings, and this is the vow “Infinite sentient beings, I vow to take across.”

VII.Observation of Precepts:

An Overview & Meanings of Observation of Precepts: Discipline or morality consists in observing all the precepts laid down by the Buddha for the spiritual welfare of his disciples. Discipline (training in moral discipline) wards off bodily evil. Learning by the commandments or cultivation of precepts means putting a stop to all evil deeds and avoiding wrong doings. At the same time, one should try one’s best to do all good deeds. Learning by the commandments or prohibitions, so as to guard against the evil consequences of error by mouth, body or mind. According to Bhikkhu Piyadassi Mahathera in *The Spectrum of Buddhism*, it is essential for us to discipline ourselves in speech and action before we undertake the arduous task of training our mind through meditation. The aim of Buddhism morality is the control of our verbal and physical action, in other words, purity of speech and action. This is called training in virtue. Three factors of the Noble Eightfold Path form the Buddhist code of conduct. They are right speech, right action, and right livelihood. If you wish to be successful in meditation practice, you should try to observe at least the five basic precepts of morality, abstinence from killing, stealing, illicit sexual indulgence, speaking falsehood and from taking any liquor, including narcotic drugs that cause intoxication and heedlessness. Every one

of us knows that holding precepts means holding precepts, but when challenges come, we break the precepts instead of holding them. Keeping precepts teaches us that we cannot truly save others unless we remove our own cankers by living a moral and upright life. However, we must not think that we cannot guide others just because we are not perfect ourselves. Keeping precepts is also a good example for others to follow, this is another form of helping others. Holding the precepts also means to observe the precepts with the mind that does not move. No matter what state you encounter, your mind does not move. Even though when Mount T'ai has a landslide, you are not startled. When a beautiful woman passes in front of you, you are not affected. This is the key to the door of the great enlightenment in Buddhism. This is also an essential samadhi for any Buddhist cultivator to turn states around. Whether the state is good or bad, pleasant or adverse, if you remain calm, composed, and not to break any precepts, the wind will surely calm down and the waves will naturally subside. The Sanskrit term "Sila" means observing the precepts, given by Buddha, which are conducive to moral life. In the case of the homeless ones, the precepts are meant to maintain the order of the brotherhood. The brotherhood is a model society the ideal of which is to lead a peaceful, harmonious life. Sila-paramita or pure observance of precepts (keeping the commandments, upholding the precepts, the path of keeping precepts, or moral conduct, etc) is the practicing of all the Buddhist precepts, or all the virtuous deeds that are conducive to the moral welfare of oneself and that of others. Maintaining Precept Paramita is used to destroy violating precepts and degrading the Buddha-Dharma. The rules of the perfect morality of Bodhisattvas, the second of the six paramitas. Bodhisattvas must observe the moral precepts and guard them as they would hold a precious pearl. Lay people, if they cannot observe two hundred-fifty or three hundred forty-eight precepts, they should try to observe at least five or ten precepts of wholesome actions: abstention from taking life, abstention from taking what is not given, abstention from wrong conduct, abstention from intoxicants, abstention from lying speech, abstention from harsh speech, abstention from indistinct prattling, abstention from covetousness, abstention from ill-will, abstention from wrong views. According to the Lotus Sutra, Bodhisattvas observe and guard the moral precepts as they would hold a precious pearl in their hand. Their precepts are not the slightest deficient. The perfection of morality lies in equanimity in thought and action toward the sinner and no remarkable pride to appreciate the merited. This is the non-clinging way of looking into things that provides reason to the thought of pure kind and a clear vision unblurred from biases.

In Buddhist Teachings Observation of Precepts Means to Restrain and Control the Body and Mind: The worldly way is outgoing exuberant; the way

of the devoted Buddhist's life is restrained and controlled. Constantly work against the grain, against the old habits; eat, speak, and sleep little. If we are lazy, raise energy. If we feel we can not endure, raise patience. If we like the body and feel attached to it, learn to see it as unclean. Restraint and control the body and mind also mean sense restraint which is monitoring proper practices. We should be mindful of it throughout the day. But do not overdo it. Walk, eat, and act naturally, and then develop natural mindfulness of what is going on within ourselves. To force our meditation or force ourselves into awkward patterns is another form of craving. Patience and endurance are necessary. If we act naturally and are mindful, wisdom will come naturally. Virtue or following precepts, and concentration or meditation are aids to the practice. They make the mind calm and restrained. But outward restraint is only a convention, a tool to help gain inner coolness. We may keep our eyes cast down, but still our mind may be distracted by whatever enters our field of vision. Perhaps we feel that this life is too difficult, that we just can not do it. But the more clearly we understand the truth of things, the more incentive we will have. Keep our mindfulness sharp. In daily activity, the important point is intention. ; know what we are doing and know how we feel about it. Learn to know the mind that clings to ideas of purity and bad karma, burdens itself with doubt and excessive fear of wrongdoing. This, too, is attachment. We must know moderation in our daily needs. Robes need not be of fine material, they are merely to protect the body. Food is merely to sustain us. The Path constantly opposes defilements and habitual desires.

To Observe Buddhist Precepts Creates More Strength in Cultivation:

Morality forms the foundation of further progress on the right path. The contents of morality in Buddhism compose of right speech, right action, and right livelihood. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. Dainin Katagiri wrote in *Returning to Silence*: "The Triple Treasure in Buddhism, 'I take refuge in the Buddha, I take refuge in the Dharma, I take refuge in the Sangha,' is the foundation of the precepts. The precepts in Buddhism are not a moral code that someone or something outside ourselves demands that we follow. The precepts are the Buddha-nature, the spirit of the universe. To receive the precepts is to transmit something significant beyond the understanding of our sense, such as the spirit of the universe or what we

call Buddha-nature. What we have awakened to, deeply, through our body and mind, is transmitted from generation to generation, beyond our control. Having experienced this awakening, we can appreciate how sublime human life is. Whether we know it or not, or whether we like it or not, the spirit of the universe is transmitted. So we all can learn what the real spirit of a human being is... Buddha is the universe and Dharma is the teaching from the universe, and Sangha is the group of people who make the universe and its teaching alive in their lives. In our everyday life we must be mindful of the Buddha, Dharma and Sangha whether we understand this or not." In Buddhism, the power derived from observing the commandments, enabling one who observes the five commandments to be reborn among men, and one who observes the ten positive commands to be born among devas. Observing of precepts is a gate of Dharma-illumination; for with it, we distantly depart from the hardships of evil worlds, and we teach and guide precept-breaking living beings. In short, in cultivation whoever try to observe Buddhist precepts will surely have more strength on the path. The power derived from observing Buddhist precepts enables Buddhist practitioners, if not yet attain enlightenment and emancipation, but if practicing good deeds still can be reborn among men, and or to be born among devas.

The Buddha's Teachings on "Virtues" in Buddhist Scriptures: The Mahaparinibbana Sutta and the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha: According to the Mahaparinibbana Sutta and the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, There are five advantages to one of good kinds of morality and of success in morality: First, through careful attention to his affairs, he gains much wealth. Second, he gets a good reputation for morality and good conduct. Third, whatever assembly he approaches, whether of Khattiyas, Brahmins, Ascetics, or Householders, he does so with confidence and assurance. Fourth, at the end of his life, he dies unconfused. Fifth, after death, at breaking up of the body, he arises in a good place, a heavenly world. *The Sutra on Numerical Discourses:* According to the Sutra on the Numerical Arranged Subjects, there are five benefits for the virtuous in the perfecting of virtue: First, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, comes into a large fortune as consequence of diligence. Second, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, a fair name is spread abroad. Third, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, enters an assembly of Khattiyas, Brahmins, householders or ascetics without fear or hesitation. Fourth, one who is virtuous, dies unconfused. Fifth, one who is virtuous, possessed of virtue, on the break up of the body after death, reappears in a happy destiny or in the heavenly world. *In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha Taught:* "The scent of flowers does not blow against the wind, nor does the fragrance of sandalwood and jasmine, but the fragrance of the virtuous blows against the wind; the virtuous man pervades

every direction (Dharmapada 54). Of little account is the fragrance of sandalwood, lotus, jasmine; above all these kinds of fragrance, the fragrance of virtue is by far the best (Dharmapada 55). Of little account is the fragrance of sandal; the fragrance of the virtuous rises up to the gods as the highest (Dharmapada 56). Mara never finds the path of those who are virtuous, careful in living and freed by right knowledge (Dharmapada 57). To be virtuous until old age is pleasant; to have steadfast faith is pleasant; to attain wisdom is pleasant; not to do evil is pleasant (Dharmapada 333).

VIII. Breaking Precepts:

An Overview & Meanings of Breaking Precepts: According to Buddhism, breaking precepts means to violate or to break religious commandments. Breaking precepts also means to turn one's back on the precepts. To offend against or break the moral or ceremonial laws of Buddhism. The Buddha taught in the thirty-sixth of the forty-eight secondary precepts in the Brahma-Net Sutra: "I vow that I would rather pour boiling metal in my mouth than allow such a mouth ever to break the precepts and still partake the food and drink offered by followers. I would rather wrap my body in a red-hot metal net than allow such a body to break the precepts and still wear the clothing offered by the followers." What can be called "Breaking-Precepts" in Buddhism? In Buddhism, non-ethical behaviors are serious forms of "Breaking Precepts". Nonvirtuous actions that can cause harm to ourselves or to others. There are three kinds of nonvirtuous actions. We can only restrain such nonvirtuous acts once we have recognized the consequences of these actions: nonvirtuous acts done by the body which compose of three different kinds: killing, stealing and sexual misconduct; nonvirtuous acts by speech which compose of lying, divisive, offensive, and senseless speeches; and nonvirtuous thoughts which compose of covetousness, malice and wrong views. To break the monastic rule of the time for meals, for which the punishment is hell, or to become a hungry ghost like with throats small as needles and distended bellies, or become an animal.

Sanghabheda is another form of breaking precepts. To disrupt the harmony of the community of monks and cause schism by heretical opinions, e.g. by heretical opinions. According to the Buddha, causing a split in the Sangha was one of the six heinous crimes. This is the most serious violation in all violations in Buddhism. This demonstrates the Buddha's concerns of the Sangha and the future of Buddhism. However, it is not necessarily the case that all such splits were intentional or adversarial in origin, and it seems likely that geographical isolation, possibly resulting from the missionary activities may have played its part in generating differences in the moralities recited by

various gatherings. After several Buddhist Councils, differences appeared and different sects also appeared. The differences were usually insignificant, but they were the main causes that gave rise to the origination of different sects. If we take a close look on these differences, we will see that they are only differences in Vinaya concerning the Bhiksus and Bhiksunis and had no relevance for the laity. Besides, to break (disrupt or destroy) a monk's meditation or preaching as in the case of Devadatta is also considered as breaking precepts.

There are four metaphors addressed by the Buddha to monks and nuns about he who breaks the vow of chastity. *The first metaphor:* He who breaks the vow of chastity is as a needle without an eye. *The second metaphor:* As a dead man. *The third metaphor:* As a broken stone which cannot be united. *The fourth metaphor:* As a tree cut in two which cannot live any longer. According to the Mahaparinibbana Sutta and the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are five dangers to the immoral through lapsing from morality (bad morality or failure in morality). *The first danger:* He suffers great loss of property through neglecting his affairs. *The second danger:* He gets bad reputation for immorality and misconduct. *The third danger:* Whatever assembly he approaches, whether of Khattiyas, Bramins, Ascetics, or Householders, he does so differently and shyly. *The fourth danger:* At the end of his life, he dies confused. *The fifth danger:* After death, at the breaking up of the body, he arises in an evil state, a bad fate, in suffering and hell.

A Story of Violation of the Five Precepts: Once there was a layman who received the Five Precepts. At first, these precepts were very important to him and he strictly observed them. After a time, however, his past habits came back and he longed for a taste of alcohol. He thought, of the five precepts, the one against drinking is really unnecessary. "What's wrong with a tot or two?" Then he bought three bottles of wine and started to drink. As he was drinking the second bottle, the neighbor's little chicken ran into his house. "They've sent me a snack," he thought. "I will put this chicken on the menu to help send down my wine." He then grabbed the bird and killed it. Thus, he broke the precept against killing. Since he took the chicken without owner's permission, he also broke the precept against stealing. Suddenly, the lady next door walked in and said, "Say, did you see my chicken?" Drunk as he was, and full of chicken, he slurred, "No... I didn't see no chicken. Your old pullet didn't run over here." So saying, he broke the precept against lying. Then he took a look at the woman and thought she was quite pretty. He molested the lady and broke the precept against sexual misconduct. Not keeping to one precept that he thought was not important had led him to break all the precepts. In the Milinda Sutta, the Buddha taught: "As an acrobat clears the ground before he shows his tricks, so good conduct (keeping the precepts) is the basis of all good

qualities.” Taking intoxicant drinks and drugs will make us lose our senses. That is why the Buddha advised us to refrain from using them.

Committing the Five Grave Sins: All Buddhists know that the five grave sins (offenses) which cause rebirth in the Avici or hell of interrupted (endless) suffering in the deepest and most suffering level of hell. They are considered “betrayals” or “sin” because instead of being filial, repaying kindness, offering, and providing nourishment, one commits the ultimate betrayals. According to the Hinayana, there are five grave sins. *First*, killing (murdering) one’s father. *Second*, killing (murdering) one’s mother. *Third*, killing (murdering) or hurting an Arhat (a saint: an enlightened one). Intentionally murder an Arhat, who has already achieved enlightenment or raping a Buddhist nun also considered as an Ultimate Betrayal. *Fourth*, to disrupt the Buddhist Order, or causing dissension within the Sangha. Causing disturbance and disruption of harmony (disunity or destroying the harmony) among Bhiksus and nuns in monasteries by spreading lies and gossip, forcing them into abandoning their religious lives. *Fifth*, causing the Buddhas to bleed or to spill the Buddha’s blood. Stabbing and causing blood to fall from Buddha or destroying Buddha statues or injuring the body of a Buddha or insult the Dharma. According to the Mahayana Buddhism, there are five great sins. *First*, sacrilege, such as destroying temples, burning sutras or images of Buddhas, stealing a Buddha’s or monk’s things, inducing others to do so, or taking pleasure therein. *Second*, slander or abuse the teaching of Sravakas, Pratyeka-buddhas, or Bodhisattvas. *Third*, ill-treatment, or killing of monks or nuns, or force them to leave the monasteries to return to worldly life. *Fourth*, commit any one of the five deadly sins given above. *Fifth*, denial of the karma consequences of ill deeds, acting or teaching others accordingly, and unceasing evil life. Besides, Buddhist practitioners should always remember about the five Sins that equal to the first five. *First*, violation of a mother, or a fully ordained nun is equal to the sin of killing one’s mother. *Second*, killing a Bodhisattva in dhyana is equal to the sin of killing one’s father. *Third*, killing anyone in training to be an arhat is equal to the sin of killing an arhat. *Fourth*, preventing the restoration of harmony in a sangha is equal to the sin of destroying the harmony of the sangha. *Fifth*, destroying the Buddha’s stupa is equal to the sin of shedding the blood of a Buddha.

The Buddha’s Teachings on Breaking Precepts in Buddhist Scriptures:

According to Buddhism, breaking precepts means to violate or to break religious commandments. Breaking precepts means to turn one’s back on the precepts or to offend against or break the moral or ceremonial laws of Buddhism. According to the Mahaparinibbana Sutta and the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are five dangers to the immoral through lapsing from morality (bad morality or failure in morality). First,

precept breaker suffers great loss of property through neglecting his affairs. Second, precept breaker gets bad reputation for immorality and misconduct. Third, whatever assembly the precept breaker approaches, whether of Khattiyas, Bramins, Ascetics, or Householders, he does so differently and shyly. Fourth, at the end of his life, he dies confused. Fifth, after death, at the breaking up of the body, he arises in an evil state, a bad fate, in suffering and hell. The Buddha taught in the thirty-sixth of the forty-eight secondary precepts in the Brahma-Net Sutra: "I vow that I would rather pour boiling metal in my mouth than allow such a mouth ever to break the precepts and still partake the food and drink offered by followers. I would rather wrap my body in a red hot metal net than allow such a body to break the precepts and still wear the clothing offered by the followers." In Buddhism, non-ethical behaviors are serious forms of "Breaking Precepts". Nonvirtuous actions that can cause harm to ourselves or to others. There are three kinds of nonvirtuous actions. We can only restrain such nonvirtuous acts once we have recognized the consequences of these actions: First, nonvirtuous acts done by the body which compose of three different kinds: killing, stealing and sexual misconduct. Second, nonvirtuous acts by speech which compose of lying, divisive, offensive, and senseless speeches. Third, nonvirtuous thoughts which compose of covetousness, malice and wrong views. Breaking precepts also means to disrupt the harmony of the community of monks and cause schism by heretical opinions, e.g. by heretical opinions. According to the Buddha, causing a split in the Sangha was one of the six heinous crimes. This is the most serious violation in all violations in Buddhism. This demonstrates the Buddha's concerns of the Sangha and the future of Buddhism. However, it is not necessarily the case that all such splits were intentional or adversarial in origin, and it seems likely that geographical isolation, possibly resulting from the missionary activities may have played its part in generating differences in the moralities recited by various gatherings. After several Buddhist Councils, differences appeared and different sects also appeared. The differences were usually insignificant, but they were the main causes that gave rise to the origination of different sects. If we take a close look on these differences, we will see that they are only differences in Vinaya concerning the Bhiksus and Bhiksunis and had no relevance for the laity. In the Lotus Sutra, the Buddha taught: Ananda! Just as no animal eats a dead lion, but it is destroyed by worms produced within itself, so no outside force can destroy Buddhism, only evil monks within it can destroy it.

In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: Breaking commandments is so harmful as a creeper is strangling a sala tree. A man who breaks commandments does to himself what an enemy would wish for him (Dharmapada 162). It is better to swallow a red-hot iron ball than to be an

immoral and uncontrolled monk feeding on the alms offered by good people (Dharmapada 308). Four misfortunes occur to a careless man who commits adultery: acquisition of demerit, restlessness, moral blame and downward path (Dharmapada 309). There is acquisition of demerit as well as evil destiny. No joy of the frightened man. The king imposes a heavy punishment. Therefore, man should never commit adultery (Dharmapada 310). Just as kusa grass cuts the hand of those who wrongly grasped. Even so the monk who wrongly practised ascetism leads to a woeful state (Dharmapada 311). An act carelessly performed, a broken vow, and a wavering obedience to religious discipline, no reward can come from such a life (Dharmapada 312). Thing should be done, let's strive to do it vigorously, or do it with all your heart. A debauched ascetic only scatters the dust more widely (Dharmapada 313). An evil deed is better not done; a misdeed will bring future suffering. A good deed is better done now, for after doing it one does not grieve (Dharmapada 314). Like a frontier fortress is well guarded, so guard yourself, inside and outside. Do not let a second slip away, for each wasted second makes the downward path (Dharmapada 315).

According to the Vimalakirti Sutra, the Buddha taught: At the time of the Buddha, there were two bhiksus who broke the prohibitions, and being shameful of their sins they dared not call on the Buddha. They came to ask Upali and said to him: "Upali, we have broken the commandments and are ashamed of our sins, so we dare not ask the Buddha about this and come to you. Please teach us the rules of repentance so as to wipe out our sins." Upali then taught them the rules of repentance. At that time, Vimalakirti came to Upali and said: "Upali, do not aggravate their sins which you should wipe out at once without further disturbing their minds. Why? Because the nature of sin is neither within nor without, nor in between. As the Buddha has said, **'living beings are impure because their minds are impure; if their minds are pure they are all pure.'** And mind also is neither within nor without, nor in between. Their minds being such, so are their sins. Likewise, all things do not go beyond (their) suchness. Upali, when your mind is liberated, is there any remaining impurity?" Upali replied: "There will be no more." Vimalakirti said: "Likewise, the minds of all living beings are free from impurities. Upali, false thoughts are impure and the absence of false thought is purity. Inverted (ideas) are impure and the absence of inverted (ideas) is purity. Clinging to ego is impure and non-clinging to ego is purity. Upali, all phenomena rise and fall without staying (for an instant) like an illusion and lightning. All phenomena do not wait for one another and do not stay for the time of a thought. They all derive from false views and are like a dream and a flame, the moon in water, and an image in a mirror for they are born from wrong thinking. He who understands this is called a keeper of the rules of discipline

and he who knows it is called a skillful interpreter (of the precepts).” At that “time, the two bhiksus declared: ‘What a supreme wisdom which is beyond the reach of Upali who cannot expound the highest principle of discipline and morality?’” Upali said: ‘Since I left the Buddha, I have not met a *śrāvaka* or a *Bodhisattva* who can surpass his rhetoric for his great wisdom and perfect enlightenment have reached such a high degree.’ Thereupon, the two bhiksus got rid of their doubts and repentance, set their mind on the quest of supreme enlightenment and took the vow that make all living beings acquire the same power of speech.

Close the Doors That Lead to Breaking Precepts: We always pretend to follow the three high trainings, but we have only a vague reflection of the other two in our mind-streams. As for precepts, we must try hard to keep them. In order to keep them, we must shut the doors that lead to breaking them. *First, the Door of Ignorance:* If we do not know what basic commitment we must keep, we will not know whether we have broken it. So, in order to shut the door of ignorance, we should know clearly the classical texts on *vinaya*. We should also study verse summaries of the precepts. *Second, the Door of Disrespect:* Disrespect is also a door leading to broken precepts. We should respect our masters as well as good-knowing advisors whose actions accord with Dharma. Buddhists should have the attitude that the precepts in our mind-stream represent our Teacher or the Buddha. According to the Buddha, precepts represent our Teacher and our teacher manifests the precepts that the Buddha established almost twenty-six hundred years ago. Therefore, the Buddha advised: “Do not be indifferent to your precepts; they are like a substitute for your teacher after my Nirvana.” *Third, the Door of Delusion:* Breach of precepts follows from whichever delusion. Three biggest delusions are greed, hatred and ignorance. Thus, in order to keep precepts, we must try to overcome delusions in our mind-stream or apply antidotes to the most predominant delusions. When attachment is our greatest delusion, we should contemplate on the impurity of the body, that it is a sack full of filth; and develop the attitude that it will have a bloody aspect, a swelling aspect, that it will be eaten by worms, that it will be a skeleton, and so on. As an antidote to hatred, contemplate on love. As an antidote to pride, contemplate on the *samsaric* sufferings and afflictions, such as old age, sicknesses, death, life uncertainty, and other ups and downs. As antidote to delusions, contemplate on interdependent origination. In short, contemplate on view concerning emptiness is the general antidote to delusion. *Fourth, the Door of Recklessness:* In order to prevent recklessness, we should have remembrance and not forget to modify our behavior at all times during our daily routine, when we walk, stand, sit and lie down. From time to time, we should check to

see if our body, speech and mind have been tarnished by misdeeds or broken precepts.

IX. Cultivation of Three Collections of Pure Precepts:

Pure precepts (impeccable observation of the precepts) mean pure commandments that help keep practitioners in purity. Cultivation of these three collections of pure precept or cultivation of three accumulations of pure precepts of the Bodhisattvas. Those cultivating Hinayana's Sravaka Way do not have these three accumulations of purity precepts. Only Mahayana Bodhisattvas practice them. Bodhisattvas always maintain the Buddha's pure precepts, and their thoughts, words, and deeds are faultless, but because they want to edify immoral sentient beings, they appear to perform the acts of ordinary ignorant people; though they are already filled with pure virtues and abide in the course of Enlightening Beings, yet they appear to live in such realms as hells, animality, ghosthood, and in difficulty and poverty, in order to enable the beings therein to gain liberation; really the Enlightening Beings are not born in those states. These three accumulations of pure precepts encompass the "Four Propagation Vows." *First*, the pure precepts which include all rules and observances, or to avoid evil by keeping the discipline. Which means to gather all precepts such as five precepts, eight precepts, ten precepts of Sramanera, 250 precepts of Bhiksus, 348 precepts of Bhiksunis, 10 major and 48 minor precepts of Bodhisattvas, and maintain them purely without violating a single precept. *Second*, the pure precepts which include all wholesome dharmas. Accumulating wholesome precepts means Bodhisattvas who must learn all the wholesome dharmas that the Buddha taught in various sutras, so they will know all the clear paths and means necessary to "lead and guide sentient beings" to liberation and enlightenment. Thus, no matter how insignificant a dharma teaching may seem, they are not to abandon any dharma door. This vow is made by all Mahayana practicing Buddhists that "Innumerable Dharma Door, I vow to master." *Third*, the pure precepts which include all living beings. This means to develop the compassionate nature to want to benefit and aid all sentient beings, and this is the vow "Infinite sentient beings, I vow to take across."

X. Cultivation of Precepts That Lead to Deliverance & the Cutting Off of Affairs:

Morality forms the foundation of further progress on the right path. The contents of morality in Buddhism compose of right speech, right action, and right livelihood. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control

of man's verbal and physical actions. The precepts in Buddhism are not a moral code that someone or something outside ourselves demands that we follow. The precepts are the Buddha-nature, the spirit of the universe.

According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, There Are Five Elements Making for Deliverance: *First, the Deliverance From SENSE-DESIRES:* Here when a monk considers sense-desires, his mind does not leap forward and take satisfaction in them, fix on them or make free with them, but when he considers renunciation it does leap forward, take satisfaction in it, fix on it, and make free with it. And he gets this thought well-set, well-developed, well-raised up, well freed and disconnected from sense-desires. And thus he is freed from the corruptions (asava), the vexations and fevers that arise from sense-desires, and he does not feel that sensual feeling.

Second, the Deliverance From ILL-WILL: Same as in 1. Replace "sense-desires" with "ill-will".

Third, the Deliverance From CRUELTY: Same as in 1. Replace "sense-desires" with "cruelty".

Fourth, the Deliverance From FORMS (rupa): Same as in 1. Replace "sense-desires" with "forms".

Fifth, the Deliverance From PERSONALITY: Same as in 1. Replace "sense-desires" with "personality".

According to the Potoliya Sutta in the Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha, There Are Eight Precepts That Need Be Cultivated: Also called eight things in the Noble One's Discipline that lead to the cutting off of affairs.

The First Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs: "with the support of the non-killing of living beings, the killing of living beings is to be abandoned." So, it was said. And with reference to what was this said? Here a noble disciple considers thus: 'I am practicing the way to abandoning and cutting off of those fetters because of which I might kill living beings. If I were to kill living beings, I would blame myself for doing so; the wise, having investigated, would censure me for doing so; and on the dissolution of the body, after death, because of killing living beings an unhappy destination would be expected. But this killing of living beings is itself a fetter and a hindrance. And while taints, vexation, and fever might arise through the killing of living beings, there are no taints, vexation, and fever in one who abstains from killing living beings.' So, it is with reference to this that it was said: "With the support of the non-killing of living beings, the killing of living beings is to be abandoned."

The Second Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs: "with the support of taking only what is given, the taking of what is not given is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as in the first one).

The Third Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs: "with the support of truthful speech, false speech is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as in the first one).

The Fourth Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs: "with the support unmalicious speech, malicious speech is to be abandoned." (the rest remains the same as in the first one).

The Fifth Thing That Leads to

the Cutting Off of Affairs: “with the support of refraining from rapacious greed, rapacious greed is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as in the first one). *The Sixth Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs:* “with the support of refraining from spiteful scolding, spiteful scolding is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as in the first one). *The Seventh Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs:* “with the support of refraining from angry despair, angry despair is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as in the first one). *The Eighth Thing That Leads to the Cutting Off of Affairs:* “with the support of non-arrogance, arrogance is to be abandoned.” (the rest remains the same as in the first one).

XI. Elements That Are Necessary to Complete Four Parajika Sins and Their Results:

According to Buddhism, sin is blameworthy and brings about bad karma; entangled in the net of wrong-doing. Also, according to Buddhism, sentient beings who have no feeling of guilt in the sense of fear of a God who will punish him for his wrong-doing. However, they feel guilty by the law of karma. When you do some wrong-doing, you will receive the effects of your wrong-doing and in this way suffer the effect of your own sin. According to both Mahayana and Theravada, there are four grave prohibitions or sins. The word Parajika is derived from the Sanskrit root Para and Jika which means that makes DEFEAT. Four parajikas mean four causes of falling from grace and final excommunication or expulsion of a monk or nun. According to the monastic point of view, these offences are regarded as very serious in nature. Any monks, regardless of their ranks and years in the Order, violate any one of these offences, are subject to expulsion from the Order. Once they are expelled, they are never allowed to join the Order again. They are defeated forever. Therefore, the Buddha cautioned all monks and nuns not to indulge in any one of them. The advice of not committing these sins does not only challenge us to think creatively of alternate means to resolve conflict besides violence, but regarding the aspect of cause and effect, it also causes us to try to find out necessary elements for completing these four grave sins and their results. Four Parajika Sins comprise of killing, stealing, committing sexual intercourses, and lying.

The First Parajika Sin Is Killing: Killing is one of the four grave prohibitions or sins in Buddhism. Killing is intentionally taking the life of any being, including animals. According to the Buddhist laws, the taking of human life offends against the major commands, of animal life against the less stringent commands. Suicide also leads to severe penalties in the next lives. According to Buddhism, there are five conditions that are necessary to

complete the evil of killing: 1) A living being, 2) Knowledge that it is a living being, 3) Intention of killing a living being, 4) Effort to kill a living being, 5) Consequent death of a living being. The consequences of killing: The gravity of the evil deed of killing depends on the goodness and the magnitude of the being concerned. The killing of a virtuous person or a big animal is regarded as more heinous than the killing of a vicious person or a small animal, because a greater effort is needed to commit the evil and the loss involved is considerably great. The evil effects of killing include: Brevity of life, ill-health (sicknesses), constant grief due to the separation from the loved one, and constant fear.

The Second Parajika Sins Is Stealing: Stealing means taking possession of anything that has not been given by its owner or stealing, is also wrong, even legally speaking. Stealing includes not paying taxes or fees that are due, borrowing things and not returning them, and so on. According to Buddhism, there are five conditions that are necessary for the completion of the evil of stealing: 1) Another's property, 2) Knowledge that it is so, 3) Intention of stealing, 4) Effort to steal, and 5) Actual removal. Also, according to Buddhism, there are four certain consequences of stealing: Poverty, misery, disappointment, and dependent livelihood.

The Third Parajika Sins Is Committing Sexual Intercourses: Sexual misconduct is the third commandment of the five basic commandments for lay people, and the third precept of the ten major precepts for monks and nuns in the Brahma Net Sutra. Monks or nuns who commit this offence will be expelled from the Order forever. A Bhiksu or Bhiksuni who has sexual intercourse with another person, whether a female or male, and whether that person has given consent or not, breaks the first of the Four Degradation Offences. He or she is no longer worthy to remain a Bhiksu or Bhiksuni and cannot participate in the activities of the Bhiksu or Bhiksuni Sangha. According to Buddhism, there are four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of sexual misconduct: 1) The thought to enjoy, 2) Consequent effort, 3) Means to gratify, and 4) Gratification. According to The Buddha and His Teachings, written by Most Venerable Narada, these are the inevitable consequences of Kamesu-micchacara: 1) Having many enemies, 2) Union with undesirable wives and husbands (spouses), and 3) Birth as a woman or as a eunuch (thái giám).

The Fourth Parajika Sins Is Lying: Lying means verbally saying or indicating through a nod or a shrug something we know isn't true. However, telling the truth should be tempered and compassion. For instance, it isn't wise to tell the truth to a murderer about a potential victim's whereabouts, if this would cause the latter's death. False speaking or lying includes either slander, false boasting, or deception to cheat others. According to Buddhism, there are

four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of lying: 1) An untruth, 2) Deceiving intention, 3) Utterance, and 4) Actual deception. According to *The Buddha and His Teachings*, written by Most Venerable Narada, there are some inevitable consequences of lying as follow: Being subject to abusive speech, vilification, untrustworthiness, and stinking mouth.

(B) Some Important Precepts in Buddhism

(B-1) Five Basic Precepts in Buddhism

I. An Overview, Meanings and Benefits of the Five Precepts:

Good conduct forms a foundation for further progress on the path of personal development. The morality is also the foundation of all qualities. Besides, morality is the most important base that prepare Buddhist cultivators in cultivating the Eightfold Noble Path. According to Buddhism, the way of practice of good conduct includes three parts of the the Eightfold Noble Path, and these three parts are Right Speech, Right Action, and Right Livelihood. Besides, the keeping precepts is a gate of Dharma-illumination; for with it, we distantly depart from the hardships of evil worlds, and we teach and guide precept-breaking living beings. Morality forms the foundation of further progress on the right path. As mentioned above, the contents of morality in Buddhism compose of right speech, right action, and right livelihood of the Eightfold Noble Path. The moral code taught in Buddhism is very vast and varied and yet the function of Buddhist morality is one and not many. It is the control of man's verbal and physical actions. All morals set forth in Buddhism lead to this end, virtuous behavior, yet moral code is not an end in itself, but a means, for it aids concentration (samadhi). Samadhi, on the other hand, is a means to the acquisition of wisdom (panna), true wisdom, which in turn brings about deliverance of mind, the final goal of the teaching of the Buddha. Virtue, Concentration, and Wisdom therefore is a blending of man's emotions and intellect. Dainin Katagiri wrote in *Returning to Silence*: "The Triple Treasure in Buddhism, 'I take refuge in the Buddha, I take refuge in the Dharma, I take refuge in the Sangha,' is the foundation of the precepts. The precepts in Buddhism are not a moral code that someone or something outside ourselves demands that we follow. The precepts are the Buddha-nature, the spirit of the universe. To receive the precepts is to transmit something significant beyond the understanding of our sense, such as the spirit of the universe or what we call Buddha-nature. What we have awakened to, deeply, through our body and mind, is transmitted from generation to

generation, beyond our control. Having experienced this awakening, we can appreciate how sublime human life is. Whether we know it or not, or whether we like it or not, the spirit of the universe is transmitted. So we all can learn what the real spirit of a human being is... Buddha is the universe and Dharma is the teaching from the universe, and Sangha is the group of people who make the universe and its teaching alive in their lives. In our everyday life we must be mindful of the Buddha, Dharma and Sangha whether we understand this or not."

The five basic commandments of Buddhism are the five commandments of Buddhism (against murder, theft, lust, lying and drunkenness). The five basic prohibitions binding on all Buddhists, monks and laymen alike; however, these are especially for lay disciples. The observance of these five ensures rebirth in the human realm. When we respect and keep these five precepts, not only we give peace and happiness to ourselves, we also give happiness and peace to our families and society. People will feel very secure and comfortable when they are around us. Besides, to keep the basic five precepts will make us more generous and kind, will cause us to care and share whatever we can share with other people. Observing of the five precepts will help us with the followings: help make our life have more quality, help us obtain dignity and respect from others, help make us a good member of the family, a good father or mother, a filial child, help make us good citizens of the society.

II. A Summary of the Five Precepts:

Basic precepts, commandments, discipline, prohibition, morality, or rules in Buddhism. Precepts are designed by the Buddha to help Buddhists guard against transgressions and stop evil. Transgressions spring from the three karmas of body, speech and mind. Rules and ceremonies, an intuitive apprehension of which, both written and unwritten, enables devotees to practice and act properly under all circumstances. As mentioned above, precepts mean vows of moral conduct taken by lay and ordained Buddhists. There are five vows for lay people, 250 for fully ordained monks, 348 for fully ordained nuns, 58 for Bodhisattvas (48 minor and 10 major). In the limit of this chapter, we only mention on the five precepts for lay people. As mentioned above, in both forms of Buddhism, Theravada and Mahayana, the Buddha taught his disciples, especially lay-disciples to keep the Five Precepts. Although details are not given in the canonical texts, Buddhist teachers have offered many good interpretations about a summary of the content of these five precepts as mentioned below: not to kill, not to steal, not to engage in improper sexual conduct, not to lie, and refrain from intoxicants.

The First Precept Is Not to Take Life: Not to take life is the first in the Five Precepts. We are living in an imperfect world where the strong prey on the weak, big animals prey on small animals, and killing is spreading everywhere. Even in the animal world, we can see a tiger would feed on a deer, a snake on a frog, a frog on other small insects, or a big fish on a small fish, and so on. Let us take a look at the human world, we kill animals, and sometimes we kill one another for power. Thus, the Buddha set the first rule for his disciples, “not to kill.” Not to kill the living, the first of the Ten Commandments. Not to kill will help us become kind and full of pity. This is the first Buddhist precept, binding upon clergy and laity, not to kill and this includes not to kill, not to ask other people to kill, not to be joyful seeing killing, not to think of killing at any time, not to kill oneself (commit suicide), not to praise killing or death by saying “it’s better death for someone than life.” Not to kill is also including not to slaughtering animals for food because by doing this, you do not only cut short the lives of other beings, but you also cause pain and suffering for them. “Not to Take Life” is one of the first eight of the Ten Commandments which the Buddha set forth for lay Buddhists to observe 24 hours every fortnight. If we truly believe that all sentient beings are the Buddhas of the future, we would never think of killing or harming them in any way. Rather, we would have feelings of loving-kindness and compassion toward all of them, without exception. Buddhists do not take life out of the pity of others. Besides, not to kill will help us become kind and full of pity. Devout Buddhists should always remember the Buddha’s teachings, not only not to kill, not only do we respect life, we also cherish it. Abstain from killing and to extend compassion to all beings does not entail any restriction. All beings, in Buddhism, implies all living creatures, or all that breathe. It is an admitted fact that all that live, human or animal, love life and hate death. As life is precious to all, their one aim is to preserve it from harm and prolong it. This implies even to the smallest creatures that are conscious of being alive. According to the Dhammapada (131), “Whoever in his search for happiness harasses those who are fond of happiness will not be happy in the hereafter.” The happiness of all creatures depends on their being alive. So, to deprive them of that which contains all good for them, is cruel and heartless in the extreme. Thus, not to harm and kill others is one of the most important virtues of a Buddhist. Those who develop the habit of being cruel to animal are quite capable of ill-treating people as well when the opportunity comes. When a cruel thought gradually develops into an obsession it may well lead to sadism. Those who kill suffer often in this life. After this life, the karma of their ruthless deeds will for long force them into states of woe. On the contrary, those who show pity towards others and refrain from killing will be born in good states of existence, and if reborn as humans, will be endowed with health, beauty, riches, influences, and

intelligence, and so forth. Not to kill or injure any living being, or refraining from taking life. This is the first of the five commandments. Pranatipata-viratih also means not to have any intention to kill any living being; this includes animals, for they feel pain just as human do. On the contrary, one must lay respect and save lives of all sentient beings. The Buddha always taught in his sutras: “The greatest sin is killing; the highest merit is to save sentient lives. Life is dear to all.” In fact, all beings fear death and value life, we should therefore respect life and not kill anything. This precept forbids not only killing people but also any creature, especially if it is for money or sport. We should have an attitude of loving-kindness towards all beings, wishing them to be always happy and free. Caring for the Earth, not polluting its rivers and air, not destroying its forests, etc, are also included in this precept. Killing is one of the four grave prohibitions or sins in Buddhism. Killing is intentionally taking the life of any being, including animals. The advice of not killing challenges us to think creatively of alternate means to resolve conflict besides violence. Refraining from taking life. This is the first of the five commandments. Pranatipata-viratih also means not to have any intention to kill any living being; this includes animals, for they feel pain just as human do. On the contrary, one must lay respect and save lives of all sentient beings. The Buddha always taught in his sutras: “The greatest sin is killing; the highest merit is to save sentient lives.” According to the Buddhist laws, the taking of human life offends against the major commands, of animal life against the less stringent commands. Suicide also leads to severe penalties in the next lives. According to Most Venerable Dhammananda in the *Gems of Buddhism Wisdom*, the prohibition against the taking of any life applies not only to humanity but also to creatures of every kind, both big and small; black ants as well as red ants. Each day a vast number of animals are slaughtered as food, for most people eat meat, while vegetarians are not common. In the field of science, animals are used in many researches and experiments. In the administrative field, arms are used in crime suppression. Law enforcement agencies punish law breakers. Belligerents at war use arms to destroy one another. The actions cited here as examples are not regarded as illegal or as running counter to normal worldly practice. Indeed, it may even be considered wrong to abstain from them, as is the case when constables or soldiers fail in their police or military duties. Nowadays many kinds of animals are known to be carriers of microbes and, thanks to the microscope, germs and many sorts of microbes have been detected. Almost everything contains them, even drinking water. Only the larger impurities are caught by filter; microbes can pass through. So infinite microbes pass into our throats with each draught of water. It is the same medicines. Whenever they are used, either externally or internally, they destroy myriads of microbes. Are these microbes to be

considered as living beings in the sense of the first sila or are they not? If so, perhaps no one can fully comply with it. Besides, some are of the opinion that people who refrain from taking the life of animals should also refrain from eating meat, because it amounts to encouraging slaughter and is no less sinful according to them. Killing is one of the ten kinds of evil karma, to kill living beings, to take life, kill the living, or any conscious being. According to *The Buddha and His Teaching*, written by Most Venerable Narada, killing means the intentional destruction of any living being. The Pali term *pana* strictly means the psycho-physical life pertaining to one's particular existence. The wanton destruction of this life-force, without allowing it to run its due course, is *panatipata*. *Pana* also means that which breathes. Hence all animate beings, including animals, are regarded as *pana*. However, plants are not considered as "living beings" as they possess no mind. Monks and nuns, however, are forbidden to destroy even plant life. This rule, it may be mentioned, does not apply to lay-followers. Five conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of killing: a living being, knowledge that it is a living being, intention of killing, effort to kill, and consequent death (cause the death of that being). The gravity of the evil deed of killing depends on the goodness and the magnitude of the being concerned. If the killing of a virtuous person or a big animal is regarded as more heinous than the killing of a vicious person or a small animal, because a greater effort is needed to commit the evil and the loss involved is considerably great. The evil effects of killing include brevity of life, ill-health, constant grief due to the separation from the loved one, and constant fear. Devout Buddhists should not kill, but should always save and set free living beings. Liberating living beings means not to kill but to save and set free living beings. A person with a greatly compassionate heart never kills living beings. On the contrary, that person always tries the practice of liberating living beings. A sincere Buddhist should always maintain a mind of kindness and cultivate the practice of liberating liberating beings. The Buddha taught: "A sincere Buddhist should always reflect thus 'All male beings have been my father and all females have been my mother. There is not a single being who has not given birth to me during my previous lives, hence all beings of the Six Paths are my parents. Therefore, when a person kills and eats any of these beings, he thereby slaughters my parents.'" According to Buddhist theory, the only reason that causes wars in the world is people's collective killing karma is so heavy. If in this life, I kill you, in the next life, you'll kill me, and in the life after that, I will come back to kill you. This cycle of killing continues forever. People kill animals and in their next life they may become animals. The animals which they once killed now may return as people to claim revenge. This goes on and on. That's why there exists an endless cycle of killing and bloodshed. To decrease or diminish our killing karma, we must

practice liberating living beings. The merit and virtue that we accumulate from liberating animals is boundless. It enables us to cause living beings to live their full extent of their natural life span. The more we engage in liberating living beings, the lighter the collective killing karma our world has. If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of killing, they would not have to follow a continual succession of births and deaths. According to the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha reminded Ananda about “cutting off killing”, one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: “Ananda! If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of killing, they would not have to follow a continual succession of births and deaths. Ananda! Your basic purpose in cultivating samadhi is to transcend the wearisome defilements. But if you do not remove your thoughts of killing, you will not be able to get out of the dust. Ananda! Even though one may have some wisdom and the manifestation of Zen Samadhi, one is certain to enter the path of spirits if one does not cease killing. At best, a person will become a mighty ghost; on the average, one will become a flying yaksha, a ghost leader, or the like; at the lowest level, one will become an earth-bound rakshasa. These ghosts and spirits have their groups of disciples. Each says of himself that he has accomplished the unsurpassed way. After my extinction, in the Dharma-Ending Age, these hordes of ghosts and spirits will abound, spreading like wildfire as they argue that eating meat will bring one to the Bodhi Way. Ananda! I permit the Bhikshus to eat five kinds of pure meat. This meat is actually a transformation brought into being by my spiritual powers. It basically has no life-force. You Brahmins live in a climate so hot and humid, and on such sandy and rocky land, that vegetables will not grow. Therefore, I have had to assist you with spiritual powers and compassion. Because of the magnitude of this kindness and compassion, what you eat that tastes like meat is merely said to be meat; in fact, however, it is not. After my extinction, how can those who eat the flesh of living beings be called the disciples of Sakya? You should know that these people who eat meat may gain some awareness and may seem to be in samadhi, but they are all great rakshasas. When their retribution ends, they are bound to sink into the bitter sea of birth and death. They are not disciples of the Buddha. Such people as they kill and eat one another in a never-ending cycle. How can such people transcend the triple realm? Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must also cut off killing. This is the second clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come Ones and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, if cultivators of Zen Samadhi do not cut off killing, they are like one who stops up his ears and calls out in a loud voice, expecting no one to hear him. It is to wish to hide what is completely evident. Bhikshus and

Bodhisattvas who practice purity will not even step on grass in the pathway; even less will they pull it up with their hand. How can one with great compassion pick up the flesh and blood of living beings and proceed to eat his fill? Bhikshus who do not wear silk, leather boots, furs, or down from this country or consume milk, cream, or butter can truly transcend this world. When they have paid back their past debts, they will not have to re-enter the triple realm. Why? It is because when one wears something taken from a living creature, one creates conditions with it, just as when people eat the hundred grains, their feet cannot leave the earth. Both physically and mentally one must avoid the bodies and the by-products of living beings, by neither wearing them nor eating them. I say that such people have true liberation. What I have said here is the Buddha's teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan. In the Middle Length Discourses, the Buddha advises people, especially Buddhist followers not to kill because all sentient beings tremble at the stick, to all life is dear. The Buddha has respected for life, any life, even the life of an insect or of a plant. He sets himself an example, not to throw remaining food on green vegetation, or in the water where there are small insects. He advises His disciples not to kill living beings and makes it very clear that, killing living beings will lead to hell, to the hungry ghost or to the animal, and the lightest evil result to be obtained is to be reborn as human being but with very short life. Moreover, killing living beings will bring up fear and hatred in the present and in the future, and pain and suffering in mind. He taught: "O householder, killing living beings, due to killing living beings, fear and hatred arise in the present, fear and hatred will arise in the future, thereby bringing up pain and suffering in mind. Refrain from killing living beings, fear and hatred do not arise in the present, will not arise in the future, thereby not bringing up pain and suffering in mind. Those who refrain from killing living beings will calm down this fear and hatred." The Buddha taught Bhiksus as follows: "Here, o Bhiksus, the Aryan disciple does not kill living beings, give up killing. O Bhiksus, the Aryan disciple who gives up killing, gives no fear to innumerable living beings, gives no hatred to innumerable living beings, and gives harmlessness to innumerable living beings. Having given no fear, no hatred, and harmlessness to innumerable living beings, the Aryan disciple has his share in innumerable fearlessness, in no hatred and in harmlessness. O Bhiksus, this is first class charity, great charity, timeless charity that is not despised by reclusees and brahmanas." In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: "All tremble at sword and rod, all fear death; comparing others with oneself, one should neither kill nor cause to kill (Dharmapada 129). All tremble at sword and rod, all love life; comparing others with oneself; one should not kill nor cause to kill (Dharmapada 130). He who takes the rod and harms a harmless person, will soon come to one of

these ten stages (Dharmapada 137). He will be subject to cruel suffering of infirmity, bodily injury, or serious sickness (Dharmapada 138). Or loss of mind, or oppression by the king, or heavy accusation, or loss of family members or relatives (Dharmapada 139). Or destruction of wealth, or lightening fire burn his house, and after death will go to the hell (Dharmapada 140).”

The Second Precept Is Not to Steal: Not to steal or not to cheat, or not to take anything with dishonest intent. Abstain from stealing and to live honestly, taking only what is one’s own by right. To take what belongs to another is not so serious as to deprive him of his life, but it is still a grave crime because it deprives him of some happiness. As no one wants to be robbed, it is not difficult to understand that it is wrong to take what is not one’s own. The thought that urges a person to steal can never be good or wholesome. Then robbery leads to violence and even to murder. This precept is easily violated by those in trade and commerce. A man can use both his pen and his tongue with intent to steal. There can be no peace or happiness in a society where people are always on the look-out to cheat and rob their neighbors. Theft may take many forms. For instance, if an employee slacks or works badly and yet is paid in full, he is really a theft, for he takes the money he has not earned. And the same applies to the employer if he fails to pay adequate wages. We all have the same right to own things and give them away as we wish. However, we should not take things that do not belong to us by stealing or cheating. Instead, we should learn to give to help others, and always take good care of the things that we use, whether they belong to us or to the public. In a broader sense, this precept means being responsible. If we are lazy and neglect our studies or work, we are said to be “stealing time” of our own. This precept also encourages us to be generous. Buddhists give to the poor and the sick and make offerings to monks and nuns to practice being good. Buddhists are usually generous to their parents, teachers and friends to show gratitude for their advice, guidance and kindness. Buddhists also offer sympathy and encouragement to those who feel hurt or discouraged. Helping people by telling them about the Dharma is considered to be the highest form of giving. Not to steal because we have no right to take what is not give. Not to steal will help us become honest. Not to steal is one of the first eight of the Ten Commandments which the Buddha set forth for lay Buddhists to observe 24 hours every fortnight. Not to take anything which does not belong to you or what is not given to you. Refraining from taking what is not given. Adattadana-viratih means not directly or indirectly taking other’s belongings. On the contrary, one should give things, not only to human beings, but also to animals. The Buddha always taught in his sutras “desire brings great misfortune; giving brings great fortune.” Not to steal because we have no right

to take what is not given. Not to steal will help us become honest. Five conditions are necessary for the completion of the evil of stealing: another's property, knowledge that it is so, intention of stealing, effort to steal, and actual removal. Devout Buddhists should not steal, for not stealing will help us increase our generosity, increase trust in other people, increase our honesty, life without sufferings, and life without disappointment. According to the Surangama Sutra, the Buddha reminded Ananda about "cutting off stealing", one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: "Ananda! If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of stealing, they would not have to follow a continuous succession of births and deaths. Ananda! Your basic purpose in cultivating samadhi is to transcend the wearisome defilements. But if you do not renounce your thoughts of stealing, you will not be able to get out of the dust. Ananda! Even though one may have some wisdom and the manifestation of Zen Samadhi, one is certain to enter a devious path if one does not cease stealing. At best, one will be an apparition; on the average, one will become a phantom; at the lowest level, one will be a devious person who is possessed by a Mei-Ghost. These devious hordes have their groups of disciples. Each says of himself that he has accomplished the unsurpassed way. After my extinction, in the Dharma-Ending Age, these phantoms and apparitions will abound, spreading like wildfire as they surreptitiously cheat others. Calling themselves good knowing advisors, they will each say that they have attained the superhuman dharmas. Enticing and deceiving the ignorant, or frightening them out of their wits, they disrupt and lay waste to households wherever they go. I teach the Bhikshus to beg for their food in an assigned place, in order to help them renounce greed and accomplish the Bodhi Way. The Bhikshus do not prepare their own food, so that, at the end of this life of transitory existence in the triple realm, they can show themselves to be once-returners who go and do not come back. How can thieves who put on my robes and sell the Thus Come One's dharmas, saying that all manner of karma one creates is just the Buddhadharmas? They slander those who have left the home-life and regard Bhikshus who have taken complete precepts as belonging to the path of the small vehicle. Because of such doubts and misjudgments, limitless living beings fall into the Unintermittent Hell. I say that Bhikshus who after my extinction have decisive resolve to cultivate samadhi, and who before the images of Thus Come Ones can burn a candle on their bodies, or burn off a finger, or burn even one incense stick on their bodies, will in that moment, repay their debts from beginningless time past. They can depart from the world and forever be free of outflows. Though they may not have instantly understood the unsurpassed enlightenment, they will already have firmly set their mind on it. If one does not practice any of these token renunciations of the body on the causal level,

then even if one realizes the unconditioned, one will still have to come back as a person to repay one's past debts exactly as I had to undergo the retribution of having to eat the grain meant for horses. Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must also cease stealing. This is the third clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come One and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, if cultivators of Zen Samadhi do not cease stealing, they are like someone who pours water into a leaking cup and hopes to fill it. He may continue for as many eons as there are fine motes of dust, but it still will not be full in the end. If Bhikshus do not store away anything but their robes and bowls; if they give what is left over from their food-offerings to hungry living beings; if they put their palms together and make obeisance to the entire great assembly; if when people scold them, they can treat it as praise: if they can sacrifice their very bodies and minds, giving their flesh, bones, and blood to living creatures. If they do not repeat the non-ultimate teachings of the Thus Come One as though they were their own explanations, misrepresenting them to those who have just begun to study, then the Buddha gives them his seal as having attained true samadhi. What I have said here is the Buddha's teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan.

The Third Precept Is Not to Commit Sexual Misconduct: Not to engage in improper sexual conduct. Against lust, not to commit adultery, to abstain from all sexual excess, or refraining from sexual misconduct. This includes not having sexual intercourse with another's husband or wife, or being irresponsible in sexual relationship. Adultery is wrong. Laypeople should be responsible in sexual matters. If we do not have the great opportunity to renounce the world to become monks and nuns to cultivate obtain liberation, we should keep a good relationship between husband and wife, we should be considerate, loving and faithful to each other, then our family will be happy, and our society will be better. One who commits it does not command respect nor does one inspire confidence. Sexual misconduct involving person with whom conjugal relations should be avoided to custom, or those who are prohibited by law, or by the Dharma, is also wrong. So is coercing by physical or even financial means a married or even unmarried person into consenting to such conduct. The purpose of this third sila is to preserve the respectability of the family of each person concerned and to safeguard its sanctity and inviolability. According to The Path of Purification, "Bad Ways" is a term for doing what ought not to be done and not doing what ought to be done, out of desire, hate, delusion, and fear. They are called "bad ways" because they are ways not to be traveled by Noble Ones. Adultery is mentioned in Buddhist texts as one of a number of forms of similar sexual misconduct. For monks or nuns who only think about or wish to commit sexual intercourse with any people

(not wait until physically committing sexual intercourse) are guilty and violate the Vinaya commandments and must be excommunicated from the Order. For laypeople, thinking or wishing to make love or physically making love with those who are not their husband or wife is forbidden. Avoiding the misuse of sex is respect for people and personal relationships. Much unhappiness arises from the misuse of sex and from living in irresponsible ways. Many families have been broken as a result, and many children have been victims of sexual abuse. For all lay Buddhists, the happiness of others is also the happiness of ourselves, so sex should be used in a caring and loving manner, not in a craving of worldly flesh. When observing this precept, sexual desire should be controlled, and husbands and wives should be faithful towards each other. This will help to create peace in the family. In a happy family, the husband-and-wife respect, trust and love each other. With happy families, the world would be a better place for us to live in. Young Buddhists should keep their minds and bodies pure to develop their goodness. Devout Buddhists should not commit sexual misconduct (to have unchaste) because first, we don't want to be a bad person in the society; second, not to have unchaste will help us become pure and good. Not to commit sexual misconduct is the third commandment of the five basic commandments for lay people, and the third precept of the ten major precepts for monks and nuns in the Brahma Net Sutra. Monks or nuns who commit this offence will be expelled from the Order forever. This is one of the first eight of the Ten Commandments which the Buddha set forth for lay Buddhists to observe 24 hours every fortnight. There are four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of sexual misconduct: the thought to enjoy, consequent effort, means to gratify (gratification or the act of sexual misconduct). For Monks and Nuns, a Bhikṣu who, when motivated by sexual desire, tells a woman or a man that it would be a good thing for her or him to have sexual relations with him, commits a Sangha Restoration Offence. A Bhikṣuni who is intent upon having sexual relations with someone, whether male or female, breaks one of the eight Degradation Offences. She is no longer worthy to remain a Bhikṣuni and cannot participate in the activities of the Order of Bhikṣunis. Through word or gesture arouses sexual desire in that person, breaks the seventh of the Eight Degradation Offences. Says to that person that she is willing to offer him or her sexual relations, breaks the eighth of the Eight Degradation Offences. According to *The Buddha and His Teachings*, written by Most Venerable Narada, these are the inevitable consequences of Kāmesu-micchacara: having many enemies, union with undesirable wives and husbands (spouses), and birth as a woman or as a eunuch (thái giám). If living beings in the six paths of any mundane world had no thoughts of lust, they would not have to follow a continual succession of births and deaths. According to the Surangama Sutra,

the Buddha reminded Ananda about “cutting off lust”, one of the four important precepts for monks and nuns in Buddhism: “Ananda! Your basic purpose in cultivating is to transcend the wearisome defilements. But if you don’t renounce your lustful thoughts, you will not be able to get out of the dust. Even though one may have some wisdom and the manifestation of Zen Samadhi, one is certain to enter demonic paths if one does not cut off lust. At best, one will be a demon king; on the average, one will be in the retinue of demons; at the lowest level, one will be a female demon. These demons have their groups of disciples. Each says of himself he has accomplished the unsurpassed way. After my extinction, in the Dharma-Ending Age, these hordes of demons will abound, spreading like wildfire as they openly practice greed and lust. Calming to be good knowing advisors, they will cause living beings to fall into the pit of love and views and lose the way to Bodhi Ananda! When you teach people in the world to cultivate samadhi, they must first of all sever the mind of lust. This is the first clear and unalterable instruction on purity given by the Thus Come Ones and the Buddhas of the past, World Honored Ones. Therefore, Ananda, if cultivators of Zen Samadhi do not cut off lust, they will be like someone who cooks sand in the hope of getting rice, after hundreds of thousands of eons, it will still be just hot sand. Why? It wasn’t rice to begin with; it was only sand. Ananda! If you seek the Buddha’s wonderful fruition and still have physical lust, then even if you attain a wonderful awakening, it will be based in lust. With lust at the source, you will revolve in the three paths and not be able to get out. Which road will you take to cultivate and be certified to the Thus Come One’s Nirvana? You must cut off the lust which is intrinsic in both body and mind. Then get rid of even the aspect of cutting it off. At that point you have some hope of attaining the Buddha’s Bodhi. What I have said here is the Buddha’s teaching. Any explanation counter to it is the teaching of Papiyan. According to the Anguttara Nikaya, the Buddha taught: “Monk, I know not of any other single form by which a man’s heart is attracted as it is by that of a woman. Monks, a woman’s form fills a man’s mind. Monks, I know not of any other single sound by which a man’s heart is attracted as it is by that of a woman. Monks, a woman’s sound fills a man’s mind. (the same thing happens with smell, flavor, touch...)” Sex is described by the Buddha as the strongest impulse in man, if one becomes a slave to this impulse, even the most powerful man turn into a weakling; even the sage may fall from the higher to a lower level. In the Dharmapada Sutra, the Buddha taught: “Four misfortunes occur to a careless man who commits adultery: acquisition of demerit, restlessness, moral blame and downward path (Dharmapada 309). There is acquisition of demerit as well as evil destiny. No joy of the frightened man. The king imposes a heavy punishment. Therefore, man should never commit adultery (Dharmapada

310).” In the Forty-Two Sections Sutra, the Buddha said: “There was once someone who, plagued by ceaseless sexual desire, wished to castrate himself. To cut off your sexual organs would not be as good as to cut off your mind. Your mind is like a supervisor; if the supervisor stops, his employees will also quit. If the deviant mind is not stopped, what good does it do to cut off the organs?” The Kasyapa Buddha taught: ‘Desire is born from your will; your will is born from thought. When both aspects of the mind are still, there is neither form nor activity.’”

The Fourth Precept Is Not to Lie: False speech means nonsense or transgression speaking, or lying, either slander, false boasting, or deception. Lying also means not to tell the truth. Lying also means tale-bearing speech, or double tongue speech, or slandering speech. Lying also means harsh speech or frivolous talk. Slander the Buddhist Sutras is considered a serious lying. Slandering the Buddhist sutras means ridiculing Buddhist theories taught by the Buddha and written in the sutras, i.e., saying that the principles in the Buddhist sutras are false, that the Buddhist and Great Vehicle sutras were spoken by demon kings, and so on. This sort of offense cannot be pardoned through repentance. According to The Buddha and His Teachings, there are four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of lying: an untruth, deceiving intention, utterance, and actual deception. According to Buddhism, “Lying” is the main rationalization for other offenses. Devout Buddhists should always be aware of the following situations: we tell lies when we contend; we tell lies when we are greedy; we tell lies when we seek gratification; we tell lies as we are selfish; we tell lies as we chase personal advantages. We tell lies to deceive people. We commit mistakes but do not want to admit, so we tell lies and try to rationalize for ourselves, and so on, and so on. Also according to The Buddha and His Teachings, written by Most Venerable Narada, there are some inevitable consequences of lying as follow: being subject to abusive speech, vilification, untrustworthiness, and stinking mouth. The Buddha wanted His disciples to be so perfectly truthful that He encouraged us not to lie, but to speak the truth, the whole truth. Against lying, deceiving and slandering. Not to lie includes not saying bad things, not gossiping, not twisting stories, and not lying. On the contrary, one must use the right gentle speech, which gives benefit to oneself and others. However, sometimes they are unable to speak the truth; for instance, they may have to lie to save themselves from harm, and doctors lie to bolster their patients’ morale. Lying under these circumstances may be contrary to the sila, but it is not entirely contrary to the loving-kindness and to its purpose. This sila aims at bringing about mutual benefits by adhering to truth and avoiding verbal offences. Similarly, utterances harmful to another’s well-being, for example, malicious, abusive or slanderous speech intended either to deride others or to

vaunt oneself may be truthful, yet they must be regarded as wrong, because they are contrary to the sila. Sincere Buddhists should always respect each other and not tell lies or boast about ourselves. This would result in fewer quarrels and misunderstandings, and the world would be a more peaceful place. In observing the fourth precept, we should always speak the truth. There are four ways of “Mrsavadaviratih”. The first way is “lying”. Lying means verbally saying or indicating through a nod or a shrug something we know isn’t true. However, telling the truth should be tempered and compassion. For instance, it isn’t wise to tell the truth to a murderer about a potential victim’s whereabouts, if this would cause the latter’s death. We should not to lie because if we lie, nobody would believe us. Furthermore, not to lie will help us become truthful and trustful. According to the Dharmapada Sutra, verse 306, the Buddha taught: “The speaker of untruth goes down; also, he who denies what he has done, both sinned against truth. After death they go together to hells.” The second way is “Tale-bearing” or “Slandering”. To slander means to twist stories, or to utilize slandering words. The Pali word means literally ‘breaking up of fellowship’. To slander another is most wicked for it entails making a false statement intended to damage someone’s reputation. The slanderer often commits two crimes simultaneously, he says what is false because his report is untrue and then he back-bites. In Sanskrit poetry the back-biter is compared to a mosquito which though small is noxious. It comes singing, settles on you, draws blood and may give you malaria. Again, the tale-bearer’s words may be sweet as honey, but his mind is full of poison. Let us then avoid tale-bearing and slander which destroy friendships. Instead of causing trouble let us speak words that make for peace and reconciliation. Instead of sowing the seed of dissension, let us bring peace and friendship to those living in discord and enmity. The third way is “Harsh speech” (Pharusavaca p). Harsh words include insult, abuse, ridicule, sarcasm, and so on. Sometimes harsh words can be said with a smile, as when we innocently pretend what we have said won’t hurt other people. Devout Buddhists should never use harsh words because harsh words hurt others. According to *The Buddha and His Teaching*, written by Most Venerable Narada, there are three conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of harsh speech: a person to be abused, an angry thought, and the actual abuse. The inevitable consequences of harsh speech: being detested by others though absolutely harmless, and having a harsh voice. At the time of the Buddha, one day, an angry man with a bad temper went to see the Buddha. The man used harsh words to abuse the Buddha. The Buddha listened to him patiently and quietly, and did not say anything as the man spoke. The angry man finally stopped speaking. Only then did the Buddha ask him, “If someone wants to give you something, but you don’t want to accept it, to whom does

the gift belong?” “Of course, it belongs to the person who tried to give it away in the first place,” the man answered. “Likewise, it is with your abuse,” said the Buddha. “I do not wish to accept it, and so it belongs to you. You should have to keep this gift of harsh words and abuse for yourself. And I am afraid that in the end you will have to suffer it, for a bad man who abuses a good man can only bring suffering on himself. It is as if a man wanted to dirty the sky by spitting at it. His spittle can never make the sky dirty; it would only fall onto his own face and make it dirty instead.” The man listened to the Buddha and felt ashamed. He asked the Buddha to forgive him and became one of his followers. The Buddha then said, “Only kind words and reasoning can influence and transform others.” Sincere Buddhists should avoid using harsh words in speech. The fourth way is “Frivolous talk” (Samphappalapa p). According to Most Venerable in The Buddha and His Teachings, there are two conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of frivolous talk: the inclination towards frivolous talk, and its narration. The inevitable consequences of frivolous talk: defective bodily organs and incredible speech. According to the Dharmapada Sutra, verse 306, the Buddha taught: “The speaker of untruth goes down; also, he who denies what he has done, both sinned against truth. After death they go together to hells.”

The Fifth Precept Is Not to Drink Alcohol and Other Intoxicants: Alcohol and other intoxicating substances cause mental confusion and reduce memory. Not to drink intoxicants (alcohol) means against drunkenness, to abstain from all intoxicants, or refraining from strong drink and sloth-producing drugs. If one wants to improve his knowledge and purify his mind, he should not drink alcohol or take any drugs such as cocaine, which excites the nervous system. Alcohol has been described as one of the prime causes of man’s physical and moral degradation. Currently heroin is considered a thousand times more harmful and dangerous. This problem is now worldwide. Thefts, robberies, sexual crimes and swindling of vast magnitude have taken place due to the pernicious influence of drugs. This precept is based on self-respect. It guards against losing control of our mind, body and speech. Many things can become addictive. They include alcohol, drugs, smoking and unhealthy books. Using any of the above mentioned will bring harm to us and our family. One day, the Buddha was speaking Dharma to the assembly when a young drunken man staggered into the room. He tripped over some monks who were sitting on the floor and started cursing aloud. His breath stank of alcohol and filled the air with a sickening smell. Mumbling to himself, he staggered out of the door. Everyone was shocked at his rude behavior, but the Buddha remained calm, “Great Assembly!” he said, “Take a look at this man! I can tell you the fate of a drunkard. He will certainly lose his wealth and good name. His body will grow weak and sickly. Day and night, he will quarrel with

his family and friends until they leave him. The worst thing is that he will lose his wisdom and become confused.” By observing this precept, we can keep a clear mind and have a healthy body. Reasons for “Not to drink”: not to drink liquor because it leads to carelessness and loss of all senses, not to drink will help us become careful with all clear senses. The precept of “Not to Drink” is one of the first eight of the Ten Commandments which the Buddha set forth for lay Buddhists to observe 24 hours every fortnight. Not to drink liquor is the fifth of the Ten Commandments. Not to drink liquor because it leads to carelessness and loss of all senses. Not to drink will help us to become careful with all clear senses. The Buddha has asked us to refrain from intoxicants. There are a multitude of reasons as to why we should follow this precept.

“Drunkenness expels reason,
Drowns memory,
Deface the brain,
Diminish strength,
Inflames the blood,
Causes incurable external and internal wounds.
Is a witch to the body,
A devil to the mind,
A thief to the purse,
The beggar’s curse,
The wife’s woe,
The children’s sorrow,
The picture of a beast, and self murder,
Who drinks to other’s health,
And rob himself of his own.

When we respect and keep these five precepts, not only we give peace and happiness to ourselves, we also give happiness and peace to our families and society. People will feel very secure and comfortable when they are around us. Besides, to keep the basic five precepts will make us more generous and kinder, will cause us to care and share whatever we can share with other people. Observing of the five precepts will help us with the followings: First, respect and keep these five precepts can help make our life have more quality. Second, respect and keep these five precepts can help us obtain dignity and respect from others. Third, respect and keep these five precepts can help make us a good member of the family, a good father or mother, a filial child. Fourth, respect and keep these five precepts can help make us good citizens of the society. Practitioners should always remember the Buddha's teachings on ten benefits for those who always abide by precepts (observe the silas): always becoming a Cakravartin; not losing the mind of diligence when he becomes a Cakravartin; always becoming a Sakra; not

losing the mind of diligence when he becomes a Sakra; always seeking the Buddhist Paths; always holding fast to the teachings of Bodhisattvas; not losing unhindered eloquence; always fulfilling the aspiration to plant various roots of merit; being always praised by Buddhas, Bodhisattvas and other sages; quickly attaining all sorts of wisdom.

(B-2) Eight Precepts

Beside the lay five precepts, lay people may also take eight precepts for a period of 24 hours every month. Many lay people like to take the eight precepts on new and full moon days or on Buddhist festivals, although they may be taken on any day. The first five of these eight are similar to the five lay precepts, with the exception that the precept against unwise sexual behavior become abstinent from sex, because the precepts are kept for only one day. The sixth precept is to avoid wearing perfume, ornaments and cosmetics as well as to refrain from singing, dancing and playing music. This precept helps lay people avoid distractions to their practice. Not beautifying the body encourages lay people to cultivate their internal beauty of love, compassion and wisdom. If they sing and dance, then when they sit down to meditate, the tunes keep running through their minds. The seventh precept is not to sit or sleep on a high or expensive bed or throne, as this could make them feel proud and superior to others. The eighth precept is not to eat solid food after noon and to be vegetarian for the day. When some masters give the eight precepts, they say only lunch may be eaten, while others allow both breakfast and lunch. Some masters permit only water to be taken in the evening, others allow tea with little milk, or fruit juice without pulp. The purpose of this precept is to reduce attachment to food. It also enables lay people to meditate better in the evenings, for if they eat a big supper, they often feel heavy and sleepy. Keeping precepts is not only better for ourselves, but it also helps us increase awareness of our actions, words, and attitudes. It helps us know ourselves better because we'll become aware of our habitual actions; it also enables us to decide beforehand what actions we want to avoid, and prevent a situation in which we're tempted to do something we know we'll regret later. Eight precepts are given to lay Buddhists to cultivate the way and must be observed and

strictly followed for one day and night include eight rules as follows: not to kill (not killing living beings), not stealing (not to take things not given), not to commit sexual misconduct (not having sexual intercourse), not to lie (not to speak falsely, not telling lies), not to drink wine (not consuming intoxicants), not to indulge in cosmetics, or personal adornments (not wearing personal decoration, not to wear make-up, fragrance, and jewelry), not to dance, sing, play or listen to music and not to sleep on fine or raised (high) beds, but on a mat on the ground, and finally not to eat out of regulation (appropriate) hours (after noon); eat only from 11 AM to 1 PM.

(B-3) Precepts for the Nova

Speaking on the meaning, a renunciant is one who has left home and become a monk or a nun. There are six kinds of monks or nuns: First, one who physically leaves home, but spirit remains with wife and family. Second, one who physically leaves home, but in spirit remains with wife and family. Third, one who leave home in spirit and conduct. Fourth, one who physically remains at home, but whose spirit goes forth. Fifth, one who leave home body and spirit. Sixth, one who, body and mind, refuses to leave home. Speaking on appearance, renunciation means to leave home and family or to get out of a family and to become a monk or a nun. To leave one's home and family in order to join the Buddhist community to become a monk or nun, in contrast with "staying home" which means the life of a layman. Ordination in Buddhism is initiation into the Buddhist Order (Sangha) in the presence of witnesses and self-dedication to monastic life. There are many different kinds of rules for the newly renunciant. ***The Six Prohibition Rules for a Female Devotee (Sikhaimana (p))***: Siksamana (skt) or a female novice, an observer of the six commandments. This is one of the five classess of ascetics, a female neophyte who is from 18 to 20 years of age, studying six rules to prepare to receive a full ordination: 1) Not to commit adultery or not indelicacy of contact with a male. 2) Not stealing or not purloining for cash. 3) Not killing or not killing animals. 4) Not lying or not telling untruthfulness. 5) Not having

food after midday meal (eating at unregulated hours). 5) Not having alcoholic liquor or not drinking wine or beer.

The Ten Commands for the Newly Ordained Male Novice: In Buddhism, Sramanera is a male observer of the minor commandments (các giới khinh). Sramanera is the lowest rank of a person cultivating the way. He must keep properly ten precepts. Also called a Zealous Man or a man who zealously listens to the instructions of great monks. Usually, a sramanera is a new member or novice of the monastic community who has taken the novice vows. In most traditions, the minimum age for this ordination is seven, however, some monasteries accept younger children to be ordained as long as the person obtains the permission from his parents. The novice ordination includes a formal ceremony of recitation of the refuge prayer and agreement to uphold the “Sramanera precepts” (ten precepts). The novice’s head is shaved, and he is given three robes and a begging-bowl, following which the novice is assigned an “acarya” (teacher) and a “upadhyaya” (preceptor). There are three grades of Sramanera: Sramanera with the ages from 7 to 13; Sramanera with the ages from 14 to 19; and Sramanera with the ages from 20 years or older. The novice can only receive the full ordination of a Bhiksu after he is twenty years of age. A novice receives the teaching from an accomplished instructor, who in turn has been trained by another master, and thus, in theory at least the chain extends to the Buddha himself. A novice though a beginner, but he may become an arhat, so not to treat him lightly. Sramanera is called a Zealous Man who zealously listen to the instructions of great monks. Sramanera is also called one who seek rest or one who seeks the peace of nirvana. 1) Not to kill living beings (abstinence from taking life). 2) Not to steal, or not to take what is not been given (abstinence from taking what is not given). 3) Abstinence from unchastity: Not to commit misconduct in sexual matters. 4) Not to lie: Abstinence from lying. 5) Not to drink liquor, beer or wine, abstinence from taking fermented liquor. 6) Not to eat food out of regulated hours, abstinence from taking food in unprescribed time, and not to use garlands or perfumes. 7) Not to sleep on high or broad beds. 8) Not to wear adornments and perfumes. 9) Not to take part in singing, dancing or playing musical instrument. 10) Not to possess or store gold, silver or ivory (Not to kill; not to steal; not to commit adultery; not to lie (speak

falsely); not to drink wine; not to use adornment of flower, nor perfume; not to perform as an actor, singing, nor playing musical instrument; not to sit on elevated, broad and large beds; not to eat except in regular hours; and not to possess money, gold, silver, or precious things). Besides, according to the Vinaya Pitaka, a female novice who is from 18 to 20 years of age, observer of the six commandments (adultery, stealing, killing, lying, alcoholic liquor, eating at unregulated hours) to prepare to receive a full ordination. It should be remembered that the first six rules above were also applied to a probationer of early Buddhism.

Ten Rules Which Produce No Regrets: 1) Not killing; 2) Not stealing; 3) Not committing sexual misconduct; 4) Not lying; 5) Not telling a fellow-Buddhist's sins; 6) Not drinking wine; 7) Not praising oneself and discrediting others; 8) Not being mean to other beings; 9) Not being angry; and 10) Not defaming the Triratna.

Besides, in the daily life of work and religious practice, the newly renunciant as well as monks and nuns should conduct themselves properly and with Buddhist discipline. Each day begins early for monks and nuns. Long before the sun rises, they attend morning ceremonies and recite parts of the Buddha's teachings. Later on, there may be a period of meditation and study. Members of the Sangha have many responsibilities to fulfill, despite leading simple lives. They work very hard and are happy with the work they do. In addition, during the day, they go about the villages to teach the Dharma. When they go back to the monastery to write Buddhist books and to make Buddha images. They take care of the temple and garden. They prepare for ceremonies in the monastery. Besides, they give advice to the laity and help with community projects for the elderly and the sick. There are more chanting and meditation sessions, and talks on the teachings of the Buddha in the evenings. Monks and nuns may give talks. They choose not to take evening meals, but use the time instead for study or meditation. For every body, especially the novices, at first it was hard to get up early and sit in meditation, but they will gradually adapt themselves to the daily activities in a monastery.

(B-4) Northern School Bhiksu's

Complete Precepts

There are two hundred fifty moral precepts for Northern School monks. A Bhiksu is he who has fully realized the true nature of life. He understands that the life of a lay person is full of obstacles as a path of dust. In the contrary, the life of a Bhiksu is just like the open sky with full of fresh air. Therefore, he decides to abandon the domestic life and takes up the life of a wandering Bhiksu. When he joins the Order, beside getting his head shaved and putting on the yellow robe, he must learn the theoretical and practicing teachings of the Buddha and keeps all Bhiksu rules and regulations set forth by the Buddha. Children are usually not allowed to take the Bhiksu precepts unless they are out-of-the ordinary in their abilities. As the case of Great Master Sao-Kang. His intelligence and wisdom were extraordinary. After becoming a Bhiksu at the age of 15, He had completely understood and deeply penetrated the hidden meanings of the five collections of Sutras. Buddhists who wish to become a monk or nun must live in a temple for several years to learn Buddhist rituals and practices. Thereafter, if the headmaster deems them being fit and ready to become a monk or nun, only then do they take the Bhiksu or Bhiksuni precepts. These rules include:

(I) Parajika (Parajikas (skt):

According to both Mahayana and Theravada, there are four grave prohibitions or sins. The word Parajika is derived from the Sanskrit root Para and Jika which means that makes DEFEAT. Four parajikas mean four causes of falling from grace and final excommunication or expulsion of a monk or nun. According to the monastic point of view, these offences are regarded as very serious in nature. Any monks, regardless of their ranks and years in the Order, violate any one of these offences, are subject to expulsion from the Order. Once they are expelled, they are never allowed to join the Order again. They are defeated forever. Therefore, the Buddha cautioned all monks and nuns not to indulge in any one of them:

- 1) Killing: Killing (Vadha-himsa (skt)) is one of the ten kinds of evil karma, to kill living beings, to take life, kill the living, or any conscious being.
- 2) Stealing: Stealing (Adattadana (skt)) means taking possession of anything that has not been given by its owner or stealing, is also wrong, even legally speaking. Stealing is one of the four grave prohibitions or sins in

Buddhism. Stealing is taking what isn't given to us. It includes not paying taxes or fees that are due, borrowing things and not returning them, and taking things from our workplace for our own personal use.

- 3) Adultery (Abrahmacarya (skt)): Sexual immorality or bestiality is the third commandment of the five basic commandments for lay people, and the third precept of the ten major precepts for monks and nuns in the Brahma Net Sutra. Monks or nuns who commit this offence will be expelled from the Order forever.
- 4) False speaking: According to The Buddha and His Teachings, there are four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of lying (Uttaramanusyadharma-pralapa (skt)): an untruth, deceiving intention, utterance, and actual deception. According to The Buddha and His Teachings, written by Most Venerable Narada, there are some inevitable consequences of lying as follow: being subject to abusive speech, vilification, untrustworthiness, and stinking mouth.

(II) Sanghadisesa (skt):

Thirteen offences which lead to a temporary expulsion of a monk out of the Order. According to the Vinaya Pitaka (Book of Discipline), Part I, translated into English by I.B. Horner, thirteen offences which entail monk temporary expulsion from the Order. Indulging in any one of these offences, monks are required to leave the Order for a period of time fixed by the assembly of monks. After that time, offenders present themselves before the Order to beg for a reinstatement. Without the permission from the assembly of monks, offenders cannot return to the Order.

- 1) Not to intentionally discharge of semen, except during a dream.
- 2) Not to come into physical contact with a woman, such as holding her hand, or holding a braid of her hair, or rubbing against any one of her limbs.
- 3) Not to offend a woman with lewd words concerned with unchastity.
- 4) Not to speak in praise of ministering to sensure pleasure for self in the present of women, saying: "Ladies, this is the highest kind of ministration, that a woman should minister to one like me, virtuous, of good conduct, leading the Brahma-life" with the meaning to connect with sexual intercourse.
- 5) Not to act as a go-between for a woman with a man in mind or for a man with a woman in mind, whether as a wife or as a mistress, or acting as an agent for arranging the meeting of two persons for sexual indulgence.
- 6) Not to build a hut in an unlawful manner (not in accordance with measure of twelve spans in length and seven spans in width, and not bring the assembly of monks for marking out a site, for a monk should beg himself

for a site which involves destruction and which has not an open space round it).

- 7) Fail to bring for marking out a site, even though there is a benefactor who is willing to build and donate a vihara.
- 8) Not to accuse falsely (unjustly or wrongly) a monk with an unfounded charge.
- 9) Not to do things to destroy the harmony of the Order.
- 10) Not to suspect a monk with a groundless charge.
- 11) Not to side with someone who creates schism to destroy the harmony of the Order.
- 12) If a monk who commits evil conduct or misbehavior, and his evil conduct is seen or heard, that monk should be admonished up to three times by the assembly of monks to allow him to give up his course. If after being admonished, he gives up that course, it is good. If he does not give up, it is an offence entailing a formal meting of the Order.
- 13) Not to lead a solemnly brahma life, to be a bad example for others to imitate.

(III)Aniyata (skt):

Two Aniyata offences which are connected with activities of sex. This portion speaks of two cases which require circumstantial evidence to ascertain the offence. The meaning of the term “Aniyata” is “Indefinite.” Two offences of indefinite are connected with activities of sex. It depends on circumstances and the seriousness of the offence, offenders can be temporarily expelled from the Order.

- 1) Not to sit down together with a woman in a lonely place which can lead to activities of sex. If the monk confesses, the Order will base on his confession for punishment. If he fails to confess or his confession does not match with the woman lay follower’s confession, the Order will base on what the woman lay follower’s confession to determine his punishment.
- 2) Not to sit down together with a woman in a private, covered place in such a way which may develop into a situation of sexual intercourse. Punishment is same as in (1).

(IV)Nissaggiya-pacittiya (skt):

Thirty offences that can be committed by a monk who takes certain articles of use which were not permissible, require explanation and repentance in front of the Order. The offending monks could be absolved if they parted with the article in question and confessed their guilt. The term Nissaggiya-pacittiya has two components: the word Nissaggiya means giving

up; and the word Pacittiya means reconciliation or expiation. A man by his true nature is subject to lapses; therefore, even after joining the monastic life, the monk sometimes, makes transgression of the monastic rules, i.e., accepting things of daily use in excess of the number allowed by the Buddha is not proper for monks and nuns. Thus, the Buddha set forth rules that help making monks and nuns free from transgressions. These are thirty offences which require explanation and punishment for the offenders is six-day room retention.

- 1) Not to wear or keep an extra robe for more than ten days.
- 2) Not to leave robes and sleeping material in another place, even for one night (monks should not be away, separated from the three robes, even for one night).
- 3) When robes worn out, and the robe-material is accrued to the monk, even not at the right time, it may be accepted by that monk if he so wish. Having accepted it, it should be made up quickly. But if it is not sufficient for him, that robe-material may be laid aside by that monk for a month at most.
- 4) A monk should not get a soiled robe washed or dyed or beaten by a nun who is not in relation. a) However, if she washes it unasked, or if he makes her wash an unused robe, there is no offence. b) If it is washed by a female probationer or by a female novice, there is no offence.
- 5) Not to accept a robe from the hand of a nun who is not in relation, except in exchange.
- 6) A monk should not ask a man or woman householder for a robe, except at the right time (robe is stolen or destroyed).
- 7) Not to accept more than an inner and upper robes (if a monk is offered robe-material for many robes, then at most he should accept enough for an inner and an upper robe. If he accepts more than that there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).
- 8) When there is a householder plans to offer robe-material, or robe-fund, a monk should not design the robe as he wishes.
- 9) When there are two or more householders plan to offer robe-material or robe-fund, a monk should not design the robe as he wishes.
- 10) Not to obtain robe-fund and urge the Order to make the robe immediately.
- 11) A monk should not cause a rug to be made mixed with silk.
- 12) A monk should not cause a rug to be made of pure black sheep's wool.
- 13) A monk should not cause a new rug to made of pure white (if a monk should cause a new rug to be made not taking two portions of pure black sheep's wool, the third of white, the fourth of reddish-brown colors, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).

- 14) A monk should not get rid of a rug if it's less than six years old (a new rug which a monk has made should last for six years. If, within six years, whether he has got rid of or has not got rid of that former rug, but he has a new rug made, except on the agreement of the Order, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).
- 15) Not to take the new rug to wrap around the old rug in order to disfigure it.
- 16) Sheep's wool may accrue to a monk as he is going along a road. It may be accepted by a monk, if he likes; but having accepted it, it should be conveyed in his own hands for three yojanas at the utmost. If he carries further than that, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.
- 17) A monk should not have sheep's wool washed or dyed or combed by a nun who is not in relation.
- 18) A monk should not take gold and silver, nor should he ask another person to take for him.
- 19) A monk should not engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used.
- 20) A monk should not engage in any kinds of bartering.
- 21) A monk should not keep an extra bowl for more than ten days.
- 22) A monk should not get another new bowl in exchange for the old bowl, even though the old bowl is very old, but is still usable (If a monk could get another new bowl in exchange for a bowl mended in less than five places, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. That bowl is to be forfeited by that monk to the company of monks, and whatever the last bowl belonging to that company of monks, that should be given to this monk with the words: "Monk, this is a bowl for you; it should be kept until it breaks." That is the proper course in this case).
- 23) A monk should not store medicine, sugar, fresh butter, oil, honey, etc. for over seven days, except when he is ill.
- 24) A monk should not look for robe-material as a cloth for the rain a month before the monsoon, and put it on fifteen days before the monsoon starts.
- 25) A monk should not give a robe to another monk and then take it back because he is angry or displeased of that monk.
- 26) A monk should not ask a man or a woman householder who is not a relation to weave his robe (saying this robe-material is being especially woven for me, please make it long and wide, and make it evenly woven, well woven and well scraped, etc).
- 27) A monk should not ask for yarn, or should not have robe-material woven by weavers; nor should he put forward a consideration with regard to measurements, i.e., make it long and wide and rough, and make it evenly woven and well woven and well scraped and well combed.

- 28) A monk should not obtain the robe before the robe-season, lay it aside, and ask again during the robe-season.
- 29) Having spent the rains up to the full moon of the rains, in case a monk who is staying in such lodgings as those jungle lodgings which are held to be dangerous and frightening, so desires, he may lay aside one of his three robes inside the a house; and should there be any reason for that monk to be away, separated from that robe, that monk can be away and separated from that robe for at most six nights. Should he be away, separated from that robe for longer than that, except on the agreement of the Order, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.
- 30) A monk should not take any things that belong to the Order.

(V) *Pacittiya (skt):*

Pacittiya offences relate to careless acts leading to insecticide, to lack of respect for the Buddhist teachings and disciplinary code and to non-compliance with the directions in the Vinaya, as well as indiscrete acts in the use of beds, seats, robes, etc. while dwelling in a monastery. According to The Book of Discipline, Part II and III, translated into English by I.B. Horner, ninety-two Pacittiya offences which require confession and repentance. If a monk doing any of them, makes a confession of it before the Sangha with clear heart, he will become free from the offence. If he doesn't, the offence itself will not only obstruct his development of wholesome acts, but it will also cause his rebirth in lower realms, i.e., hell, hungry ghosts, or animal: a) Ninety offences which lead to expiation, according to Mahayana Buddhism and Sangha Bhiksu Buddhism. b) Ninety-two offences which lead to expiation according to Theravada Buddhism.

- 1) A monk should not tell a conscious lie (telling a conscious lie means the words, the utterance, the speech, the talk, the language, the intimation, the un-ariyan statement of one intent upon deceiving with words, saying: "I have not seen what I have seen, heard what I have not heard, sensed what I have not sensed, etc).
- 2) A monk should not should not speak insulting speech to discourage people.
- 3) A monk should not speak slandering speech to cause people to break their harmony.
- 4) A monk should not lie down in a sleeping place with a woman.
- 5) A monk should not lie down in a sleeping place with one who is not ordained for more than two nights.

- 6) A monk should not make one who is not ordained to recite sutras together line by line. However, if a monk recite in studying together with lay good advisors, there is no offence of Pacittiya.
- 7) A monk should not speak of another monk's very bad offence to one who is not ordained.
- 8) A monk should not speak of a condition of furthermen to one who is not ordained.
- 9) A monk should not teach dharma to women in more than five or six sentences, except a learned man is present.
- 10) A monk should not dig the ground or have it dug.
- 11) A monk should not destroy vegetable growth.
- 12) A monk should not argue to disturb other people.
- 13) A monk should not defame or bad mouth in criticizing the headmaster of the Order.
- 14) A monk should not spread in the open air a chair or a mattress or a stool belonging to the Order, setting forth, but does not remove or have it removed, to cause it destroyed.
- 15) A monk should not spread a sleeping place or having it spread in a dwelling belonging to the Order, setting forth, but should neither remove it nor have it removed.
- 16) A monk should not lie down in a sleeping place in a dwelling belonging to the Order, knowing that he is encroaching upon the space intended for a monk arrived first.
- 17) Out of angry and displeased, a monk should not throw out another monk or cause him to be thrown out from a dwelling place belonging to the Order.
- 18) A monk who dwells in a lofty cell with an upper part, in a dwelling place belonging to the Order. He should not cause any boards or removable feet of his couch to fall down to hurt other people.
- 19) A monk should not sprinkle grass or clay, or should not have them sprinkled if he knows that the water contains life.
- 20) A monk should not cover his dwelling place with heavy material that collapse to harm other people.
- 21) A monk should not exhort nuns if there is no order from the Sangha.
- 22) Even though agreed upon by the Order, a monk should not exhort nuns after sunset.
- 23) A monk should not joke that the elder monks are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain.
- 24) A monk should not give robe-material to a nun who is not a relation, except in exchange.

- 25) A monk should not sew or cause a robe to be sewn for a nun who is not a relation.
- 26) A monk should not sit down in a private place together with a nun.
- 27) A monk should not have arranged together with a nun to go along the same road, even among villages, except at the right time (in this case, the right time must be agreed upon by the Order that the road is dangerous and frightening that one must go with a weapon).
- 28) A monk should not have arranged together with a nun to embark in a boat and to go either upstream or downstream, except for crossing over to the other bank on a ferry.
- 29) A monk should not eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through the intervention of a nun.
- 30) A monk should not have arranged together with a woman to go along the same road (see the last part of number 27)
- 31) A monk should not eat more than one meal at a public house, nor should he eat two meals in two days at the same house.
- 32) A monk should not eat more than one meal and residing at various locations in one day, except when he is ill.
- 33) A monk should not be absent from the group meal, except at a right time, i.e., time of illness, time of giving robes, time of being embarked in a boat, etc.
- 34) A monk should not eat solid food or soft food that is not left over when he feels full (satisfied); however, when he is still hungry, he can ask for more food.
- 35) When receiving a lot of alms-food, a monk must share them with other monks in the Order. If not, there is an offence of Pacittiya (If a monk, going up to a family, and was invited to take cakes or barley-gruel, two or three bowlfuls may be accepted by the monk. Should he accept more than that, there is an offence of Pacittiya. Should he accept two or three bowlfuls, take these cakes back from there and would not share with other monks in the monastery, there is an offence of Pacittiya).
- 36) A monk should not ask another monk who has eaten, who is satisfied, to take solid or soft food that is not left over.
- 37) A monk should not eat or partake solid or soft food at the wrong time (wrong time means afternoon has passed until sunrise).
- 38) A monk should not convey to his mouth nutriment not given.
- 39) A monk should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food that was stored so that he doesn't have to go begging for alms-food the next day.
- 40) A monk who is not ill should not ask for sumptuous foods (sumptuous foods include ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, fish, meat, milk, curds, etc.).
- 41) A monk should not cause other monks to be tardy to the meal.

- 42) A monk should not give with his own hand solid food or soft food to a naked ascetic, or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer.
- 43) After eating, a monk should not sit down in a house where there is a beautiful woman.
- 44) After receiving alms-food, a monk should not sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman.
- 45) A monk should not sit down together with a woman in a private place (that can lead to the development of sexual intercourse).
- 46) A monk should not find fault to dismiss another monk from going into a village for alms-food to cause that monk to starve.
- 47) A monk should not store so much medicines.
- 48) A monk should not go to see an army fighting.
- 49) If there is some reason for a monk to go to visit the army, that monk should not stay with the army for two nights.
- 50) If a monk, staying with the army for less than two nights, he should not go see a sham-fight or to the troops in array or to the massing of the army or to see a review of the army.
- 51) A monk should not drink fermented liquor and spirits, nor should he smoke opium, nor should he chew betel.
- 52) A monk should not playing in the water.
- 53) A monk should not hit other people with hands or feet.
- 54) A monk should not disrespect any blame or warning from the elder monks.
- 55) A monk should not frighten a nother monk.
- 56) A monk should not bathe at intervals of less than half a month, except at a right time, i.e., the time of illness, the body is dirty, or too hot during the summer time.
- 57) If he is not ill, a monk should not warm himself, kindle or cause a fire to be kindled.
- 58) A monk should not hide or cause to hide another monk's bowl or robe or cloth, even in fun.
- 59) A monk should not get back things that he already offered to another monk.
- 60) A monk should not wear a robe (white) that has no disfigurement of black, dark green or muddy colors.
- 61) A monk should not intentionally deprive a living thing of life.
- 62) A monk should not knowingly make use of water that contains living things.
- 63) A monk should not cause sadness to other people. On the contrary, a monk should do his best to comfort people when they are sad.

- 64) A monk should not knowingly conceal another monk's very bad offence (an offence that involves defeat and the thirteen entailing a formal meeting of the Order).
- 65) A monk should not knowingly confer the Upasampada Ordination on an individual under twenty years of age.
- 66) A monk should not knowingly open up for a further formal act a legal question already settled according to rule.
- 67) A monk should not have arranged together with a caravan set on theft, should not knowingly go along the same high road, even among villages.
- 68) A monk should not speak lewd words to obstruct the cultivated path.
- 69) A monk should not knowingly allow the novice who speaks incorrectly about the Buddha-Dharma and misinterprets the Buddha, should not encourage that novice, should not support, should not eat with that novice, nor should he lie down in a sleeping place with that novice.
- 70) A monk should not knowingly eat together with or be in communion with or lie down in a sleeping place with a monk who speaks incorrectly about the Buddha-Dharma and misinterprets the Buddha.
- 71) A monk, being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, should speak thus: "Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of training until I have inquired about it of another experienced monk who is expert in discipline." There is an offence of Pacittiya. He should say: "Monks, it should be learnt, it should be inquired into, it should be investigated by a monk who is training."
- 72) When the Patimokkha is being recited, a monk should not be disparaging the rule of training by saying thus: "On what account are the lesser and minor rules of training recited? They only tend to remorse, to vexation, to perplexity."
- 73) A monk should not avoid being blamed by saying that he does not understand the Patimokkha (Whatever monk, while the Patimokkha is being recited every half-month, should speak thus: "Only now I do understand that this rule is, as is said, handed down in a clause, contained in a clause, and comes up for recitation every half-month; if other monks should know concerning this monk has sat down two or three times before, not to say oftener, while Patimokkha was being recited, there is not only no freedom for that monk on account of his ignorance, but he ought to be dealt with according to the rule for the offence into which he has fallen there, and further confusion should be put on him, saying: 'Your reverence, this is bad for you, this is badly gotten by you, that you, while the Patimokkha is being recited, do not attend applying yourself properly.'")
- 74) A monk should not say that the Order's decision is not fair.

- 75) A monk should not break or interrupt the meeting, not giving the consent by rising up or departing from his seat when the Order is engaged in decisive talk.
- 76) A monk should not first consent for legitimate acts, and afterwards engage in criticism.
- 77) A monk should not stand overhearing other monks when they are quarrelling, disputing.
- 78) When angry and displeased, a monk should not give another monk a blow.
- 79) When angry and displeased, a monk should not raise the palm of the hand against another monk.
- 80) A monk should not defame another monk with an unfounded
- 81) A monk should not suddenly enter the threshold of the king palace without waiting to be welcome.
- 82) A monk should not pick up or cause another to pick up treasure or what is considered to be treasure, except when he knows the owner and picks to set aside for the owner to take it.
- 83) A monk should not enter a village at the wrong time, unless the Order instructs him to go for some kind of urgent thing to be done.
- 84) A monk should not sit on a couch or chair with the legs higher than eight finger-breadths.
- 85) A monk should not have a couch or a chair made covered with good cotton.
- 86) A monk should not have a needle-case made of bone or ivory or horn.
- 87) A monk should not sit or lie on a large piece of sleeping bag (oversize).
- 88) A monk should not use oversize itch-cloth (four spans in length and two spans in breadth).
- 89) A monk should not use oversize towel or cloth for the rains.
- 90) A monk should not have a robe made the measure of the Buddha's robe, or more (the measures for the Buddha's robe are nine spans in length and six spans in breadth).

(VI) *Patidesaniya-dhamma (p)*:

Four offences of disobeying the rules of monastic life outlined in the Vinaya pitaka. The *Patidesaniya* speaks of only four offences relating to a monk's taking food which has not been offered to him. The punishment for such transgression is the confession and repentance of the offence before the Order. According to the Vinaya Pitaka, the word *Patidesaniya* is a Sanskrit word means a confession of an offence or some sort of transgression of monastic rules which ought to be confessed before the Order, and the punishments for these offences are decided by the Order.

- 1) A monk should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food, having accepted it with his own hand from the hand of a nun who is not a relation.
- 2) When a householder invites a monk to come to the family. If a nun comes to be standing as though giving directions, saying: “Here give curry, give cooked rice here,” that nun should be rebuked by the monk, saying: “Stand aside, sister, while the monks eat.” If not, the monk violates the Patidesaniya.
- 3) A monk should not keep begging for foods at the same house to cause them to be poor because of their continuous offerings.
- 4) A monk should not reside in those jungle lodgings that are dangerous and frightening for donators who travel to offer foods and drinks.

(VII) *Sekhiya-dhamma (skt):*

Including either seventy-five or one hundred offences connected with the Bhiksu's daily activities, for instance, how he must enter a village or a town, take food inoffensively, enter a sick room, etc. These are not treated as offences and no punishment is therefore prescribed for them: a) There are seventy-five Sekhiya rules in Theravada Buddhism. b) There are one hundred Sekhiya rules in Mahayana Buddhism and Sangha Bhiksu Buddhism.

- 1) A monk should wear the inner robe all round for covering the circle of the navel and the circles of the knees. Whoever out of disrespect dresses with an inner robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 2) A monk should wear the upper robe even all round (whoever out of disrespect puts on an upper robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing).
- 3) A monk should not go into lay people's houses with robes hitched up. He should go well covered in lay people's houses (inhabited areas with).
- 4) A monk should not sit down in lay people's houses with robes hitched up. He should sit well covered in lay people's houses.
- 5) A monk should not go among the houses with robes lifted up to the shoulders, either on one side or on both (if out of disrespect having lifted up the robe on one side or on both, there is an offence of wrong-doing).
- 6) A monk should not sit down amidst the houses with robes lifted up to the shoulders, either on one side or on both.
- 7) A monk should not go into the houses of lay people with head covered, either with a towel, a hat, or a cap.
- 8) A monk should not sit down amidst the houses of lay people with head covered, either with a towel, a hat, or a cap.

- 9) A monk should not enter into any lay people's houses, going and running at the same time.
- 10) After going and running at the same time, a monk should not sit down in lay people's houses.
- 11) A monk should not enter any lay people's houses with the arms placed on the hips, or with the hands on both sides and the elbows turned outwards (akimbo).
- 12) A monk should not sit down in lay people's houses with the arms akimbo (arms place on the hips, or hands on both sides and elbows turned outwards).
- 13) A monk should not go amidst the houses swaying the body. He should hold the body straight.
- 14) A monk should not sit down amidst the houses sway the body. He should hold the body straight.
- 15) A monk should not go fidgeting amidst the houses (making play with hand or foot).
- 16) A monk should not sit fidgeting in inhabited areas (making play with hand or foot in the houses).
- 17) A monk should not, out of disrespect, having uncovered the body, go among the houses.
- 18) A monk should not, out of disrespect, sit down among the house without proper clothes.
- 19) A monk should not go among the houses with eyes glanced around. He should go amidst the houses with eyes cast down looking only a plough's distance ahead.
- 20) A monk should not sit down in the houses with eyes glanced around. He should sit down amidst the houses with eyes cast down looking only a plough's distance ahead.
- 21) A monk should not crouch down on the heels (sit arms akimbo) in the lay people's houses.
- 22) A monk should always keep calm when entering the houses of lay people.
- 23) A monk should sit calmly in the houses of lay people.
- 24) A monk should not go into the houses of lay people with loud laughter.
- 25) A monk should not sit down in the houses of lay people with loud laughter.
- 26) A monk should accept almsfood attentively.
- 27) When accepting rice (from almsfood), a monk should accept in proportion not to overflowing from the capacity of the bowl.
- 28) When accepting almsfood with soup, a monk should accept in proportion not to overflowing the capacity of the bowl.
- 29) A monk should mix the rice with soup before eating.

- 30) A monk should the alms-food working down from the top without making exceptions (choosing or selecting foods).
- 31) A monk should not choose alms-food to eat, i.e., choosing the alms-food in this side, that side, or in the middle of the bowl.
- 32) A monk should not ask for sauce and/or rice for his own appetizing unless he is sick.
- 33) A monk should not hide (cover up) sauce and curries with rice out of desire to get more.
- 34) A monk should not look enviously at another's bowl.
- 35) After accepting enough alms-food, a monk should cover the bowl; then he should sit straight up, eat and contemplate at the same time.
- 36) When eating alms-food, a monk should not make up too large a mouthful.
- 37) A monk should not open the mouth till the mouthful is brought to it.
- 38) A monk should not talk with the mouth full (talk with a mouthful in the mouth).
- 39) When eating alms-food, a monk should not make up a round mouthful (eat tossing up balls of food).
- 40) A monk should not eat scattering rice or lumps of boiled rice about.
- 41) A monk should not eat stuffing out the cheeks like a monkey (stuffed the cheek on one side or on both).
- 42) A monk should not eat making loud sound or noise.
- 43) A monk should not suck the alms-food loudly.
- 44) A monk should not eat licking or wiping, either the hand or the bowl.
- 45) A monk should not eat shaking the hand about.
- 46) A monk should not pick up dropping rice to put in his mouth.
- 47) A monk should not accept a drinking-water pot or cup with the hands soiled with food.
- 48) A monk should not throw out amidst the houses, rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice (bowl washing water which has rice grains in it).
- 49) A monk should not go to stool, urinate, blow his nose, or spit saliva on vegetables.
- 50) A monk should not go to stool, urinate, blow his nose, or spit saliva in water.
- 51) A monk should not urinate when standing.
- 52) A monk should not reside and sleep at the Buddha altar.
- 53) A monk should not store anything at the Buddha altar, except in case of robbing.
- 54) A monk should not wear sandals to enter the place of Buddha altar.
- 55) A monk should not carry his sandals around the Buddha altar.
- 56) A monk should not wear sandals when going around the Buddha altar.
- 57) A monk should not wear shoes to enter the place of Buddha altar.

- 58) A monk should not carry his shoes around the Buddha altar.
- 59) A monk should not sit eating and leave left-over things at the Buddha altar.
- 60) A monk should not allow people to carry a corpse around the Buddha altar.
- 61) A monk should not bury a dead body at the Buddha altar.
- 62) A monk should not allow people to cremate a corpse at the Buddha altar.
- 63) A monk should not allow people to cremate a corpse near the Buddha altar because it can emit the burnt smell at the Buddha altar.
- 64) A monk should not allow people to cremate corpses at the Buddha altar.
- 65) A monk should not allow people to carry clothes of the dead around the Buddha altar.
- 66) A monk should not or should not allow people to go to stool or to urinate at the Buddha altar.
- 67) A monk should not carry the image or statue of the Buddha into the rest room.
- 68) A monk should not allow people to go to stool or to urinate near the Buddha altar where bad smell can fly over the Buddha altar.
- 69) A monk should not or should not allow people to go to stool or to urinate at the side of the Buddha altar.
- 70) A monk should not allow people to pick their teeth or rinse their mouth at the Buddha altar.
- 71) A monk should not come in front of the Buddha altar to pick his
- 72) A monk should not or should not allow people to stand around the Buddha altar to pick their teeth or to rinse their mouth.
- 73) A monk should not blow his nose or spit saliva at the Buddha altar.
- 74) A monk should not stand in front of the Buddha altar to blow his nose or to spit saliva.
- 75) A monk should not stand at any sides of the Buddha altar to blow his nose or to spit saliva.
- 76) A monk should not sit pointing his legs at the Buddha altar.
- 77) A monk should not reside or sleep at a place which is higher than the level of the Buddha altar.
- 78) A monk should not promenade or to go for a walk hand in hand with anyone.
- 79) A monk should not climb high trees (higher than head level), except emergencies.
- 80) A monk should not put his bowl in a bag, tie it to one end of his staff and carry along the road.
- 81) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with shirt hitched up.

- 82) A monk should not teach the law to someone who hangs his shirt around the neck.
- 83) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone wearing a head
- 84) A monk should not teach the law to someone with head covered (with a turban on his head) and who is not sick.
- 85) A monk should not teach the law to someone with arms akimbo (arms placed on the hips, or hands on both sides and elbows turned outwards).
- 86) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone mounted on clogs (wooden shoes).
- 87) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone wearing sandals who is not sick.
- 88) A monk should not teach the law to someone in a vehicle who is not sick.
- 89) A monk should not teach Dharma, standing, to someone who is sitting down, and who is not sick.
- 90) A monk should not teach Dharma, sitting, to someone on a bed and who is not ill.
- 91) A monk should not sit down on the ground to teach Dharma to someone sitting on a seat and who is not ill.
- 92) A monk should not teach Dharma, having sat down on a low seat, to someone sitting on a high seat and who is not ill.
- 93) A monk should not teach Dharma, going or walking behind, to someone going or walking in front and who is not ill.
- 94) A monk should not teach the law, going in a low road, to someone going in a high road.
- 95) A monk should not teach Dharma, standing beside (at the side of) a path, to someone standing on a path (in the middle of the path).
- 96) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a stick in his hand and who is not sick.
- 97) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a sword (weapon) in his hand.
- 98) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a spear (lance) in his hand.
- 99) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a knife in his hand.
- 100) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with an umbrella in his hand who is not sick.

(VIII)Saptadhikarana-samatha (skt):

According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are seven rules given in the Vinaya for settling disputes among monks (disputes arise from arguments, misconduct, judgment and punishment,

correctness of a religious observance). Seven rules for the participation and settlement of disputed questions that have been raised:

- 1) Sammukha-vinaya (skt): Face to face evidence, or appeal to the law to place the two quarrelling monks face to face in order to clarify and solve the problem.
- 2) Smṛti-vinaya (skt): no witness or proof, no recollection. To make one admit that his memory had failed in regard to the point of dispute.
- 3) Amudha-vinaya (skt): Irresponsibility or mental derangement. To make a monk admit that he was not in his normal mind when the point of dispute arose.
- 4) Pratijnakaraka-vinaya (skt): Decision by majority vote or verdict.
- 5) Tatsvabhavaisiya-vinaya (skt): Voluntary confession or formality of confession.
- 6) Yadbhuyasikiya-vinaya (skt): Condemnation of unconfessed sin, make a statement and ask thrice for judgment.
- 7) Trnastaraka-vinaya (skt): Covering the mud with straw or covering over with grass. The avoidance of publicity to a dispute within the Sangha.

(B-5) Complete Precepts for Theravada Bhiksus

(I) Parajikas (skt):

The four grave prohibitions or sins. According to both Mahayana and Theravada, there are four grave prohibitions or sins. The word Parajika is derived from the Sanskrit root Para and Jika which means that makes DEFEAT. Four parajikas mean four causes of falling from grace and final excommunication or expulsion of a monk or nun. According to the monastic point of view, these offences are regarded as very serious in nature. Any monks, regardless of their ranks and years in the Order, violate any one of these offences, are subject to expulsion from the Order. Once they are expelled, they are never allowed to join the Order again. They are defeated forever. Therefore, the Buddha cautioned all monks and nuns not to indulge in any one of them:

- 1) Killing: Killing (Vadha-himsa (skt)) is one of the ten kinds of evil karma, to kill living beings, to take life, kill the living, or any conscious being.
- 2) Stealing: Stealing (Adattadana (skt)) means taking possession of anything that has not been given by its owner or stealing, is also wrong, even legally speaking. Stealing is one of the four grave prohibitions or sins in Buddhism. Stealing is taking what isn't given to us. It includes not paying

taxes or fees that are due, borrowing things and not returning them, and taking things from our workplace for our own personal use.

- 3) Adultery (Abrahmacarya (skt)): Sexual immorality or bestiality is the third commandment of the five basic commandments for lay people, and the third precept of the ten major precepts for monks and nuns in the Brahma Net Sutra. Monks or nuns who commit this offence will be expelled from the Order forever.
- 4) False speaking: According to The Buddha and His Teachings, there are four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of lying (Uttaramanusyadharma-pralapa (skt)): an untruth, deceiving intention, utterance, and actual deception. According to The Buddha and His Teachings, written by Most Venerable Narada, there are some inevitable consequences of lying as follow: being subject to abusive speech, vilification, untrustworthiness, and stinking mouth.

(II) Sanghadisesa (skt):

According to the Vinaya Pitaka (Book of Discipline), Part I, translated into English by I.B. Horner, thirteen offences which entail monk temporary expulsion from the Order. Indulging in any one of these offences, monks are required to leave the Order for a period of time fixed by the assembly of monks. After that time, offenders present themselves before the Order to beg for a reinstatement. Without the permission from the assembly of monks, offenders cannot return to the Order.

- 1) Not to intentionally discharge of semen, except during a dream.
- 2) Not to come into physical contact with a woman, such as holding her hand, or holding a braid of her hair, or rubbing against any one of her limbs.
- 3) Not to offend a woman with lewd words concerned with unchastity.
- 4) Not to speak in praise of ministering to sensure pleasure for self in the present of women, saying: "Ladies, this is the highest kind of ministration, that a woman should minister to one like me, virtuous, of good conduct, leading the Brahma-life" with the meaning to connect with sexual intercourse.
- 5) Not to act as a go-between for a woman with a man in mind or for a man with a woman in mind, whether as a wife or as a mistress, or acting as an agent for arranging the meeting of two persons for sexual indulgence.
- 6) Not to build a hut in an unlawful manner (not in accordance with measure of twelve spans in length and seven spans in width, and not bring the assembly of monks for marking out a site, for a monk should beg himself for a site which involves destruction and which has not an open space round it).

- 7) Fail to bring for marking out a site, even though there is a benefactor who is willing to build and donate a vihara.
- 8) Not to accuse falsely (unjustly or wrongly) a monk with an unfounded charge.
- 9) Not to do things to destroy the harmony of the Order.
- 10) Not to suspect a monk with a groundless charge.
- 11) Not to side with someone who creates schism to destroy the harmony of the Order.
- 12) If a monk who commits evil conduct or misbehavior, and his evil conduct is seen or heard, that monk should be admonished up to three times by the assembly of monks to allow him to give up his course. If after being admonished, he gives up that course, it is good. If he does not give up, it is an offence entailing a formal meting of the Order.
- 13) Not to lead a solemnly brahma life, to be a bad example for others to imitate.

(III)Aniyata (skt):

The meaning of the term “Aniyata” is “Indefinite.” Two offences of indefinite are connected with activities of sex. It depends on circumstances and the seriousness of the offence, offenders can be temporarily expelled from the Order.

- 1) Not to sit down together with a woman in a lonely place which can lead to activities of sex. If the monk confesses, the Order will base on his confession for punishment. If he fails to confess or his confession does not match with the woman lay follower’s confession, the Order will base on what the woman lay follower’s confession to determine his punishment.
- 2) Not to sit down together with a woman in a private, covered place in such a way which may develop into a situation of sexual intercourse. Punishment is same as in (1).

(IV) Nissaggiya-pacittiya (skt):

The Nissaggiya-pacittiya has two components: the word Nissaggiya means giving up; and the word Pacittiya means reconciliation or expiation. A man by his true nature is subject to lapses; therefore, even after joining the monastic life, the monk sometimes, makes transgression of the monastic rules, i.e., accepting things of daily use in excess of the number allowed by the Buddha is not proper for monks and nuns. Thus, the Buddha set forth rules that help making monks and nuns free from transgressions. These are thirty offences which require explanation and punishment for the offenders is six-day room retention.

- 1) Not to wear or keep an extra robe for more than ten days.
- 2) Not to leave robes and sleeping material in another place, even for one night (monks should not be away, separated from the three robes, even for one night).
- 3) When robes worn out, and the robe-material is accrued to the monk, even not at the right time, it may be accepted by that monk if he so wishes. Having accepted it, it should be made up quickly. But if it is not sufficient for him, that robe-material may be laid aside by that monk for a month at most.
- 4) A monk should not get a soiled robe washed or dyed or beaten by a nun who is not in relation. a) However, if she washes it unasked, or if he makes her wash an unused robe, there is no offence. b) If it is washed by a female probationer or by a female novice, there is no offence.
- 5) Not to accept a robe from the hand of a nun who is not in relation, except in exchange.
- 6) A monk should not ask a man or woman householder for a robe, except at the right time (robe is stolen or destroyed).
- 7) Not to accept more than an inner and upper robes (if a monk is offered robe-material for many robes, then at most he should accept enough for an inner and an upper robe. If he accepts more than that there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).
- 8) When there is a householder plans to offer robe-material, or robe-fund, a monk should not design the robe as he wishes.
- 9) When there are two or more householders plan to offer robe-material or robe-fund, a monk should not design the robe as he wishes.
- 10) Not to obtain robe-fund and urge the Order to make the robe immediately.
- 11) A monk should not cause a rug to be made mixed with silk.
- 12) A monk should not cause a rug to be made of pure black sheep's wool.
- 13) A monk should not cause a new rug to made of pure white (if a monk should cause a new rug to be made not taking two portions of pure black sheep's wool, the third of white, the fourth of reddish-brown colors, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).
- 14) A monk should not get rid of a rug if it's less than six years old (a new rug which a monk has made should last for six years. If, within six years, whether he has got rid of or has not got rid of that former rug, but he has a new rug made, except on the agreement of the Order, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).
- 15) Not to take the new rug to wrap around the old rug in order to disfigure it.
- 16) Sheep's wool may accrue to a monk as he is going along a road. It may be accepted by a monk, if he likes; but having accepted it, it should be

conveyed in his own hands for three yojanas at the utmost. If he carries further than that, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

- 17) A monk should not have sheep's wool washed or dyed or combed by a nun who is not in relation.
- 18) A monk should not take gold and silver, nor should he ask another person to take for him.
- 19) A monk should not engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used.
- 20) A monk should not engage in any kinds of bartering.
- 21) A monk should not keep an extra bowl for more than ten days.
- 22) A monk should not get another new bowl in exchange for the old bowl, even though the old bowl is very old, but is still usable (If a monk could get another new bowl in exchange for a bowl mended in less than five places, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. That bowl is to be forfeited by that monk to the company of monks, and whatever the last bowl belonging to that company of monks, that should be given to this monk with the words: "Monk, this is a bowl for you; it should be kept until it breaks." That is the proper course in this case).
- 23) A monk should not store medicine, sugar, fresh butter, oil, honey, etc. for over seven days, except when he is ill.
- 24) A monk should not look for robe-material as a cloth for the rain a month before the monsoon, and put it on fifteen days before the monsoon starts.
- 25) A monk should not give a robe to another monk and then take it back because he is angry or displeased of that monk.
- 26) A monk should not ask a man or a woman householder who is not a relation to weave his robe (saying this robe-material is being especially woven for me, please make it long and wide, and make it evenly woven, well woven and well scraped, etc).
- 27) A monk should not ask for yarn, or should not have robe-material woven by weavers; nor should he put forward a consideration with regard to measurements, i.e., make it long and wide and rough, and make it evenly woven and well woven and well scraped and well combed.
- 28) A monk should not obtain the robe before the robe-season, lay it aside, and ask again during the robe-season.
- 29) Having spent the rains up to the full moon of the rains, in case a monk who is staying in such lodgings as those jungle lodgings which are held to be dangerous and frightening, so desires, he may lay aside one of his three robes inside the a house; and should there be any reason for that monk to be away, separated from that robe, that monk can be away and separated from that robe for at most six nights. Should he be away,

separated from that robe for longer than that, except on the agreement of the Order, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

30) A monk should not take any things that belong to the Order.

(V) *Pacittiya (skt):*

According to The Book of Discipline, Part II and III, translated into English by I.B. Horner, ninety-two *Pacittiya* offences which require confession and repentance. If a monk doing any of them, makes a confession of it before the Sangha with clear heart, he will become free from the offence. If he doesn't, the offence itself will not only obstruct his development of wholesome acts, but it will also cause his rebirth in lower realms, i.e., hell, hungry ghosts, or animal.

- 1) A monk should not tell a conscious lie (telling a conscious lie means the words, the utterance, the speech, the talk, the language, the intimation, the un-ariyan statement of one intent upon deceiving with words, saying: "I have not seen what I have seen, heard what I have not heard, sensed what I have not sensed, etc).
- 2) A monk should not should not speak insulting speech to discourage people.
- 3) A monk should not speak slandering speech to cause people to break their harmony.
- 4) A monk should not make one who is not ordained to speak dharma line by line. However, if a monk studies together with lay good advisors, there is no offence of *Pacittiya*.
- 5) A monk should not lie down in a sleeping place with one who is not ordained for more than two nights.
- 6) A monk should not lie down in a sleeping place with a woman.
- 7) A monk should not teach dharma to women in more than five or six sentences, except a learned man is present.
- 8) A monk should not speak of a condition of furthermen to one who is not ordained.
- 9) A monk should not speak of another monk's very bad offence to one who is not ordained.
- 10) A monk should not dig the ground or have it dug.
- 11) A monk should not destroy vegetable growth.
- 12) A monk should not argue to disturb other people.
- 13) A monk should not defame or look down or bad mouth in criticizing the headmaster of the Order.

- 14) A monk should not spread in the open air a chair or a mattress or a stool belonging to the Order, setting forth, but does not remove or have it removed, to cause it destroyed.
- 15) A monk should not spread a sleeping place or having it spread in a dwelling belonging to the Order, setting forth, but should neither remove it nor have it removed
- 16) A monk should not lie down in a sleeping place in a dwelling belonging to the Order, knowing that he is encroaching upon the space intended for a monk arrived first.
- 17) Out of angry and displeased, a monk should not throw out another monk or cause him to be thrown out from a dwelling place belonging to the Order.
- 18) A monk who dwells in a lofty cell with an upper part, in a dwelling place belonging to the Order. He should not cause any boards or removable feet of his couch to fall down to hurt other people.
- 19) A monk should not cover his dwelling place with heavy material that collapse to harm other people.
- 20) A monk should not sprinkle grass or clay, or should not have them sprinkled if he knows that the water contains life.
- 21) A monk should not exhort nuns if there is no order from the Sangha.
- 22) Even though agreed upon by the Order, a monk should not exhort nuns after sunset.
- 23) When there no order from the Sangha, a monk should not approach nun's quarters, and exhort them.
- 24) A monk should not joke that the elder monks are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain.
- 25) A monk should not give robe-material to a nun who is not a relation, except in exchange.
- 26) A monk should not sew or cause a robe to be sewn for a nun who is not a relation.
- 27) A monk should not have arranged together with a nun to go along the same road, even among villages, except at the right time (in this case, the right time must be agreed upon by the Order that the road is dangerous and frightening that one must go with a weapon).
- 28) A monk should not have arranged together with a nun to embark in a boat and to go either upstream or downstream, except for crossing over to the other bank on a ferry.
- 29) A monk should not eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through the intervention of a nun.
- 30) A monk should not sit down in a private place together with a nun.

- 31) A monk should not eat more than one meal at a public house, nor should he eat two meals in two days at the same house.
- 32) A monk should not eat more than one meal and residing at various locations in one day, except when he is ill.
- 33) A monk should not eat solid food or soft food that is not left over when he feels full (satisfied); however, when he is still hungry, he can ask for more food.
- 34) When receiving a lot of alms-food, a monk must share them with other monks in the Order. If not, there is an offence of Pacittiya (If a monk, going up to a family, and was invited to take cakes or barley-gruel, two or three bowlfuls may be accepted by the monk. Should he accept more than that, there is an offence of Pacittiya. Should he accept two or three bowlfuls, take these cakes back from there and would not share with other monks in the monastery, there is an offence of Pacittiya).
- 35) A monk should not eat solid food or soft food that is not left over when he feels full (satisfied); however, when he is still hungry, he can ask for more food.
- 36) A monk should not ask another monk who has eaten, who is satisfied, to take solid or soft food that is not left over.
- 37) A monk should not eat or partake solid or soft food at the wrong time (wrong time means afternoon has passed until sunrise).
- 38) A monk should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food that was stored so that he doesn't have to go begging for alms-food the next day.
- 39) A monk who is not ill should not ask for sumptuous foods (sumptuous foods include ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, fish, meat, milk, curds, etc).
- 40) A monk should not convey to his mouth nutriment not given.
- 41) A monk should not give with his own hand solid food or soft food to a naked ascetic, or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer.
- 42) A monk should not find fault to dismiss another monk from going into a village for alms-food to cause that monk to starve.
- 43) A monk should not intrude and sit down in a house with food.
- 44) After receiving alms-food, a monk should not sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman.
- 45) A monk should not sit down together with a woman in a private place (that can lead to the development of sexual intercourse).
- 46) Whatever monk, being invited and being provided with a meal, not having asked for permission if a monk be there, should call upon families before a meal or after a meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case, a right time is the time of giving robes, the time of making robes.

- 47) When a monk is not ill, an invitation to accept a requisite for four months may be accepted, unless there be a renewed invitation, unless there be a permanent invitation. If one should accept for longer than that, there is an offence of expiation.
- 48) A monk should not go to see an army fighting.
- 49) If there is some reason for a monk to go to visit the army, that monk should not stay with the army for two nights.
- 50) If a monk, staying with the army for less than two nights, he should not go see a sham-fight or to the troops in array or to the massing of the army or to see a review of the army.
- 51) A monk should not drink fermented liquor and spirits, nor should he smoke opium, nor should he chew betel.
- 52) A monk should not tickle with the fingers to make other monks laugh.
- 53) A monk should not playing in the water (sporting in the water).
- 54) A monk should not disrespect any blame or warning from the elder monks.
- 55) A monk should not frighten another monk.
- 56) If he is not ill, a monk should not warm himself, kindle or cause a fire to be kindled.
- 57) A monk should not bathe at intervals of less than half a month, except at a right time, i.e., the time of illness, the body is dirty, or too hot during the summer time.
- 58) A monk should not obtain or wear a robe (white) that has no disfigurement of black, dark green or muddy colors. If a monk makes use of a new robe without taking any one mode of disfigurement (of the three modes of disfigurements), there is an offence of expiation.
- 59) A monk should not get back things that he already offered to another monk. If a monk assigns a robe to a monk or to a nun or to a female probationer or to a male novice, then make use of it or take it back to give to another monk, there is an offence of expiation.
- 60) A monk should not hide or cause to hide another monk's bowl or robe or cloth, even in fun.
- 61) A monk should not intentionally deprive a living thing of life.
- 62) A monk should not knowingly make use of water that contains living things.
- 63) A monk should not knowingly open up for a further formal act a legal question already settled according to rule.
- 64) A monk should not knowingly conceal another monk's very bad offence (an offence that involves defeat and the thirteen entailing a formal meeting of the Order).

- 65) A monk should not knowingly confer the Upasampada Ordination on an individual under twenty years of age.
- 66) A monk should not have arranged together with a caravan set on theft, should not knowingly go along the same high road, even among villages.
- 67) A monk should not have arranged together with a woman to go along the same road (see the last part of number 27).
- 68) Whatever monk should speak thus: "In so far as I understand dhamma taught by the Blessed One, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the Blessed One, there is no stumbling-block at all;" that monk should be spoken to by the monks thus: "Do not, venerable one, speak thus, do not misrepresent the Blessed One, misrepresentation of the Blessed One is not all seemly, and the Blessed One certainly would not speak thus; in many a figure, your reverence, are things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by the Blessed One, and in following these there is a veritable stumbling-block." And if that monk, when he has been spoken to thus by the monks, should persist as before, that monk should be admonished by the monks up to the third time for giving up that course. If being admonished up to the third time, he should give it up, that is good. But if he should not give it up, there is an offence of expiation.
- 69) A monk should not knowingly eat together with or be in communion with or lie down in a sleeping place with a monk who speaks uncorrectly about the Buddha-Dharma and misinterprets the Buddha.
- 70) A monk should not knowingly allow the novice who speaks uncorrectly about the Buddha-Dharma and misinterprets the Buddha, should not encourage that novice, should not support, should not eat with that novice, nor should he lie down in a sleeping place with that novice.
- 71) A monk, being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, should speak thus: "Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of training until I have inquired about it of another experienced monk who is expert in discipline." There is an offence of Pacittiya. He should say: "Monks, it should be learnt, it should be inquired into, it should be investigated by a monk who is training."
- 72) When the Patimokkha is being recited, a monk should not be disparaging the rule of training by saying thus: "On what account are the lesser and minor rules of training recited? They only tend to remorse, to vexation, to perplexity."
- 73) A monk should not avoid being blamed by saying that he does not understand the Patimokkha (Whatever monk, while the Patimokkha is being recited every half-month, should speak thus: "Only now I do understand that this rule is, as is said, handed down in a clause, contained

in a clause, and comes up for recitation every half-moth; if other monks should know concerning this monk has sat down two or three times before, not to say oftener, while Patimokkha was being recited, there is not only no freedom for that monk on account of his ignorance, but he ought to be dealt with according to the rule for the offence into which he has fallen there, and further confusion should be put on him, saying: ‘Your reverence, this is bad for you, this is badly gotten by you, that you, while the Patimokkha is being recited, do not attend applying yourself properly.’”

- 74) When angry and displeased, a monk should not give another monk a blow.
- 75) When angry and displeased, a monk should not raise the palm of the hand against another monk.
- 76) A monk should not defame another monk with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.
- 77) Whatever monk should intentionally arouse remorse in a monk thinking, “There will be no comfort for him even for a moment,” if having done it for just this object, not for another, there is an offence of expiation.
- 78) A monk should not stand overhearing other monks when they are quarrelling, disputing.
- 79) A monk should not first consent for legitimate acts, and afterwards engage in criticism.
- 80) A monk should not break or interrupt the meeting, not giving the consent by rising up or departing from his seat when the Order is engaged in decisive talk.
- 81) Whatever monk, having given away a robe by means of a complete Order, should afterwards engage in criticism, saying: “The monks are appropriating a benefit belonging to the Order according to acquaintanceship,” there is an offence of expiation.
- 82) Whatever monk should knowingly appropriate to an individual an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order, there is an offence of expiation.
- 83) A monk should not suddenly enter the threshold of the king palace without waiting to be welcome.
- 84) A monk should not pick up or cause another to pick up treasure or what is considered to be treasure, except when he knows the owner and picks to set aside for the owner to take it.
- 85) A monk should not enter a village at the wrong time, unless the Order instructs him to go for some kind of urgent thing to be done.
- 86) A monk should not have a needle-case made of bone or ivory or horn.
- 87) A monk should not sit on a couch or chair with the legs higher than eight finger-breadths.

- 88) A monk should not have a couch or a chair made covered with good cotton.
- 89) A monk should not sit or lie on a large piece of sleeping bag (oversize). When a piece of cloth to sit upon is being made for a monk, it must be made to a proper measure. This is the proper measure: in length two spans, in breadth one and a half spans. In exceeding this measure, there is an offence of expiation.
- 90) A monk should not use oversize itch-cloth (four spans in length and two spans in breadth).
- 91) A monk should not use oversize towel or cloth for the rains. When a cloth for the rains is being made for a monk, it must be made to a proper measure: six spans in length, two and a half spans in breadth.
- 92) A monk should not have a robe made the measure of the Buddha's robe, or more (the measures for the Buddha's robe are nine spans in length and six spans in breadth).

(VI) Patidesaniya (skt):

According to the Vinaya Pitaka, the word Patidesaniya is a Sanskrit word means a confession of an offence or some sort of transgression of monastic rules which ought to be confessed before the Order, and the punishments for these offences are decided by the Order.

- 1) A monk should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food, having accepted it with his own hand from the hand of a nun who is not a relation.
- 2) When a householder invites a monk to come to the family. If a nun comes to be standing as though giving directions, saying: "Here give curry, give cooked rice here," that nun should be rebuked by the monk, saying: "Stand aside, sister, while the monks eat." If not, the monk violates the Patidesaniya.
- 3) A monk should not keep begging for foods at the same house to cause them to be poor because of their continuous offerings.
- 4) A monk should not reside in those jungle lodgings that are dangerous and frightening for donators who travel to offer foods and drinks.

(VII) Sekhiyadhamma:

According to the Vinaya Pitaka, Sikkha-karaniya (skt) (Sekhiya (p)) includes seventy-five (one hundred rules for the Mahayana Buddhism) rules of conduct which are connected with daily activities.

- 1) A monk should wear the inner robe all round for covering the circle of the navel and the circles of the knees. Whoever out of disrespect dresses with

an inner robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

- 2) A monk should wear the upper robe even all round (whoever out of disrespect puts on an upper robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing).
- 3) A monk should not, out of disrespect, having uncovered the body, go among the houses.
- 4) A monk should not, out of disrespect, sit down among the house without proper clothes.
- 5) A monk should not go fidgeting amidst the houses (making play with hand or foot).
- 6) A monk should not sit fidgeting in inhabited areas (making play with hand or foot in the houses).
- 7) A monk should not go among the houses with eyes glanced around. He should go amidst the houses with eyes cast down looking only a plough's distance ahead.
- 8) A monk should not sit down in the houses with eyes glanced around. He should sit down amidst the houses with eyes cast down looking only a plough's distance ahead.
- 9) A monk should not go among the houses with robes lifted up to the shoulders, either on one side or on both (if out of disrespect having lifted up the robe on one side or on both, there is an offence of wrong-doing).
- 10) A monk should not sit down amidst the houses with robes lifted up to the shoulders, either on one side or on both.
- 11) A monk should not go into the houses with loud laughter.
- 12) A monk should not sit down in the houses with loud laughter.
- 13) With little noise will I go sit down amidst the houses, is a training to be observed. One should go sit down amidst the houses with little noise.
- 14) Whoever out of disrespect, making a loud noise, a great noise, goes sits down amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 15) A monk should not go amidst the houses swaying the body. He should hold the body straight.
- 16) A monk should not sit down amidst the houses sway the body. He should hold the body straight.
- 17) Not swaying the arms will I go sit down amidst the houses, is a training to be observed. One should not go sit down amidst the houses swaying the arms. One should go sit down holding the arms straight.
- 18) Whoever out of disrespect, the arms swaying, goes sits down amidst the houses bending the arms, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

- 19) Not swaying the head will I go sit down amidst the houses, is a training to be observed. One should not go sit down amidst the houses swaying the head. One should go sit down holding the head straight.
- 20) Whoever out of disrespect, the head swaying, goes sits down amidst the houses bending the head, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 21) A monk should not enter any lay people's houses with the arms placed on the hips, or with the hands on both sides and the elbows turned outwards (akimbo).
- 22) A monk should not sit down in lay people's houses with the arms akimbo (arms place on the hips, or hands on both sides and elbows turned outwards).
- 23) One should not go sit down muffled up amidst the houses.
- 24) Whoever out of disrespect goes sits down amidst the houses, having dressed himself, including his head, in the upper robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 25) A monk should not crouch down on the heels (sit arms akimbo) in the lay people's houses.
- 26) One should not sit down amidst the houses lolling. Whoever out of disrespect sits down amidst the houses lolling, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 27) A monk should accept almsfood attentively. Whoever out of disrespect accepts almsfood inattentively, as though desirous of throwing it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 28) One should accept almsfood thinking of the bowl. Whoever out of disrespect accepts almsfood, looking about here and there, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 29) Almsfood with equal curry should be accepted. Whoever out of disrespect accepts too much curry, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 30) A monk should not hide (cover up) sauce and curries with rice out of desire to get more. One should accept almsfood at an even level. Whoever out of disrespect accepts heaped-up almsfood, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 31) After accepting enough alms-food, a monk should cover the bowl; then he should sit straight up, eat and contemplate at the same time. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood inattentively, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 32) One should eat almsfood thinking of the bowl. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood looking about here and there, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

- 33) One should eat almsfoos on continuous alms-tour. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood, having chosen here and there, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 34) Almsfood with equal curry should be eaten. Whoever out of disrespect eats too much curry, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 35) A monk should eat the alms-food working down from the top without making exceptions (choosing or selecting foods). One should eat almsfood not having chosen from the top. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood having chosen from the top, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 36) One should not cover up the curry or the condiment with conjei, desiring something more. Whoever out of disrespect covers up the curry or the condiment with conjei, desiring something more, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 37) A monk should not ask for sauce and/or rice for his own appetizing unless he is sick.
- 38) A monk should not look enviously at another's bowl. One should not look at others' bowls captious-mindedly. Whoever out of disrespect looks at others' bowls captious-mindedly, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 39) When eating alms-food, a monk should not make up too large a mouthful. Whoever out of disrespect makes up too large a mouthful, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 40) One should make up a piece of food into a round. Whoever out of disrespect makes up a long piece of food, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 41) A monk should not open the mouth till the mouthful is brought to it. Whoever out of disrespect opens the mouth when the mouthful is not brought close, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 42) One should not put the whole hand into the mouth while eating. Whoever out of disrespect puts the whole hand into the mouth while eating, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 43) A monk should not talk with the mouth full (talk with a mouthful in the mouth). Whoever out of disrespect talks with a mouthful in the mouth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 44) When eating alms-food, a monk should not make up a round mouthful (eat tossing up balls of food). Whoever out of disrespect eats tossing up balls of food, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 45) A monk should not eat scattering rice or lumps of boiled rice about. Whoever out of disrespect eats breaking up the mouthfuls, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

- 46) A monk should not eat stuffing out the cheeks like a monkey (stuffed the cheek on one side or on both). Whoever out of disrespect eats, having stuffed cheek on one side or on both, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 47) A monk should not eat shaking the hand about. Whoever out of disrespect eats shaking the hands about, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 48) One should not eat scattering lumps of boiled rice. Whoever out of disrespect eats scattering lumps of boiled rice, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 49) A monk should not eat put out the tongue, or eat licking or wiping, either the hand or the bowl.
- 50) A monk should not suck the alms-food loudly, or smack the lips loudly.
- 51) A monk should not eat making loud sound or noise, or making a hissing sound.
- 52) One should not eat licking the fingers.
- 53) One should not eat licking the bowl.
- 54) One should not eat licking the lips.
- 55) A monk should not accept a drinking-water pot or cup with the hands soiled with food.
- 56) A monk should not throw out amidst the houses, rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice (bowl washing water which has rice grains in it).
- 57) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with an umbrella or a sunshade in his hand who is not sick.
- 58) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a stick (staff) in his hand and who is not sick.
- 59) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a knife in his hand.
- 60) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone with a spear (lance) in his hand.
- 61) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone mounted on clogs (wooden shoes).
- 62) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone wearing sandals who is not sick.
- 63) A monk should not teach the law to someone in a vehicle who is not sick. Whoever out of disrespect teaches Dhamma to someone in a vehicle and who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 64) A monk should not sit to teach Dharma to someone lying on a bed and who is not ill, or even lying on the ground.
- 65) A monk should not teach Dharma, standing, to someone who is sitting down, and who is not sick. a) A monk should not sit down on the ground to teach Dharma to someone sitting on a seat and who is not ill. b) A monk should not teach Dharma, having sat down on a low seat, to someone sitting on a high seat and who is not ill.

- 66) A monk should not teach the law to someone with head covered (with a turban on his head) and who is not sick.
- 67) A monk should not teach Dharma to someone wearing a head wrapping (whose head muffled up) and who is not sick.
- 68) Having sat down on the ground, dhamma should not be taught to someone sitting on a seat and who is not ill.
- 69) Dhamma should not be taught, having sat down on a low seat, to someone sitting on a high seat and who is not ill.
- 70) A monk should not teach Dhamma, standing, to someone who is sitting down and who is not ill.
- 71) A monk should not teach Dharma, going or walking behind, to someone going or walking in front and who is not ill.
- 72) A monk should not teach Dharma, standing beside (at the side of) a path, to someone standing on a path (in the middle of the path).
- 73) One must not ease or spit oneself standing if not ill. Whoever out of disrespect eases or spits himself standing if not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 74) A monk should not ease himself or spit, if not ill, on green corn.
- 75) A monk should not ease himself or spit in the water.

(VIII)Saptadhikarana-samatha (skt):

According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are seven rules given in the Vinaya for settling disputes among monks (disputes arise from arguments, misconduct, judgment and punishment, correctness of a religious observance). Seven rules for the participation and settlement of disputed questions that have been raised:

- 1) Sammukha-vinaya (skt): Face to face evidence, or appeal to the law to place the two quarrelling monks face to face in order to clarify and solve the problem.
- 2) Smṛti-vinaya (skt): no witness or proof, no recollection. To make one admit that his memory had failed in regard to the point of dispute.
- 3) Amudha-vinaya (skt): Irresponsibility or mental derangement. To make a monk admit that he was not in his normal mind when the point of dispute arose.
- 4) Pratīnakaraka-vinaya (skt): Decision by majority vote or verdict.
- 5) Tatsvabhavaiśiṣya-vinaya (skt): Voluntary confession or formality of confession.
- 6) Yadbhūyasikiya-vinaya (skt): Condemnation of unconfessed sin, make a statement and ask thrice for judgment.

- 7) Trnastaraka-vinaya (skt): Covering the mud with straw or covering over with grass. The avoidance of publicity to a dispute within the Sangha.

(B-6) Complete Precepts for Bhiksunis

According to Buddhist Vinaya, there are three hundred forty-eight moral precepts for nuns. A Bhiksuni is she who has fully realized the true nature of life. She understands that the life of a lay person is full of obstacles as a path of dust. In the contrary, the life of a Bhiksu or Bhiksuni is just like the open sky with full of fresh air. Therefore, she decides to abandon the domestic life and takes up the life of a Bhiksuni. When she joins the Order of Nuns, beside getting her head shaved and putting on the yellow robe, she must learn the theoretical and practicing teachings of the Buddha and keeps all Bhiksuni rules and regulations set forth by the Buddha. Children under 20 are usually not allowed to take the Bhiksuni precepts unless they are out-of-the ordinary in their abilities. Female Buddhists who wish to become a nun must live in a temple for at least two years to learn Buddhist rituals and practices and the six rules for a female novice. Thereafter, if the headmaster deems them being fit and ready to become a nun, only then do they take the Bhiksuni precepts. These rules include:

(I) Parajika (skt):

The eight grave prohibitions or sins (Eight Defeats). The word Parajika is derived from the Sanskrit root Para and Jika which means that makes DEFEAT. Eight parajikas mean eight causes of falling from grace and final excommunication or expulsion of a monk or nun. According to the monastic point of view, these offences are regarded as very serious in nature. Any nuns, regardless of their ranks and years in the Order, violate any one of these offences, are subject to expulsion from the Order. Once they are expelled, they are never allowed to join the Order again. They are defeated forever. Therefore, the Buddha cautioned all monks and nuns not to indulge in any one of them:

- 1) Killing: Killing (Vadha-himsa (skt)) is one of the ten kinds of evil karma, to kill living beings, to take life, kill the living, or any conscious being.
- 2) Stealing: Stealing (Adattadana (skt)) means taking possession of anything that has not been given by its owner or stealing, is also wrong, even legally speaking. Stealing is one of the four grave prohibitions or sins in Buddhism. Stealing is taking what isn't given to us. It includes not paying

taxes or fees that are due, borrowing things and not returning them, and taking things from our workplace for our own personal use.

- 3) Sexual immorality or bestiality: Adultery (Abrahmacarya (skt)) is the third commandment of the five basic commandments for lay people, and the third precept of the ten major precepts for monks and nuns in the Brahma Net Sutra. Monks or nuns who commit this offence will be expelled from the Order forever.
- 4) False speaking: According to The Buddha and His Teachings, there are four conditions that are necessary to complete the evil of lying (Uttaramanusyadharma-pralapa (skt)): an untruth, deceiving intention, utterance, and actual deception. According to The Buddha and His Teachings, written by Most Venerable Narada, there are some inevitable consequences of lying as follow: being subject to abusive speech, vilification, untrustworthiness, and stinking mouth.
- 5) The action like enjoying rubbing, touching and pressing against a male person below the collar-bone and above the circle of the knees with some desire by a nun is treated as a serious offence which makes her defeated in the spiritual life.
- 6) It is a serious offence named Parajika for a nun who with some desire consents to hold the hand of a male person, his outer cloak, standing near him, holding a talk with him or suggesting to go a rendez-vous, consent to meet him or enter into a covered place and dispose the body for such purpose.
- 7) A nun should not conceal a knowingly Parajika offence of some other nuns entails her to be defeated in the monastic life.
- 8) A nun who follows a Bhikkhu or a Bhikkhuni who have been suspended by the Sangha even after thrice admonitions by other nuns is an act of Parajika for the nun.

(II)Sanghadisesa (skt):

According to Rules for Mendicants composed by Most Honorable Master Minh Đăng Quang in accordance with The Sacred Books of the Buddhists, book of the discipline, seventeen offences which entail nuns temporary expulsion from the Order. Indulging in any one of these offences, nuns are required to leave the Order for a period of time fixed by the assembly of monks and nuns. After that time, offenders present themselves before the Order to beg for a reinstatement. Without the permission from the assembly of monks and nuns, offenders cannot return to the Order.

- 1) A nun should not to act as a go-between for a woman with a man in mind or for a man with a woman in mind, whether as a wife or as a mistress, or

acting as an agent for arranging the meeting of two persons for sexual indulgence.

- 2) A nun should not accuse falsely (unjustly or wrongly) another nun with an unfounded charge.
- 3) A nun should not suspect another nun with a groundless charge.
- 4) A nun should not bring any law suits or any legal questions to the government officials for judgment.
- 5) A nun should not ordain a woman who has committed a capital offense (a woman with death penalty).
- 6) A nun should not speak in support for a nun who has committed one of the eight Parajikas.
- 7) A nun should not go alone to a remote region. Going alone to a remote village or other side of a river, remaining away for a night alone or staying behind a group alone by a nun are regarded undesirable. A nun doing so committed the offense called Sanghadisesa.
- 8) A nun should not accept necessities from a man.
- 9) A nun should not ask other people to accept necessities from a man.
- 10) A nun should not do things to destroy the harmony of the Order.
- 11) A nun should not speak in support for a person who does things to destroy the harmony of the Order.
- 12) A nun should not lead a solemnly brahma life, to be a bad example for others to imitate.
- 13) If a nun who commits evil conduct or misbehavior, and her evil conduct is seen or heard, that nun should be admonished up to three times by the assembly of nuns to allow her to give up her course. If after being admonished, she gives up that course, it is good. If she does not give up, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.
- 14) A nun should not conceal other nun's faults due to personal affection.
- 15) A nun should not provoke other nuns to disobey the laws of the Order.
- 16) A nun should not direct (superintend) other nuns to give up precepts.
- 17) A nun should not quarrel and reproach or condemn the Order.

(III)Nissaggiya-pacittiya (skt):

Thirty offences which require explanation and repentance in front of the Order. The term Nissaggiya-pacittiya has two components: the word Nissaggiya means giving up; and the word Pacittiya means reconciliation or expiation. A person by his or her true nature is subject to lapses; therefore, even after joining the monastic life, the nun sometimes, makes transgression of the monastic rules, i.e., accepting things of daily use in excess of the number allowed by the Buddha is not proper for monks and nuns. Thus, the

Buddha set forth rules that help making nuns free from transgressions. According to Rules for Mendicants composed by Most Honorable Master Minh Đăng Quang, thirty offences which require explanation and punishment for the offenders is six-day room retention.

- 1) A nun should not wear or keep an extra robe for more than ten days.
- 2) A nun should not leave robes and sleeping material in another place, even for one night (nuns should not be away, separated from the three robes, even for one night).
- 3) When robes worn out, and the robe-material is accrued to the nun, even not at the right time, it may be accepted by that nun if she so wishes. Having accepted it, it should be made up quickly. But if it is not sufficient for her, that robe-material may be laid aside by that nun for a month at most.
- 4) A nun should not ask a man or woman householder for a robe, except at the right time (robe is stolen or destroyed).
- 5) A nun should not accept more than an inner and upper robes (if a nun is offered robe-material for many robes, then at most she should accept enough for an inner and an upper robe. If she accepts more than that there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture).
- 6) When there is a householder plans to offer robe-material, or robe-fund, a nun should not design the robe as he wishes.
- 7) When there are two or more householders plan to offer robe-material or robe-fund, a nun should not design the robe as he wishes.
- 8) A nun should not obtain robe-fund and urge the Order to make the robe immediately.
- 9) A nun should not take gold and silver, nor should she ask another person to take for her.
- 10) A nun should not engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used.
- 11) A nun should not engage in any kinds of bartering.
- 12) A nun should not get another new bowl in exchange for the old bowl, even though the old bowl is very old, but is still usable (If a nun should get another new bowl in exchange for a bowl mended in less than five places, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. That bowl is to be forfeited by that nun to the company of nuns, and whatever the last bowl belonging to that company of nuns, that should be given to this nun with the words: "Nun, this is a bowl for you; it should be kept until it breaks." That is the proper course in this case).
- 13) A nun should not ask a man or a woman householder who is not a relation to weave her robe (saying this robe-material is being especially woven for

me, please make it long and wide, and make it evenly woven, well woven and well scraped, etc).

- 14) A nun should not ask for yarn, or should not have robe-material woven by weavers.
- 15) A nun should not give a robe to another monk and then take it back because she is angry or displeased of that nun.
- 16) A nun should not store medicine, sugar, fresh butter, oil, honey, etc. for over seven days, except when she is ill.
- 17) A nun should not obtain the robe before the robe-season, lay it aside, and ask again during the robe-season.
- 18) A nun should not take any things that belong to the Order.
- 19) A nun should not do any shopping for a man.
- 20) A nun should not take away any thing that is offered to the Order.
- 21) A nun should not take away anything that another nun offers to the Order.
- 22) A nun should not use the donations from lay Buddhists for personal purposes.
- 23) A nun should not gain any personal gains on behalf of the Order.
- 24) A nun should not keep an extra bowl.
- 25) A nun should not store beautiful things, such as art crafts, pictures, etc.
- 26) A nun should not break her promise to give cloth for bandage to another nun.
- 27) A nun should not exchange the robe which is given by the Order for another one from lay Buddhists.
- 28) A nun should not give a robe to another nun and then take it back because she is angry or displeased of that nun.
- 29) A nun should not use more than four batches of cloth for heavy (winter) clothes. It is advisable for a nun to bargain for a heavy cloth for four batches. If she bargains one worth more than that, she commits the offense of expiation.
- 30) A nun should not use more than two and a half batches for light (summer) clothes. Bargaining for light clothes should be made for at most two and half batches. If she bargains a light cloth worth more than that, she commits an offense of expiation involving forfeiture.

(IV) Pacittiya (skt):

One hundred seventy-eight offences which lead to expiation, according to Mahayana Buddhism and Sangha Bhiksunis Buddhism. According to Most Honorable Minh Đăng Quang in the Rules for Mendicant Bhiksus and Bhiksunis, one hundred seventy-eight Pacittiya offences which require confession and repentance. If a nun committed any of them, makes a

confession of it before the Sangha (Order of monks and nuns) with clear heart, she will become free from the offence. If she doesn't, the offence itself will not only obstruct her development of wholesome acts, but it will also cause her rebirth in lower realms, i.e., hell, hungry ghosts, or animal.

- 1) A nun should not tell a conscious lie (telling a conscious lie means the words, the utterance, the speech, the talk, the language, the intimation, the un-ariyan statement of one intent upon deceiving with words, saying: "I have not seen what I have seen, heard what I have not heard, sensed what I have not sensed, etc).
- 2) A nun should not speak insulting speech to discourage people.
- 3) A nun should not speak slandering speech to cause people to break their harmony.
- 4) A nun should not lie down in a sleeping place with a man.
- 5) A nun should not lie down in a sleeping place with one who is not ordained for more than two nights.
- 6) A nun should not make one who is not ordained speak dharma line by line. However, if a monk recite in studying together with lay good advisors, there is no offence of Pacittiya.
- 7) A nun should not speak of another nun's very bad offence to one who is not ordained.
- 8) A nun should not speak of a condition of super powers to one who is not ordained.
- 9) A nun should not teach dharma to men in more than five or six sentences, except a learned woman is present.
- 10) A nun should not dig the ground or have it dug.
- 11) A nun should not destroy vegetable growth.
- 12) A nun should not argue to disturb other people.
- 13) A nun should not defame (make derogative remarks) or bad mouth in criticizing other people, and swearing.
- 14) A nun should not spread in the open air a chair or a mattress or a stool belonging to the Order, setting forth, but does not remove or have it removed, to cause it destroyed.
- 15) A nun should not spread a sleeping place or having it spread in a dwelling belonging to the Order, setting forth, but should neither remove it nor have it removed.
- 16) A nun should not lie down in a sleeping place in a dwelling belonging to the Order, knowing that she is encroaching upon the space intended for a nun arrived first.
- 17) Out of angry and displeased, a nun should not throw out another nun or cause her to be thrown out from a dwelling place belonging to the Order.

- 18) A nun who dwells in a lofty cell with an upper part, in a dwelling place belonging to the Order. She should not cause any boards or removable feet of her couch to fall down to hurt other people.
- 19) A nun should not sprinkle grass or clay, or should not have them sprinkled if he knows that the water contains life.
- 20) A nun should not cover her dwelling place with heavy material that collapse to harm other people.
- 21) A nun should not have so many meals a day, except when she is ill.
- 22) A nun should not be absent during the assembly meal (group meal), except when she is ill, and at a right time, i.e., time of illness, time of giving robes, time of being embarked in a boat, etc.
- 23) When receiving a lot of almsfood, a nun must share them with other nuns in the Order. If not, there is an offence of Pacittiya (If a nun, going up to a family, and was invited to take cakes or barley-gruel, two or three bowlfuls may be accepted by the nun. Should she accept more than that, there is an offence of Pacittiya. Should she accept two or three bowlfuls, take these cakes back from there and would not share with other nuns in the monastery, there is an offence of Pacittiya).
- 24) A nun should not eat or partake solid or soft food at the wrong time (wrong time means afternoon has passed until sunrise).
- 25) A nun should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food that was stored so that she doesn't have to go begging for alms-food the next day.
- 26) A nun should not convey to her mouth nutriment not given.
- 27) A nun should not cause other nuns to be tardy to the meal.
- 28) After eating, a nun should not sit down in a house where there is a man.
- 29) After receiving alms-food, a nun should not sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a man.
- 30) After receiving alms-food, a nun should not sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a man.
- 31) A nun should not find fault to dismiss another nun from going into a village for alms-food to cause that nun to starve.
- 32) A nun should not store so much medicines.
- 33) A nun should not go to see an army fighting.
- 34) If there is some reason for a nun to go to visit the army, that nun should not stay with the army for two nights.
- 35) If a nun, staying with the army for less than two nights, she should not go see a sham-fight or to the troops in array or to the massing of the army or to see a review of the army.
- 36) A nun should not drink fermented liquor and spirits, nor should she smoke opium, nor should she chew betel.
- 37) A nun should not be freely bathing and playing in the water.

- 38) A nun should not kick people with her legs or hands.
- 39) A nun should not disrespect any blame or warning from the elder monks or nuns.
- 40) A nun should not frighten other people.
- 41) A nun should not bathe at intervals of less than half a month, except at a right time, i.e., the time of illness, the body is dirty, or too hot during the summer time.
- 42) If he is not ill, a nun should not warm herself, kindle or cause a fire to be kindled.
- 43) A nun should not hide or cause to hide another nun's bowl or robe or cloth, even in fun.
- 44) A nun should not get back things that she already offered to another nun.
- 45) A nun should not wear a robe (white) that has no disfigurement of black, dark green or muddy colors.
- 46) A nun should not knowingly make use of water that contains living things.
- 47) A nun should not intentionally deprive a living thing of life.
- 48) A nun should not cause sadness to other people without comforting them.
- 49) A nun should not knowingly conceal another nun's very bad offence (an offence that involves defeat and the seventeen entailing a formal meeting of the Order).
- 50) A nun should not knowingly open up for a further formal act a legal question already settled according to rule.
- 51) A nun should not have arranged together with a caravan set on theft, should not knowingly go along the same high road, even among villages.
- 52) A nun should not speak lewd words to obstruct the cultivated path.
- 53) A nun should not knowingly frequent, exchange things, speak, be in communion with, or lie down in a sleeping place with a nun who speaks uncorrectly about the Buddha-Dharma and misinterprets the Buddha.
- 54) A nun should not knowingly allow the novice who speaks uncorrectly about the Buddha-Dharma and misinterprets the Buddha, should not encourage that novice, should not support, should not eat with that novice, nor should he lie down in a sleeping place with that novice.
- 55) A nun, being spoken to by nuns regarding a rule, should speak thus: "Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of training until I have inquired about it of another experienced monk who is expert in discipline." There is an offence of Pacittiya. She should say: "Monks, it should be learnt, it should be inquired into, it should be investigated by a nun who is training."
- 56) When the Patimokkha is being recited, a nun should not be disparaging the rule of training by saying thus: "On what account are the lesser and

minor rules of training recited? They only tend to remorse, to vexation, to perplexity.”

- 57) A nun should not avoid being blamed by saying that she does not understand the Patimokkha (Whatever nun, while the Patimokkha is being recited every half-month, should speak thus: “Only now I do understand that this rule is, as is said, handed down in a clause, contained in a clause, and comes up for recitation every half-month; if other nuns should know concerning this nun has sat down two or three times before, not to say oftener, while Patimokkha was being recited, there is not only no freedom for that nun on account of his ignorance, but he ought to be dealt with according to the rule for the offence into which she has fallen there, and further confusion should be put on her, saying: ‘Your reverence, this is bad for you, this is badly gotten by you, that you, while the Patimokkha is being recited, do not attend applying yourself properly.’”
- 58) A nun should not say that the Order’s decision is not fair.
- 59) A nun should not break or interrupt the meeting, not giving the consent by rising up or departing from her seat when the Order is engaged in decisive talk.
- 60) A nun should not first consent for legitimate acts, and afterwards engage in criticism.
- 61) A nun should not stand overhearing other nuns when they are quarrelling, disputing.
- 62) When angry and displeased, a nun should not give another nun a blow.
- 63) When angry and displeased, a nun should not raise the palm of the hand against another nun.
- 64) A nun should not defame another nun with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.
- 65) A nun should not suddenly enter the threshold of the king palace without waiting to be welcome.
- 66) A nun should not pick up or cause another to pick up treasure or what is considered to be treasure, except when she knows the owner and picks to set aside for the owner to take it.
- 67) A nun should not enter a village at the wrong time, unless the Order instructs her to go for some kind of urgent thing to be done.
- 68) A nun should not sit on a couch or chair with the legs higher than eight finger-breadths.
- 69) A nun should not have a couch or a chair made covered with good cotton.
- 70) A nun should not eat the five forbidden pungent roots, i.e., garlic, onion, leeks, etc.
- 71) A nun should not disobey the law by not shaving the eyebrows.
- 72) A nun should not joke or laugh at someone.

- 73) A nun should not talk worldly affairs.
- 74) Two nuns should not play or trifle with hands.
- 75) A nun should not stand with drinking water or with a fan close to a monk while he is eating or drinking.
- 76) A nun should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food that was stored so that she doesn't have to go begging for alms-food the next day.
- 77) A nun should not go to stool or urinate to cause pollution in the area of vegetables, plants or trees.
- 78) A nun should not throw out the excrement or urine or rubbish or remains of food over a wall or a fence.
- 79) A nun should not go to see dancing, singing, or music.
- 80) A nun should not speak with a man in a secluded place (it is not proper for a nun to stand with a man or talk to him alone in a secluded place, i.e., in the dark of the night when there is no light). In doing so, she commits an offence which requires expiation.
- 81) A nun should not meet and talk with a man in a private place.
- 82) A nun should not order another nun to leave so that she can be free to talk to a man.
- 83) A nun should not leave a lay person's house without asking the owner's permission.
- 84) A nun should not enter the house of a lay person without informing the owner, then stay overnight without asking for permission of the owner.
- 85) A nun should not enter the house of a lay person without informing the householder, and sit or lie down at ease.
- 86) A nun should not enter the house of a lay person, then enter a private place with a man.
- 87) A nun should not misinterpret the master's instructions.
- 88) A nun should not get angry, nor swear.
- 89) A nun should not argue, nor yell loudly at the same time beat her chest.
- 90) Two nuns should not share one couch, except when they are ill. If not, they commit the offence of expiation.
- 91) Two nuns should not share one couch, except in case of emergency.
- 92) A nun should not cause troubles for other nuns, nor should she cause others to be late to sutra-recitation, supportive recitation, ceremonies, or preaching.
- 93) A nun who should neither attend to an ailing woman who lives with her, nor should she make an effort to get her attended to, commits the offence of expiation.
- 94) Whatever nun, having given quarters to a nun, should, angry, displeased, throw her out or have her thrown out, commits the offence of expiation.

- 95) A nun should not walk on almstour duirng the rains, for she may tread on worms and other insects.
- 96) A nun should not stay at the retreat are after the rainy season.
- 97) A nun should not go on alms-tour within a dangerous region. Her disobeying the rule is the committing of an offence of expiation.
- 98) A nun should not go on alms-tour within a chaotic region.
- 99) A nun should not keep company with a man (whatever nun should keep company with a householder or with the householder's son, that nun should be spoken to thus by the nuns: "Do not, lady, keep company with a householder and with a householder's son. Let the lady desist, the Order praises such detachment in a sister." But if that nun, being spoken to thus by the nuns, should persist as before, that nun should be admonished by the nuns up to the third time for giving up that course. If she should give up, while being admonished up to the third time, that is good. If she should not give up, there is an offence of expiation).
- 100)A nun should not go to see a king's palace, including the king's pleasure house, a picture gallery, a park, or a pleasure grove, or a lotus pond (it is said that if she goes to any of the above-mentioned places, she commits the offence of expiation).
- 101)A nun should not bathe naked. It is not advisable for a nun to take a bath without clothes or having no dress at all. If she does so, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 102)A nun should not use a bathing cloth beyond the measure prescribed for the Nun. When a bathing cloth is being made for a nun, it must be made to a proper measure. This is the proper meaure: in length four spans, in width two spans. For her who exceeds this measure, should she make or arrange to make a bathing cloth beyond the measure prescribed for the Nun, there is an offence of expiation (The Book of the Discipline, I.B. Horner, 1997).
- 103)A nun should neither sew or make effort to have the robe sewn beyond the limit of five days. Whatever nun, having unsewn or having made another unsewn a nun's robe, if she is not afterwards prevented should neither sew it nor should make an effort to get it sewn, except on the fourth and fifth days, there is an offence of expiation.
- 104)A nun should not store a ready-to-wear robe.
- 105)A nun should not hold back a legally valid division of robe-material.
- 106)A nun should not wear a robe of someone else without permission.
- 107)A nun should not give away other nuns' robes.
- 108)A nun should not be an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robe or in legal distribution of robe material in the Sangha.

- 109)A nun should not use her speech as an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robe or in legal distribution of robe material in the Sangha.
- 110)A nun should not use any means to obstruct the way of a group's receiving robe or in legal distribution of robe material in the Sangha.
- 111)There is some legal question to be settled by the Order. If a nun does not agree or does not make effort to get it settled, she commits Expiation offence.
- 112)A nun should not give with her own hand solid food or soft food to a heretics. According to The Book of the Discipline, translated into English by I.B. Horner in 1997, if a nun gives with her own hand solid food or soft food to a householder, a male or female wanderer, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 113)A nun should not do household work for a lay person. Leading the holy life, a nun should not do the household work. If she does so, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 114)A nun should not spin yarn.
- 115)A nun should not make use of a sofa or a divan at the house of a lay person.
- 116)If a nun must stay overnight at the house of a lay person, the next morning when she leaves, she must inform the owner. If she does not, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 117)A nun should not recite incantation the same way as the heretic magicians do.
- 118)A nun should not teach other people to recite incantation.
- 119)A nun should not ordain a pregnant woman. In case of doing so, she commits the offence of expiation.
- 120)A nun should not ordain a woman giving suck (it is forbidden for a nun to ordain a woman giving suck). In case of violation of the rule, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 121)A nun should not ordain a maiden under twenty years of age. In case of violation of the rule, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 122)A nun should not ordain a probationer who has not trained for two years in the six rules. Even after reaching the age of twenty years, a married girl is not fit for ordination, if she is not trained for two years in six rules.
- 123)A nun should not ordain a woman who committed Parajikas, even though she is over twenty years of age and she is trained for two years.
- 124)A nun should not refuse to ordain a probationer who meets all required qualifications (over twenty years of age and two years of training in six rules).
- 125)A nun should not hurry to ordain a woman and not to train her in six rules.

- 126)A nun should not ordain a married girl without obtaining the permission from the Order, even though the girl has completed twenty years of age and has trained for two years in the six rules. In case of doing so, she commits the offence of expiation.
- 127)A nun should not conceal any of the information from 119 to 126.
- 128)After ordaining a woman, a nun should keep her under supervision and should help her for two years in training in six rules. It is a general rule for a nun to give ordained woman instructions for two years. In disobeying this she commits the offence of expiation.
- 129)Ordaining a maiden every year by a nun is committing the offence of expiation.
- 130)An unqualified nun should not admit a novice.
- 131)An unqualified nun should not ordain a probationer.
- 132)A nun who is not thorough in Vinaya, should not ordain a probationer.
- 133)A nun should not complain the Order for not allowing her the permission to ordain a probationer.
- 134)A nun should not ordain a probationer without the consent of the parents and husband. If a nun ordain a probationer without such consent, she commits an offence of expiation.
- 135)A nun should not cause a woman to feel sad and worry, so that she will leave home to join the Order.
- 136)A nun should not first promise to ordain a trainable probationer, then later breaks her promise.
- 137)A nun should not promise another nun for ordination, in a gain of a robe and afterwards breaks her promise, her such doing is an offence of expiation. Whatever nun, having said to a probationer: "If you, lady, will give me a robe, then will I ordain you." If afterwards, she should neither ordain her nor should she make an effort to get her ordained, there is an offence of expiation. A nun should not promise to ordain a woman who seems to be trainable, and afterwards breaks her promise.
- 138)A nun who joined the Order less than a year, should not ordain a probationer.
- 139)A nun should not ordain a woman and wait until the next day to inform the Order of monks.
- 140)A nun should not be absent on the Uposatha Day, except when she is ill.
- 141)A nun should not forget her general duty of asking the Order of the monks the dates of the observance day and preaching Dharma day.
- 142)After the rainy season retreat, if a nun does not invite the Order of Monks and Nuns in respect of three matters that is what is seen or heard or suspected, she commits the offence of expiation.

- 143)A nun should not spend the rains in a residence where there is no monk. In case of violation of the instruction and staying during the rainy season in a monastery without monk, she commits the offence of expiation (the Buddha has made the rules for the nuns to enter into rainy season retreat in a monastery where there are also monks. Probably this has been done with the consideration of providing them guardianship).
- 144)A nun should not enter a monastery without asking for advanced permission.
- 145)A nun should not revile or abuse another nun. In doing so she commits the offence of expiation.
- 146)A nun should not use coarse words to cause troubles in the Order.
- 147)It is not proper for a nun to make a boil or scab that has formed on the lower part of her body to be operated by a man without the permission of the Order; she should not also get it washed or smeared, bound up or unbound by a man. Doing so, she commits the offence of expiation.
- 148)A nun should not eat or partake of solid food or soft food after her being satisfied.
- 149)A nun should not be envious with other nuns. It is not proper for her in her monastic life to harbor jealousy against anyone. If she does so, she commits the offence of expiation.
- 150)A nun should not apply any cosmetic powder, nor should she wear ornaments.
- 151)A nun should not apply cosmetic powder, nor should she use perfumes. It is not proper for a nun to use perfumes and paints in water for bathing as well as she should not bathe in scented groundsesamum. In case of violation, she commits the offence of expiation.
- 152)A nun should not induce another nun to apply cosmetic powder, nor should she induce another nun to use perfumes.
- 153)A nun should not induce a cultivator to apply cosmetic powder or to use perfumes.
- 154)A nun should not induce a disciple to apply cosmetic powder or to use perfumes.
- 155)A nun should not induce a lay person to apply cosmetic powder or to use perfumes.
- 156)A nun should not wear thin robe through which one can see her skin.
- 157)A nun should not wear clothes of lay people.
- 158)A nun should not use a sunshade and sandals. When she does so, she commits the offence of expiation.
- 159)A nun should not go in a vehicle if she is not ill.
- 160)A nun should not enter the village without wearing her vest (robe).

- 161)A nun should not enter the house of a lay person at night without invitation.
- 162)A nun should not open the gate of the temple and go out in the evening without informing other nuns in the temple.
- 163)After the sun sets, a nun should not open the gate of the temple and go out without informing other nuns.
- 164)A nun should not be absent in the assembly day of the rainy season retreat.
- 165)A nun should not ordain a woman who has chronic disease.
- 166)A nun should not ordain a bisexual person.
- 167)A nun should not ordain a woman with unusual disease.
- 168)A nun should not ordain a woman who is in debt or handicapped.
- 169)A nun should not learn divination or fortune-telling.
- 170)A nun should not teach other people divination or fortune-telling.
- 171)A nun should not disobey not to leave when someone asks to leave.
- 172)A nun should not suddenly ask a monk without asking for advanced permission.
- 173)A nun should not sit or lie down in a place that blocks other people's way and causes them troubles.
- 174)A nun should not build a stupa for another nun within the temple of monks.
- 175)Even though a hundred years' standing by the higher ordination, a nun must always pay respect to a monk, no matter how young he is, offer her seat to him, reverence him, and perform all proper duties towards him though he has just received the Higher Ordination on that very day.
- 176)A nun should not walk and wriggle at the same time.
- 177)A nun should not wear worldly clothes and ornaments.
- 178)A nun should not instigate a heretic girl to apply cosmetic powder and use perfumes.

(V) *Patidesanniya (skt):*

According to Most Honorable Master Minh Đăng Quang in The Rules for Mendicant Bhiksus and Bhiksunis, the word Patidesaniya is a Sanskrit word means a confession of an offence or some sort of transgression of monastic rules which ought to be confessed before the Order, and the punishments for these offences are decided by the Order. Any nun who is not ill, but asking for any one of these below mentioned things, commits an offence which ought to be confessed with clear expression. By clear expression, it is meant that the nun should say: "I have fallen, sisters, into a blameworthy matter which ought to be confessed and I confessed it."

- 1) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for milk or beans (curd).
- 2) It has been stated that it is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for oil.
- 3) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for honey.
- 4) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for sugar.
- 5) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for flour.
- 6) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for ghee (rice soup).
- 7) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for delicious food (for curing the illness).
- 8) It is not proper for a nun who is not ill to ask for precious things (usually medications for healing the illness).

(VI) One Hundred Rules of Conduct for Nuns (Sikkha-karaniya (skt)—Sekhiya (p)):

According to Most Honorable Master Minh Đăng Quang in the Rules for Mendicant Bhiksus, Sikkha-karaniya includes one hundred rules of conduct which are connected with daily activities.

- 1) A Nun should wear the inner robe all round for covering the circle of the navel and the circles of the knees. Whoever out of disrespect dresses with an inner robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
- 2) A Nun should wear the upper robe even all round (whoever out of disrespect puts on an upper robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing).
- 3) A Nun should not go into lay people's houses with robes hitched up. She should go well covered in lay people's houses (inhabited areas with).
- 4) A Nun should not sit down in lay people's houses with robes hitched up. She should sit well covered in lay people's houses.
- 5) A Nun should not go among the houses with robes lifted up to the shoulders, either on one side or on both (if out of disrespect having lifted up the robe on one side or on both, there is an offence of wrong-doing).
- 6) A Nun should not sit down amidst the houses with robes lifted up to the shoulders, either on one side or on both.
- 7) A Nun should not go into the houses of lay people with head covered, either with a towel, a hat, or a cap.
- 8) A Nun should not sit down amidst the houses of lay people with head covered, either with a towel, a hat, or a cap.
- 9) A Nun should not enter into any lay people's houses, going and running at the same time.
- 10) After going and running at the same time, a Nun should not sit down in lay people's houses.

- 11) A Nun should not enter any lay people's houses with the arms placed on the hips, or with the hands on both sides and the elbows turned outwards (akimbo).
- 12) A Nun should not sit down in lay people's houses with the arms akimbo (arms place on the hips, or hands on both sides and elbows turned outwards).
- 13) A Nun should not go amidst the houses swaying the body. He should hold the body straight.
- 14) A nun should not sit down amidst the houses sway the body. He should hold the body straight.
- 15) A Nun should not go fidgeting amidst the houses (making play with hand or foot).
- 16) A Nun should not sit fidgeting in inhabited areas (making play with hand or foot in the houses).
- 17) A nun should not, out of disrespect, having uncovered the body, go among the houses.
- 18) A Nun should not, out of disrespect, sit down among the house without proper clothes.
- 19) A Nun should not go among the houses with eyes glanced around. She should go amidst the houses with eyes cast down looking only a plough's distance ahead.
- 20) A nun should not sit down in the houses with eyes glanced around. He should sit down amidst the houses with eyes cast down looking only a plough's distance ahead.
- 21) A Nun should not crouch down on the heels (sit arms akimbo) in the lay people's houses.
- 22) A Nun should always keep calm when entering the houses of lay people.
- 23) A Nun should sit calmly in the houses of lay people.
- 24) A Nun should not go into the houses of lay people with loud laughter.
- 25) A Nun should not sit down in the houses of lay people with loud laughter.
- 26) A Nun should accept almsfood attentively.
- 27) When accepting rice (from almsfood), a Nun should accept in proportion not to overflowing from the capacity of the bowl.
- 28) When accepting almsfood with soup, a Nun should accept in proportion not to overflowing the capacity of the bowl.
- 29) A Nun should mix the rice with soup before eating.
- 30) A Nun should the alms-food working down from the top without making exceptions (choosing or selecting foods).
- 31) A Nun should not choose alms-food to eat, i.e., choosing the alms-food in this side, that side, or in the middle of the bowl.

- 32) A Nun should not ask for sauce and/or rice for his own appetizing unless she is sick.
- 33) A Nun should not hide (cover up) sauce and curries with rice out of desire to get more.
- 34) A Nun should not look enviously at another's bowl.
- 35) After accepting enough alms-food, a Nun should cover the bowl; then she should sit straight up, eat and contemplate at the same time.
- 36) When eating alms-food, a Nun should not make up too large a mouthful.
- 37) A Nun should not open the mouth till the mouthful is brought to it.
- 38) A Nun should not talk with the mouth full (talk with a mouthful in the mouth).
- 39) When eating alms-food, a Nun should not make up a round mouthful (eat tossing up balls of food).
- 40) A Nun should not eat scattering rice or lumps of boiled rice about.
- 41) A Nun should not eat stuffing out the cheeks like a monkey (stuffed the cheek on one side or on both).
- 42) A Nun should not eat making loud sound or noise.
- 43) A Nun should not suck the alms-food loudly.
- 44) A Nun should not eat licking or wiping, either the hand or the bowl.
- 45) A Nun should not eat shaking the hand about.
- 46) A Nun should not pick up dropping rice to put in her mouth.
- 47) A Nun should not accept a drinking-water pot or cup with the hands soiled with food.
- 48) A Nun should not throw out amidst the houses, rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice (bowl washing water which has rice grains in it).
- 49) A Nun should not go to stool, urinate, blow her nose, or spit saliva on vegetables.
- 50) A Nun should not go to stool, urinate, blow his nose, or spit saliva in water.
- 51) A Nun should not urinate when standing.
- 52) A Nun should not reside and sleep at the Buddha altar.
- 53) A Nun should not store anything at the Buddha altar, except in case of robbing.
- 54) A Nun should not wear sandals to enter the place of Buddha altar.
- 55) A Nun should not carry his sandals around the Buddha altar.
- 56) A Nun should not wear sandals when going around the Buddha altar.
- 57) A Nun should not wear shoes to enter the place of Buddha altar.
- 58) A Nun should not carry her shoes around the Buddha altar.
- 59) A Nun should not sit eating and leave left-over things at the Buddha altar.
- 60) A Nun should not allow people to carry a corpse around the Buddha altar.
- 61) A Nun should not bury a dead body at the Buddha altar.

- 62) A Nun should not allow people to cremate a corpse at the Buddha altar.
- 63) A Nun should not allow people to cremate a corpse near the Buddha altar because it can emit the burnt smell at the Buddha altar.
- 64) A Nun should not allow people to cremate corpses at the Buddha altar.
- 65) A Nun should not allow people to carry clothes of the dead around the Buddha altar.
- 66) A Nun should not or should not allow people to go to stool or to urinate at the Buddha altar.
- 67) A Nun should not carry the image or statue of the Buddha into the rest room.
- 68) A Nun should not allow people to go to stool or to urinate near the Buddha altar where bad smell can fly over the Buddha altar.
- 69) A Nun should not or should not allow people to go to stool or to urinate at the side of the Buddha altar.
- 70) A Nun should not allow people to pick their teeth or rinse their mouth at the Buddha altar.
- 71) A Nun should not come in front of the Buddha altar to pick his teeth or to rinse his mouth.
- 72) A Nun should not or should not allow people to stand around the Buddha altar to pick their teeth or to rinse their mouth.
- 73) A Nun should not blow his nose or spit saliva at the Buddha altar.
- 74) A Nun should not stand in front of the Buddha altar to blow his nose or to spit saliva.
- 75) A Nun should not stand at any sides of the Buddha altar to blow his nose or to spit saliva.
- 76) A Nunk should not sit pointing his legs at the Buddha altar.
- 77) A Nun should not reside or sleep at a place which is higher than the level of the Buddha altar.
- 78) A Nun should not promenade or to go for a walk hand in hand with anyone.
- 79) A Nun should not climb high trees (higher than head level), except emergencies.
- 80) A Nun should not put his bowl in a bag, tie it to one end of his staff and carry along the road.
- 81) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone with shirt hitched up.
- 82) A Nun should not teach the law to someone who hangs his shirt around the neck.
- 83) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone wearing a head wrapping who is not sick.
- 84) A Nun should not teach the law to someone with head covered (with a turban on his head) and who is not sick.

- 85) A Nun should not teach the law to someone with arms akimbo (arms placed on the hips, or hands on both sides and elbows turned outwards).
- 86) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone mounted on clogs (wooden shoes).
- 87) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone wearing sandals who is not sick.
- 88) A Nun should not teach the law to someone in a vehicle who is not sick.
- 89) A Nun should not teach Dharma, standing, to someone who is sitting down, and who is not sick.
- 90) A Nun should not teach Dharma, sitting, to someone on a bed and who is not ill.
- 91) A Nun should not sit down on the ground to teach Dharma to someone sitting on a seat and who is not ill.
- 92) A Nun should not teach Dharma, having sat down on a low seat, to someone sitting on a high seat and who is not ill.
- 93) A Nun should not teach Dharma, going or walking behind, to someone going or walking in front and who is not ill.
- 94) A Nun should not teach the law, going in a low road, to someone going in a high road.
- 95) A Nun should not teach Dharma, standing beside (at the side of) a path, to someone standing on a path (in the middle of the path).
- 96) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone with a stick in his hand and who is not sick.
- 97) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone with a sword (weapon) in his hand.
- 98) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone with a spear (lance) in his hand.
- 99) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone with a knife in his hand.
- 100) A Nun should not teach Dharma to someone with an umbrella in his hand who is not sick.

(VII) Saptadhikarana-samatha (skt):

According to the Sangiti Sutta in the Long Discourses of the Buddha, there are seven rules given in the Vinaya for settling disputes among monks (disputes arise from arguments, misconduct, judgment and punishment, correctness of a religious observance)—Seven rules for the participation and settlement of disputed questions that have been raised:

- 1) Sammukha-vinaya (skt): Face to face evidence, or appeal to the law. To place the two quarrelling monks face to face in order to clarify and solve the problem.

- 2) Smṛti-vinaya (skt): No witness or proof, no recollection. To make one admit that his memory had failed in regard to the point of dispute.
- 3) Amudha-vinaya (skt): Irresponsibility, mental derangement. To make a monk admit that he was not in his normal mind when.
- 4) Pratijnakaraka-vinaya (skt): Decision by majority vote or verdict.
- 5) Tatsvabhavaisiya-vinaya (skt): Voluntary confession or formality of confession.
- 6) Yadbhuyasikiya-vinaya (skt): Condemnation of unconfessed sin, make a statement and ask thrice for judgment.
- 7) Trnastaraka-vinaya (skt): Covering the mud with straw or covering over with grass. The avoidance of publicity to a dispute within the Sangha.

(B-7) Eight Unsurpassed Rules of a Nun

In the Anguttara Nikaya Sutta, Venerable Ananda told Maha Pajapati Gotami about the eight commands laid down by the Buddha, given to a nun before letting her entering the Bhiksuni Order: **First**, even though a hundred years' standing by the higher ordination, a nun must always pay respect to a monk, no matter how young he is, offer her seat to him, reverence him, and perform all proper duties towards him though he has just received the Higher Ordination on that very day. **Second**, never scold (revile, rebuke, or abuse) a monk on no account. **Third**, Bhiksunis (she could never accuse or speak of a monk's misdeeds) should not give admonition to Bhiksus, but Bhiksus should admonish Bhiksunis (he may speak of her misdeeds). **Fourth**, at Bhiksus' hands obtain reception into the order. A female probationer (sikkhamana), who is trained in the six commandments for two years, should receive both the Higher Ordination from the Order of both Bhikkhus and Bhikkhunis. **Fifth**, every fortnight a Bhiksuni should ask from the Order of Bhiksus the time when the Bhiksus assemble to recite their fundamental rules (uposatha), and when a Bhiksu would come to admonish them. **Sixth**, ask the fraternity for a monk as preceptor. **Seventh**, a Bhikkhuni should never spend a retreat (vassa) in a place where there is no Bhikkhu. **Eighth**, after the summer retreat, the ceremony of formal termination of the rainy season (pavarana) should be held by a Bhiksuni in the presence of Bhiksus. She must report and ask for a responsible confessor. A Bhikkhuni examine to see if she has ever committed any of the three ways, seeing, hearing, or suspicion. In some other sutras, number 6 is replaced by "A Bhikkhuni who committed a major offence should undergo punishment (manatta) in the presence of the Order of both Bhikkhus and Bhikkhunis."

Tài Liệu Tham Khảo

References

1. Bodhi Gaya, Shanti Swarup Bauddh, New Delhi, 2005.
2. The books of The Discipline (Vinaya Pitaka), translated by I.B. Horner: 1997.
3. Brahma-Net Sutra, New Delhi, India 1975.
4. Buddha, Dr. Hermann Oldenberg, New Delhi, 1997.
5. The Buddha's Ancient Path, Piyadassi Thera, 1964.
6. The Buddha Eye, Frederick Franck, 1982.
7. The Buddha and His Dharma, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, Delhi, 1997.
8. The Buddha and His Teachings, Narada: 1973.
9. Buddhism, Ed. Manan Sharma, New Delhi, 2002.
10. Buddhist Ethics, Hammalawa Saddhatissa, 1970.
11. The Buddhist Handbook, John Snelling, 1991.
12. Buddhist Images of Human Perfection, Nathan Katz, India 1982.
13. Buddhist Logic, 2 Vols., Th. Stcherbatsky, 1962.
14. Buddhist Sects in India, Nalinaksha Dutt, 1978.
15. Buddhist Shrines in India, D.C. Ahir, New Delhi, 1986.
16. Buddhist Thought in India, Edward Conze, 1962.
17. The Chinese Madhyama Agama and the Pali Majjhima Nikaya, Bhikkhu Thích Minh Châu, India 1991.
18. A Compendium of Chief Kagyu Master, Dr. C.T. Dorji, New Dehli, 2005.
19. A Comprehensive Manual of Abhidharma, Bhikkhu Bodhi, Sri Lanka 1993.
20. The Concept of Personality Revealed Through The Pancanikaya, Thích Chơn Thiện, New Delhi, 1996.
21. The Connected Discourses of the Buddha, translated from Pali by Bhikkhu Bodhi, 2000.
22. The Conquest of Suffering, P.J. Saher, Delhi 1977.
23. The Dhammapada, Narada, 1963.
24. Duy Thức Học, Hòa Thượng Thích Thiện Hoa, 1958.
25. Đạo Phật An Lạc và Tĩnh Thức, Thiện Phúc, USA, 1996.
26. Đạo Phật Trong Đời Sống, 10 volumes, Thiện Phúc, USA, 1994.
27. English-Vietnamese Buddhist Dictionary, 10 volumes, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2007.
28. Essential of Buddhism, Gnanarama, Singapore, 2000.
29. Essentials of Buddhism, Kogen Mizuno, Tokyo, 1972.
30. The Flower Ornament Scripture, Shambhala: 1987.
31. Gems of Buddhist Wisdom, many authors, Kular Lumpur, 1983.
32. The Great Buddhist Emperor of Asia, Ven. Dr. Medhankar, Nagpur, India, 2000.
33. The Heart of Wisdom, Dr. C.T. Dorji, New Dehli, 2005.
34. History of Theravada Buddhism in South East Asia, Kanai Lal Hazra, New Dehli, 1981.
35. The Holy Teaching of Vimalakirti, Robert A.F. Thurman: 1976.
36. Hua-Yen Buddhism: The Jewel Net of Indra, Francis H. Cook, NY, U.S.A., 1977.
37. An Index to the Lankavatara Sutra, Daisetz Teitaro Suzuki, London, 1934.
38. Kim Cang Giảng Giải, Hòa Thượng Thích Thanh Từ, 1992.
39. Kinh Duy Ma Cát Sở Thuyết, Hòa Thượng Thích Huệ Hưng, 1951.
40. Kinh Đại Bát Niết Bàn, dịch giả Hòa Thượng Thích Trí Tịnh: 1990.
41. Kinh Hoa Nghiêm, được Ngài Thực Xoa Nan Đa (Siksananda) Hán dịch khoảng năm 700 sau Tây Lịch (700 A.D.), Hòa Thượng Thích Trí Tịnh Việt dịch năm 1956 tại Sài Gòn, Hoà Thượng Thích Đức Niệm (Phật Học Viện Quốc Tế) in tại Mỹ năm 1983.
42. Kinh Pháp Bảo Đàn, Hòa Thượng Thích Thanh Từ, 1992.

43. Kinh Tâm Địa Quán, Hòa Thượng Thích Tâm Châu, 1959.
44. Kinh Trường Bộ, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1991.
45. Kinh Trung Bộ, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1992.
46. Kinh Tương Ưng Bộ, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1993.
47. Kinh Tăng Chi Bộ, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1996.
48. Kinh Tập A Hàm, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1993.
49. Kinh Trung A Hàm, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1992.
50. Kinh Trường A Hàm, Viện Nghiên Cứu Phật Học Việt Nam: 1991.
51. Kinh Ưu Bà Tắc Giới, Sa Môn Thích Quảng Minh, 1957.
52. Linguistic Approach to Buddhism Thought, Genjun H. Sasaki, Delhi 1986.
53. The Long Discourses of the Buddha, translated from the Pali by Maurice Walshe, 1987.
54. A Manual of Abhidharma, Most Venerable Narada, Kuala Lumpur, 1956.
55. A Manual of Buddhism, Most Venerable Narada, Kuala Lumpur, 1992.
56. The Method of Zen, Eugen Herrigel, 1960.
57. The Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha, translated from the Pali by Bhikkhu Nanamoli, edited and revised by Bhikkhu Bodhi, 1995.
58. Nagarjuna's Philosophy, K. Venkata Ramanan, Delhi 1975.
59. Những Đóa Hoa Vô Ưu, 3 tập, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2012.
60. Niệm Phật Thập Yếu, Hòa Thượng Thích Thiện Tâm, 1950.
61. Pen Portraits Ninety Three Eminent Disciples of the Buddha, C. de Saram, Singapore, 1966.
62. Phật Giáo và Triết Học Tây Phương, H.T. Thích Quảng Liên, 1996.
63. Phật Pháp Căn Bản (Việt-Anh)—Basic Buddhist Doctrines, 08 volumes, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2009.
64. The Pioneers of Buddhist Revival in India, D.C. Ahir, New Delhi 1989.
65. Rajagraha, Jugal Kishore Baudhd, New Delhi, 2005.
66. A Record of Buddhist Kingdoms, Fa-Hsien, English translator James Legge, 1965.
67. Sarnath, Shanti Swaroop Baudhd, New Delhi, 2003.
68. Seven Works of Vasubandhu, Stefan Anacker, Delhi 1984.
69. The Spectrum of Buddhism, Mahathera Piyadassi, Sri Lanka, 1991.
70. Studies in Ch'an and Hua-Yen, Robert M. Gimello and Peter N. Gregory, Honolulu, 1983.
71. Studies in the Lankavatara Sutra, Daisetz Teitaro Suzuki, London, 1930.
72. Tài Liệu Nghiên Cứu Và Diễn Giảng, Hòa Thượng Thích Thiện Hoa, 1957.
73. Thiên Trúc Tiểu Du Ký, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2006.
74. Thiên Sư, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2007.
75. Thiên Sư Trung Hoa, Hòa Thượng Thích Thanh Từ: 1995.
76. Thiên Trong Đạo Phật, 3 tập, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2012.
77. Thiên Trong Đời Sống, 1 tập, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2012.
78. Thủ Lăng Nghiêm Kinh, Tâm Minh Lê Đình Thám, 1961.
79. Thủ Lăng Nghiêm Kinh, Trí Độ và Tuệ Quang, 1964.
80. Từ Điển Phật Học Anh-Việt—English-Vietnamese Buddhist Dictionary, 10 volumes, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2007.
81. Từ Điển Phật Học Việt-Anh—Vietnamese-English Buddhist Dictionary, 6 volumes, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2005.
82. Từ Điển Thiền & Thuật Ngữ Phật Giáo Việt-Anh Anh-Việt—Vietnamese-English English-Vietnamese Dictionary of Zen & Buddhist Terms, 12 volumes, Thiện Phúc, USA, 2016.
83. The Vimalakirti Nirdeśa Sutra, Charles Luk, 1972.
84. Walking with the Buddha, India Dept. of Tourism, New Delhi, 2004.